

New
My Friend
IN ENGLISH

THE COUNT OF MONTE CRISTO

المنهج الكامل
للاصف الثالث الثانوي

3RD
SEC.

2026

عام وازهر

ماي نيو فريند
منهج

المنهج الجديد

خلاصة المراجعة وبنك الاسئلة

My New FRIEND

متحف.. ماي نيو فريند

المراجعة النهائية .. وبنك الأسئلة

Final Revision & Question Bank

خلاصة الوحدات

خلاصة فصول القصة

خلاصة المهارات

خلاصة الأزهر الشريف

بنك أسئلة الوحدات

بنك أسئلة القصة

بنك أسئلة المهارات

بنك أسئلة الأزهر الشريف

Year Three Secondary

الصف الثالث الثانوي - عام وأزهر

Magdi Nassar

Mohsen Badr

& My new Friend Team

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonyms	Antonyms
chaos	فوضى	disorder / confusion	order / organization
clutch	يتشبث بـ / يمسك بـ	grip / hold on to	let go / release
consciousness	وعي / إدراك	alertness / perception	oblivion / insensibility
dedication	تفاني / إخلاص	devotion / commitment	disloyalty / apathy
panicked	مرعوب / مذعور	disrupted / distressed	cool / bold
rewarding	مُجزى / مُرضى	satisfying / fulfilling	disappointing / frustrating
swallow	يبتلع	absorb / inhale	abstain / spit out
urgent	عاجل / ملح	critical / crucial	trivial / minor

Key Vocabulary

administer	يعطي (دواء)	heartbreaking	مفجع	stitch	يخيط جرح / غرزة
attention	اهتمام / انتباه	paramedics	مسعفون	forehead	الجبهة
buzz (with)	ضجة / يعج بـ	pulse	النبض / ينبض	groan	ينن (بصوت منخفض)
chest	الصدر	rollercoaster	موقف متقلب	moan	ينوح (بصوت أعلى)
collapse	ينهار / انهيار	shift	وردية عمل / يغير	scope	منظار طبي
grab	يمسك / يشد	victim	ضحية	urgency	إلحاح / ضرورة

Vocabulary & Prepositions

typical day	يوم عادي	kick off	يبدأ / ينطلق في	check charts	يفحص سجلات
hold on	ينتظر على الهاتف	monitor	جهاز مراقبة	review updates	يراجع تطورات
ahead (adv.)	فيما هو قادم	beep	يطلق إشارة صوتية	assist	يساعد
head home	يتوجه للمنزل	medication	دواء	emergencies	حالات طوارئ
ensure	يضمن / يؤكد	run smoothly	يسير بسلاسة	fulfilled	راضي / سعيد
handle / deal with	يتعامل مع	reflect on	يفكر في	never-ending	لا نهاية له
critical condition	حالة حرجية	witness	شاهد / شاهد	trade ... for	يستبدل بـ
treatment	علاج / معاملة	see patients	يكشف على مرضى	scope	مدى / نطاق
sacrifice	ضحى / تضحية	heal - healed	يلتئم / يشفى	compassion	تعاطف
career	مهنة الفرد	bleeding hand	يد نازفة	non-stop	بلا توقف
profession	مهنة (مجال الكل)	injured / wounded	مجروح	flew open	انفتح فجأة
unresponsive	لا يستجيب	sterile equipment	أدوات معقمة	hesitation	تردد
gratitude	امتنان / شكر	staff members	طاقم العمل	life-saving	منقذ للحياة
choke	يختنق	grasp	يفهم	withdrawn	منعزل / منطو

semi-formal	شبه رسمي	catchy headline	عنوان جذاب	central theme	موضوع مركزي
passion	شغف	specific	محدد	symptoms	أعراض (مرض)
give a prescription	يصف دواء	sore throat	حلق متالم	stethoscope	سماعة الطبيب
take temperature	يقيس الحرارة	viral cold	نزلة برد فيروسية	miserable	بانس
switch roles	يبدل الأدوار	emergency operator	متلقي بلاغ	regain	يستعيد / يسترد

Idioms - Collocations - Expressions

it rained cats and dogs	أمطرت بغزارة	spring into action	ينطلق للعمل
soaked to the skin	مبلل تماما	jump into action	يتصرف بسرعة وحماس
pale as a ghost	شاحب للغاية	no pain, no gain	من جد وجد
go the extra mile	يجتهد لتحقيق حلم	take over the situation	يتولى مسئولية الموقف
pay attention to	ينتبه له	do first aids	يقوم بإسعافات أولية
always on their feet	دائما يعملون (واقفون)	perform (do) an operation	يجري عملية
a chronological story	قصة مرتبة زمنيا	have an operation	تجرى له عملية
CPR/Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation	إنعاش	unwelcome visitor	زائر غير مرغوب فيه
teamwork makes the dream work			التعاون سر النجاح

Language Notes

arise – arose – arisen	ينشأ / يبرز	raise – raised	يرفع / يجمع / يربي
rise – rose – risen	ينهض / تشرق / يرتفع	rouse – aroused	يثير / يوقظ
care for	يعتني به / يرغب في	care about	يهتم به
though / although + جملة	برغم أن	despite (in spite of) + V.ing/N	برغم
however + ظرف / صفة / ظرف	برغم	Whatever + فعل + فاعل + اسم	برغم
award	جائزة رسمية - يمنح جائزة	reward	مكافأة غير رسمية - يكافئ
another + اسم مفرد	آخر	other + اسم جمع = others	آخرون
reason why (for which) + جملة	سبب له	cause of / reason for + V.ing/N	سبب له
work	عمل - شغل (لا تعد)	job	وظيفة (تعد)
lose - lost - lost	يفقد / يخسر	miss	يشفق له / يفوته حدث أو مواصلات
operation	عملية جراحية - عملية ترميم	process	عملية طبيعية - عملية تصنيع
cure of	يعالج من	a cure for	علاج له

Vocabulary Question Bank بنات أسئلة الكلمات

A. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- The hall suddenly became full of buzz. The word "buzz" has antonyms including:
a. excitement b. vibration c. silence d. disturbance e. quietness
- His lack of dedication affected the project badly. The opposite of "dedication" is
a. disloyalty b. commitment c. devotion d. loyalty e. apathy

3. When the alarm sounded, he felt panicked. The word "panicked" is synonymous with
a. bold b. calm c. composed d. frightened e. distressed
4. The decision was not urgent. The word "urgent" has antonyms including:
a. minor b. crucial c. serious d. trivial e. critical
5. After the system's failure, everything was in chaos. The word "chaos" can be replaced by
a. order b. disorder c. stability d. balance e. confusion
6. He woke up and showed clear consciousness. "Consciousness" is synonymous with
a. alertness b. oblivion c. darkness d. perception e. insensibility
7. Helping others gave her a deep rewarding sense. The word "rewarding" means
a. frustrating b. pointless c. fulfilling d. disappointing e. satisfying
8. The farewell scene was heartbreaking. The word "heartbreaking" is synonymous with
a. pleasant b. sorrowful c. amusing d. joyful e. distressing
9. The meeting kicked off with a speech from the boss. A synonym for "kicked off" is
a. concluded b. started c. ended d. finished e. launched
10. The teacher asked the students to pay attention. An antonym for "attention" is
a. comfort b. negligence c. regard d. difference e. ignorance
11. She looked pale after staying up all night studying. A synonym for "pale" is
a. bright b. flushed c. sick d. smart e. dim
12. She moaned when the nurse touched her wound. An antonym for "moaned" is
a. relaxed b. became happy c. sustained d. shouted e. grieved

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The nurse had to the medicine carefully according to the doctor's instructions.
a. control b. administer c. replace d. minister
2. The loud noise drew everyone's, stopping all conversations in the waiting area.
a. memory b. patience c. silence d. attention
3. The weak structure might suddenly, putting everyone inside in serious danger.
a. expand b. rotate c. collapse d. balance
4. The patient stopped breathing, so the doctor began performing to save his life.
a. CPR b. analysis c. surgeon d. vaccination
5. She his arm firmly to prevent him from falling while the floor was slippery.
a. pushed b. released c. grabbed d. waved
6. The project expanded beyond its original, covering additional factors.
a. patient b. budget c. scope d. swipe
7. His emotions felt like a, rising and falling rapidly throughout the dramatic experience.
a. marathon b. staircase c. mirror d. rollercoaster
8. The night at the hospital is usually quieter than the busy morning working hours.
a. break b. pause c. delay d. shift
9. The injured was taken away from the scene before reporters arrived.
a. witness b. victim c. visitor d. vice
10. He let out a painful as the doctor pressed on the injured area.
a. laugh b. whisper c. groan d. guide
11. The nurse checked the patient's regularly to monitor heart activity.
a. pulse b. praise c. buzz d. lizard
12. Doctors acted with great because every second mattered in the emergency room.
a. urgency b. hesitation c. leisure d. calmness
13. The doctor decided to the cut immediately to prevent excessive bleeding.
a. tape b. solve c. stitch d. smash
14. Sweat rolled down his as he waited nervously outside the operating room.
a. forehead b. forecast c. broadcast d. interact

15. The arrived quickly and transferred the injured man onto a medical stretcher.
 a. paramedics b. medications c. dimensions d. suspects
16. The patient began to softly, showing signs of pain despite the medication.
 a. moan b. melt c. smuggle d. twinkle
17. She the bag tightly, afraid it might be taken from her in the crowd.
 a. dragged b. ignored c. tracked d. clutched
18. He struggled to the large pill because of his sore throat.
 a. strive b. swallow c. resolve d. addict
19. The hospital department fell into complete chaos, meaning a state of
 a. balance b. organization c. calmness d. disorder
20. Serious complications may unexpectedly during recovery.
 a. rise b. arise c. raise d. arouse
21. With proper medication, damaged tissues can naturally without surgical intervention.
 a. heal b. cure c. treat d. repair
22. Each of the medical committee was required to attend the emergency meeting.
 a. organ b. member c. actor d. actress
23. The research team will their findings in a respected international medical journal.
 a. spread b. publish c. establish d. demolish
24. The patient slowly regained after the vital signs stabilized properly.
 a. consciousness b. conscience c. assistance d. commission
25. Stress was identified as the main of severe headaches among hospital staff.
 a. result b. cause c. effect d. impact
26. Medical instructors students how to insert intravenous lines safely in emergencies.
 a. explain b. demonstrate c. advise d. teach
27. During training, interns learn how to traumatic injuries.
 a. deal b. hand c. handle d. swindle
28. Loud alarms sleeping staff before the emergency evacuation procedure began.
 a. disturbed b. alerted c. roused d. raised
29. Scientists are searching for a/an for certain genetic disorders affecting children.
 a. recovery b. cure c. care d. healer
30. Infections can rapidly in hospital wards unless strict hygiene measures are enforced.
 a. spread b. transport c. exchange d. communicate
31. The doctor listened to her to check her breathing.
 a. shoulder b. chest c. ankle d. wrist
32. We stayed indoors because it rained during the entire picnic.
 a. cats and dogs b. lions and cats c. dogs and cats d. dogs and lions
33. The children were to the skin after playing in the rain.
 a. smashed b. soaked c. sucked d. struck
34. After the long illness, he was pale
 a. like a ghost b. as a ghost c. like a guest d. as a guest
35. Our teacher always encourages us to go the mile in our assignments.
 a. extreme b. exert c. expert d. extra
36. You should attention to the instructions carefully.
 a. catch b. clutch c. pray d. pay
37. During the festival, the staff was always on their helping visitors.
 a. heads b. hands c. feet d. teeth
38. The historian wrote a/an story of the city's history.
 a. archaeological b. archeologist c. chronological d. dimensional
39. When the alarm rang, the firefighters immediately.
 a. sprang into action b. made action c. took addiction d. sprang into trace

40. As soon as the patient collapsed, the nurse jumped into
- a. attention b. intention c. action d. addiction
41. Studying for long hours proves the saying: no pain, no
- a. win b. beat c. earn d. gain
42. The senior doctor had to the situation when the patient's condition worsened.
- a. take down b. kick down c. take over d. kick off
43. The lifeguard knows how to first aids in case of accidents.
- a. make b. give c. do d. deform
44. The surgeon will an operation to remove the tumor.
- a. do b. make c. perform d. both a and c
45. He felt nervous when a/an visitor knocked on the door.
- a. unwelcome b. welcome c. kicked d. wonderful
46. Her to her studies helped her achieve excellent grades.
- a. indication b. addiction c. dedication d. intention
47. The crowd when the fire alarm suddenly went off.
- a. picnicked b. panicked c. blanked d. blocked
48. He found volunteering at the shelter a/an experience.
- a. awarding b. rewarding c. awarded d. rewarded
49. The manager sent an email asking everyone to attend a quick meeting.
- a. utilized b. uttered c. unused d. urgent
50. The hallway was with excited students after the announcement.
- a. buzzing b. blazing c. fizzing d. functioning
51. It was to see the abandoned dog shivering in the cold.
- a. pleasant b. heartbreaking c. kind-hearted d. heart welcome
52. The company had to its plans because of the weather.
- a. shoulder b. shrug c. shift d. shame
53. After a long shift, he was ready to home.
- a. hide b. head c. hand d. ahead
54. Please that all doors are locked before leaving.
- a. sure b. reassure c. ensure d. brochure
55. The patient is in condition and needs constant monitoring.
- a. critical b. casual c. chronological d. cosmetic
56. The doctor prescribed a new for her illness.
- a. attachment b. treatment c. enrollment d. involvement
57. He made many to support his family's education.
- a. arrivals b. sacrifices c. mentions d. thrones
58. She chose a in engineering because she loves problem-solving.
- a. work b. career c. carrier d. worker
59. He remained despite repeated calls.
- a. responded b. correspondent c. unresponsive d. dimensional
60. She expressed her to the nurses for their help.
- a. grateful b. ungrateful c. gratefully d. gratitude
61. She has a for painting that inspires everyone.
- a. pressure b. passion c. patient d. compassionate
62. The doctor will give a for the patient's medication.
- a. prescription b. receipt c. recipe d. scribe
63. Always the patient's temperature as part of the check-up.
- a. trick b. give c. appreciate d. take
64. In the training exercise, the students roles to learn different perspectives.
- a. smashed b. switched c. wondered d. wandered

65. Teachers often students during exams to prevent cheating.
a. minor b. moderate c. monitor d. miracle
66. The meeting ran thanks to careful planning.
a. smoothly b. hard c. difficultly d. vaguely
67. She likes to on her achievements at the end of each year.
a. affluent b. reflect c. think d. spend
68. She wrapped a bandage around her hand.
a. blending b. bending c. bleeding d. pudding
69. The surgeon always uses equipment to prevent infection.
a. sterile b. starter c. swing d. pile
70. She tried to the concept but needed more explanation.
a. gap b. grip c. grab d. grasp

خلاصة القواعد

Language: Quick Hints

Present Perfect Simple Vs. Present Perfect Continuous

- ١ يركز المضارع التام البسيط على نتيجة الحدث والمضارع التام المستمر يركز على النشاط (الحدث) نفسه
- She **has gained** too much experience working here. نتيجة العمل هي اكتساب الكثير من الخبرات.
- ٢ الكلمات التالية تُستخدم فقط مع زمن المضارع التام: ever / never / yet / just / already
- Researchers **have been looking** at what makes people successful for a very long time.
- She **has never done** Karate. - I **have already started** reading.
- ٣ نستخدم مضارع تام مستمر لما نجد (now / all / still / haven't finished yet) مع (since / for)
- She **has been chatting** with her mom on the phone for a long time now (and still is).
٤ عندما نشير لـ (عدد مرات تكرار الحدث) أو (كمية شيء ما)، من الضروري استخدام زمن المضارع التام
- Ali **has read** twenty pages in the new story until now.
- ٥ المضارع التام المستمر لا يستخدم غالباً في المجهول ولذلك يأخذ صيغة المجهول الخاصة بالمضارع التام
- Natural resources **have been used up** since the existence of man on earth.
- ٦ الأفعال التي تستغرق وقتاً طويلاً تأتي غالباً في مضارع تام مستمر (sleep / work / rain / learn)
- She **has been sitting** there for an hour. - I **have been teaching** English for 10 years.
- ٧ (how long) مضارع تام بسيط أو مستمر / (how many / how much) مع المضارع التام البسيط
- **How long have you been training?** - **How many times have you done** this exercise?
- ٨ نستخدم (اسم يعبر عن مدة + all) مع مضارع تام مستمر و(اسم لا يعبر عن مدة + all) مع مضارع تام
- I **have been reading** all morning. - I've read **all the novels** by Naguib Mahfouz.
- ٩ الأفعال التالية (stative verbs) تستخدم مع المضارع التام وليس المضارع التام المستمر: (be) و:
- ذو ملمس / ذو مذاق / يرى / له رائحة / يبدو / يسمع / الحواس: feel / taste / see / smell / look / hear
- mental أفعال التفكير: mean / think = believe / يعتقد / know / imagine / realise / understand
- communication أفعال التواصل: agree / disagree / admit / deny / promise / surprise
- Attitude أفعال العاطفة: love / like / dislike / hate / prefer / want / need / desire
- Possession أفعال الملكية: possess / own / have / have got / belong to
- Other verbs أفعال أخرى: cost / include / involve / owe to / intend / remain
- I **have had** this car for 15 years now! (Not: have been having)
- تأتي نفس الأفعال في زمن المضارع التام المستمر إذا حملت معانٍ أخرى غير المشار إليها سابقاً ...
- Samy **has been seeing** the same dentist for five years. (يذهب للطبيب)
- She **has been thinking** about something important. (يفكر في أمر ما)

- A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**
- You the hall; it looks lovely! (LM)
a. were decorating b. will decorate c. have decorated d. had decorated
 - I the movie you recommended. I'm enjoying it. (LM)
a. have watched b. had watched c. have been watching d. had been watching
 - He three cups of coffee since he reached the office this morning. (LM)
a. had drunk b. has drunk c. is drinking d. has been drinking
 - They in London since 2004. They are still living there. (LM)
a. had lived b. have lived c. have been living d. had been living
 - I reading the book you recommended, so we can talk about it now. (LM)
a. had finished b. have finished c. have been finishing d. had been finishing
 - I my friend, Kamel, since we were at school. (LM)
a. have known b. had known c. are knowing d. have been knowing
 - I 2000 metres today. (LM)
a. have run b. had run c. have been running d. had been running
 - Tamer his new car for five months now. (LM)
a. had had b. has had c. have been having d. had been having
 - Please help me; I my passport. What can I do? (LM)
a. had lost b. will be losing c. has been losing d. have lost
 - I Wuthering Heights all day. It's very interesting, but I'm only on chapter 3. (LM)
a. have been reading b. had read c. had been reading d. have read
 - He abroad; he prefers to spend his time wandering round his hometown. (LM)
a. has ever travelled b. has never travelled c. has already travelled d. had never travelled
 - Your hands are really dirty. What? (LM)
a. had you been doing b. had you done c. have you been doing d. will you be doing
 - I miss you so much; I you for ages! (LM)
a. won't see b. hadn't seen c. haven't been seeing d. haven't seen
 - doing the new exercise yet? (LM)
a. Have you finished b. Had you finished c. Will you finish d. Are you finishing
 - Since the beginning of the COVID-19 pandemic, the world economy affected. (LM)
a. has greatly b. had been greatly c. has been greatly d. had greatly
 - I am still working; I doing that task yet. (LM)
a. hadn't finished b. haven't finished c. won't finish d. have finished
 - They the road to our village recently. (LM)
a. had paved b. have been paved c. have been paving d. had been paving
 - She a thorough cleaning of the house. Everything is sparkling. (LM)
a. had done b. had been doing c. has been doing d. has done
 - My aunt in Tanta for ten years only. Now, she is living in Mansoura. (LM)
a. has lived b. had lived c. has been living d. lived
 - Luxor before? – Yes, I went there last winter. (LM)
a. Are you visiting b. Have you visited c. Have you been visited d. Will you visit
 - He hasn't been able to play tennis he broke his leg. (LM)
a. since b. for c. ago d. when
 - You can't meet Taher because he Cairo International Book Fair. (LM)
a. has been to b. has gone to c. has gone d. has been
 - Many doctors long hours to care for patients over the years. (SB)
a. have worked b. has worked c. are working d. will work
 - Some nurses the same patients for weeks. (SB)
a. support b. have been supporting c. supported d. will support

25. Hospitals their emergency systems recently. (SB)
 a. are improving b. have improved c. improve d. will improve
26. Staff have new skills and attending training sessions. (SB)
 a. be given b. been given c. been giving d. given
27. Patients have better care and faster treatment. (SB)
 a. received b. are receiving c. will receive d. have received
28. I'm really tired because I all night for my exam. (SB)
 a. have been studied b. have studied c. have studying d. have been studying
29. She him for 10 years, so they are good friends. (SB)
 a. has been known b. has known c. has been knowing d. has knowing
30. How many times have you that movie? (SB)
 a. seen b. been seen c. be seeing d. been seeing
31. You look scared. anything frightening? (2024)
 a. Had you seen b. Did you see c. Have you seen d. Do you see
32. Huda has read two chapters of "Great Expectations" since she back home. (2025-Exp.)
 a. came b. has come c. was coming d. come
33. It's a long time I last saw her. (2025-Exp.)
 a. since b. when c. for d. ago
34. Hisham this car for five years. (2025-Exp.)
 a. is having b. has had c. has d. had had
35. We have been thinking about learning Spanish for a while, but we a good course yet.
 a. haven't been finding b. haven't been found c. haven't been finding d. haven't found
36. He is very busy because he has ways of achieving success.
 a. been researched b. researched c. been researching d. researching
37. I have known her since
 a. she has been six b. six years old c. six years d. she was six
38. I six letters since I came in this morning.
 a. was typing b. have typed c. have been typing d. am typing
39. he is a hardworking man, he has been successful in business.
 a. Since b. Due to c. While d. When
40. People have trees in gardens for thousands of years.
 a. been growing b. been grown c. growing d. be growing
41. My brother in the Central Bank for many years. He no longer works there.
 a. is working b. worked c. has worked d. has been working
42. The secretary four files so far.
 a. has been revising b. has revised c. has been revised d. is revising
43. He is exhausted. He all day.
 a. had been working b. had worked c. is working d. has been working
44. I skiing before.
 a. have never gone b. am never going c. have never been going d. will never go
45. I to play the drums for three years now.
 a. have been learning b. learned c. had learned d. have learned
46. I this house for twelve years now.
 a. have been having b. have had c. have been had d. am having
47. - Have you ever been abroad? - Yes, I to England for a month last summer.
 a. have gone b. have been c. went d. will go
48. How did you start learning English?
 a. long b. often c. long ago d. many
49. My friend a health problem since he lived in that highly polluted area.
 a. has had b. had had c. had d. has been

50. She has lived in Cairo the last ten years.

- a. when b. until c. since d. for

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. They haven't finished the project yet. (been)
2. I haven't visited my uncle for a week. (It's)
3. It's been five years since I met Ali. (The last time)
4. How long have you been learning English? (ago)
5. This is the most interesting film I have ever seen. (never)
6. Mona has just left the office. (ago)
7. How long ago did you start playing the piano? (been)
8. Ahmed has damaged his car in the accident. (been)
9. She started living in Cairo in 2022. (since)
10. I last saw my cousins six years ago. (haven't)
11. This is my first visit to London. (never)
12. They finished the project an hour ago. (already)
13. I haven't spoken to her for two months. (last)
14. My brother has been practicing volleyball for ten years now. (ago)
15. Magda is still doing her homework. (yet)
16. She started cooking at 2 p.m; now it's 5 p.m and she is still cooking. (for)
17. She is tired because she wrote for three hours. (has been)
18. This is the first time I have ever travelled alone. (never)
19. I have known the professor for a long time. (since)
20. The plane has just taken off. (ago)

خلاصة مهارات الكتابة

Writing Skills: Hints

Structure of a Blog Post مكونات المدونة

1. Catchy Title (Headline) عنوان جذاب

- Purpose: To make people want to click and read! الهدف: حث الناس على النقر والقراءة!

2. Introduction (1-2 paragraphs) المقدمة (فقرة أو فقرتين)

- Purpose: To introduce your topic and hook the reader. الهدف: تقديم موضوعك وجذب القارئ.

3. Main Body (2-4 paragraphs) النص الرئيسي (من فقرتين إلى أربع فقرات)

- Purpose: To develop your ideas, provide details, and explain your points.

الغرض: تطوير أفكارك، وتقديم التفاصيل، وشرح نقاطك.

4. Conclusion (1-2 paragraphs) الخاتمة (فقرة أو فقرتين)

- Purpose: To summarize your main points and give a final thought.

الغرض: تلخيص النقاط الرئيسية وطرح فكرة ختامية.

Tip for a Blog Post نصائح لكتابة تدوينة

- A blog post is an article or a piece of writing published on a blog (an online journal or website).

- Informal or semi-formal blogs: Like talking to a friend but maybe a bit more organized.

مدونات غير رسمية أو شبه رسمية: مثل الحديث مع صديق، ولكن ربما تكون أكثر تنظيماً.

- Engaging: They want to catch the reader's attention. جذابة: تهدف إلى جذب انتباه القارئ.

- About a specific topic: They share information, opinions, or personal experiences.

- حول موضوع محدد: تشارك معلومات أو آراء أو تجارب شخصية.

- Not too long: Easy to read online.

- ليست طويلة جداً: سهولة القراءة على الإنترنت.

Exercises on Writing Skills

- A conclusion of a blog post aims to
 - summarize main points
 - add new ideas related to the topic
 - give extra details about food or culture
 - introduce the topic in a good way
- The main purpose of a catchy title in a blog post is to
 - summarize the conclusion
 - make people eager to read
 - explain the writer's opinion
 - describe the food or culture
- The purpose of the introduction in a blog post is to
 - list facts and statistics
 - summarize main ideas
 - describe personal feelings
 - hook the reader
- Blog posts are usually meant to
 - do research
 - confuse the reader
 - include only pictures
 - entertain or inform
- The purpose of the main body of a blog post is to
 - provide details
 - explain titles
 - introduce the topic
 - summarize the topic
- A blog post's style is usually
 - very long
 - very detailed
 - informal or semi-formal
 - academic

تعارين على القواعد البرأكمة (قواعد الأءوءاء articles / الصفءاء والظروف)

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We should all spread peace because it is the basis of stability. (LM)
 - a
 - an
 - the
 - no article
- She lost hope and decided to give up. (LM)
 - no article
 - a
 - an
 - the
- My uncle works as a surgeon in European country. (LM)
 - a
 - an
 - the
 - no article
- You shouldn't mix with bad friends: better alone than in bad company. (LM)
 - a
 - an
 - the
 - no article
- Articles, possessives, quantifiers and demonstratives are
 - determiners
 - adverbs
 - prepositions
 - pronouns
- "The Old Man and the Sea" is Hemingway's most successful book.
 - a
 - an
 - the
 - no article
- French is her favourite subject. She likes it
 - most
 - many
 - well
 - good
- He is now.
 - extreme successful
 - extreme succeed
 - extremely successful
 - extremely success
- She had ever done any sport before she started doing powerlifting.
 - hard
 - harder
 - hardly
 - harden
- Heba can swim
 - good way
 - well
 - good
 - in a well way

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- She gave me an exciting novel. (which)
- She plays football well. (good at)
- The gas from the chemical gas was extremely harmful. (harm) (1981)
- You helped me with my shopping. (kind) (1981)
- Noha always wears beautiful clothes. (beautifully) (1986)
- We all like our teacher of English because of his friendly treatment. (treats) (1995)

A. Vocabulary

1. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. She groaned while the doctor was cleaning the wound. A synonym for "groaned" is
a. sobbed b. hesitated c. cried d. cheered e. delighted
2. The buzz of bees made me confused. An antonym for "buzz" is
a. whisper b. silence c. quietness d. noise e. ringing
3. Working for the charity was something rewarding. An antonym for "rewarding" is
a. profitable b. worthless c. advantageous d. worthwhile e. unproductive
4. The boy clutched to his mother's arm as he was afraid. A synonym for "clutched" is
a. left b. clinched c. released d. freed e. grasped

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. She tried not to, but the injury hurt badly. (SB)
a. groom b. groan c. gain d. sustain
2. The nurse asked the patient to the medicine slowly to avoid choking. (SB)
a. swallow b. solve c. slave d. resolve
3. In severe pain, the man began to as the doctor treated his wound. (SB)
a. moan b. mean c. drain d. attain
4. The frightened child began to his mother's hand in the emergency room. (SB)
a. clutch b. prospect c. suspect d. smuggle
5. The loud from the car alarm woke up the entire neighborhood. (SB)
a. beep b. pipe c. pop d. bee
6. The football match will at exactly 7 p.m. (SB)
a. fall down b. wear away c. check on d. kick off
7. The nurse gave the patient the correct to help relieve the pain. (SB)
a. manipulation b. medication c. malnutrition d. mediation
8. A sudden broke out in the market when people started running randomly. (SB)
a. chaos b. chore c. chart d. cart
9. The rescue team worked quickly to help the accident before the ambulance arrived. (SB)
a. vulnerable b. wisdom c. cactus d. victim
10. There was an exciting in the classroom when the students heard about the trip. (SB)
a. plus b. pulse c. freeze d. buzz
11. The lifeguard tried to check the man's before starting first aid. (SB)
a. chart b. buzz c. pulse d. peels
12. After running up the stairs, he felt dizzy and nearly (SB)
a. survived b. demanded c. confirmed d. collapsed

B. Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ahmad has
a. always worked itard b. hard always worked c. worked a hard always d. always hard working
2. Some of our successful athletes here to train for more than ten years.
a. have been come b. are coming c. have been coming d. are being come
3. I've here for a long time, so I can show you what to do.
a. been worked b. working c. been working d. had worked
4. I ill since we last met.
a. have been being b. have been c. was being d. was
5. Where? We have been waiting for you for half an hour.
a. have you been being b. have you been c. have been you d. you have been being
6. Eman her job since she started working in December.
a. has been loving b. has loved c. was loving d. loved

7. It seems like ages since
- a. we last met b. have we met c. last were met d. we were meeting
8. Since I graduated, I in this bank.
- a. will work b. have worked c. have been working d. both b and c
9. I this scientist since I met him in my faculty years ago.
- a. have been known b. have known c. knew d. have been knowing
10. This girl Diabetic مريضة بالسكري since her childhood.
- a. was b. has been being c. is being d. has been

2. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. It started to rain three hours ago and it is still raining. (been)
2. When did you start working here? (How long)
3. She has been living here for five years. (It's)
4. I haven't seen him since we were in Paris. (when)

C. Translation

1. The Internet is a world-wide network providing a variety of communication services.
- أ. الإنترنت شبكة كونية تعالج مجموعة متنوعة من خدمات الاتصالات.
ب. الإنترنت شبكة عالمية توفر مجموعة متنوعة من خدمات الاتصالات.
ج. الإنترنت شبكة كونية توفر مجموعة متنوعة من معلومات الاتصالات.
د. الإنترنت شبكة عالمية توفر مجموعة متنوعة من معلومات الاتصالات.
2. The human body often takes care of itself through its immune system which is in charge of keeping it safe from invading germs that try to attack it.
- أ. يعتني جسم الإنسان بنفسه من خلال جهاز المناعة المسؤول عن حمايته من غزو الجراثيم التي تحاول مهاجمته.
ب. يعتني جسم الإنسان بنفسه من خلال جهاز التعقيم المسؤول عن حمايته من تداخل الجراثيم التي تحاول مهاجمته.
ج. يعتني جسم الإنسان بنفسه خلال جهاز المناعة المسؤول عن حمايته من تداخل الحشرات التي تحاول مهاجمته.
د. يعتني جسم الإنسان بنفسه من خلال جهاز المناعة المسؤول عن حمايته من غزو الحشرات التي تحاول مهاجمته.
3. اعتنق الإنسان منذ القدم العديد من المعتقدات والفرضيات التي اعتمدت على خرافات.
- a. Since antiquity, man has adapted many believes and hypotheses that depended on myths.
b. Since antiquity, man has adopted many believes and hypotheses that depended on myths.
c. Since antiquity, man adapted many beliefs and hypotheses which depended on martyrs.
d. Since antiquity, man has adopted many beliefs and hypotheses which depended on myths.
4. التعلم الذاتي ينمي إمكانيات المرء بدافع من اهتماماته وميوله ورغباته.
- a. Self-learning develops one's protocols motivated in his interests, dimensions and desires.
b. Self-learner develops one's potentials motivated by his interests, inclinations and desires.
c. Self-learning develops one's potentials motivated by his interests, inclinations and desires.
d. Self-learner develops one's protocols motivated in his interests, dimensions and desires.

D. Reading Comprehension

1. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Have you ever wanted to help other people but thought you were too young? There are many opportunities for kids to do great things. Some of them may seem small, but they make the people being helped extremely happy. One activity you can do is to make greeting cards for people who are in a retirement home منزل تقاعد. Many of them can no longer leave their rooms. They do not have the chance to talk to many people, and often don't get much mail رسائل بريد. You can help brighten يشرق their day with a cheerful card. You might even be able to arrange for a visit with them. You can read your card to them; they may even want you to make more so they can send them to friends! You could also read your favorite book to them, or play a card game. There are many activities that seniors كبار السن would love to do with someone else.

Another group of people you can help is children in hospitals. If you can sew or knit يمنج, you can make a blanket for them to snuggle if they don't have toys from home. You can

visit a hospital and play board games *ألعاب طاولة* with the children there. You might want to read picture books to the younger children. There are many things you can do to *make someone's day*. You don't need money or a lot of skills. You can make a big difference in a person's life just by being willing to donate some of your time.

- Which activity is NOT mentioned in the passage?
a. making cards b. making blankets c. playing board games d. running races
- A word or phrase that could mean the same as "brighten" is
a. darken b. make sad c. make happier d. make sick
- The main idea of this passage is that
a. the American Red cross wants you to help. b. kids can help many different people.
c. no matter how much you do, you will never make a difference. d. kids are too young to help.
- The word "snuggle" has the same meaning as: get
a. depressed b. comfortable c. promoted d. dressed
- Which of these could be another way kids could help out in the community?
a. Pick up litter from alongside the road. b. Go on vacation.
c. Do their regular chores at home. d. Steal candy bars at the grocery store.
- How can you help children in hospitals?
a. Play board games with the children b. Read picture books to young kids
c. Both a and b d. Neither a nor b
- The underlined expression "make someone's day" means
a. help them do their tasks b. get them to do different things
c. make them happy and pleased d. cause them to be hard-working and active
- A good title for the passage is:
a. The life of children b. Helping mothers c. Opportunities for kids d. Difficult help

2. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Education and the media have a special responsibility for our natural environment. This responsibility has less to do with questions of right or wrong than with the question of survival *البقاء*. The natural world is our home. It is not necessarily sacred *مقدس*. It is simply where we live. It is therefore in our interest to look after it. This is common sense. But only recently have the size of our population and the power of science and technology grown to the point that they have a direct impact on nature. To put it another way, until now, Mother Earth has been able to tolerate *تسمح* our *sloppy* *سوء* house habits. However, the stage has now been reached where she can no longer accept our behaviour in silence. Environmental disasters can be seen as her response to our irresponsible behavior *سلوك مستهتر*. She is warning us that there are limits *حدود* even to her tolerance.

It is time for those living in the industrially developed *متقدم صناعيا* nations to change their lifestyle; the population of the rest of the world has an equal right to improve their living standard.

There are a number of ways in which we can begin to reconsider our relationship with nature, but all of which require an enormous effort. A universal education curriculum *منهج* can encourage people everywhere to consider themselves as part of a larger picture. By teaching people about the environment, evolution *التطور*, and ecology *علم البيئة*, we can provide them with the tools for change. In order to bring about necessary change, it is critical that people take action *يتصرفوا*. Through education, it is possible to galvanize *يحفز* people into forming new ideas of the world and to understand their place within it. This would go a long way in encouraging change in how we view each other and our environment. Changing attitudes *مواقف* are a primary component in achieving a sustainable *مستدام* future in which nature is allowed to run its course without human intervention *تدخل بشري*. In order for the Earth to retain its balance, we shouldn't overstep our bounds *نتجاوز حدودنا* as a species.

- The underlined word "*sloppy*" is close in meaning to
 a. tolerant b. useful c. careless d. thorough
- Why are people obliged to look after the natural world? - For their
 a. survival b. behaviour c. disaster d. pleasure
- In order to reconsider our relationship with nature,
 a. we need a local educational curriculum. b. we need to love ourselves more than nature.
 c. we need a universal sports competition. d. we need to exert big efforts.
- How can people change their viewing the world around them?
 a. By interfering with nature. b. By spoiling nature around them.
 c. Through good education. d. Through over-population.
- What prevents nature from running its own course?
 a. Mankind's activities. b. Schools and universities.
 c. Educational curriculums. d. Evolution and ecology.
- What does the writer mean by the underlined words "*common sense*"?
 a. Judgment which is based on the perception of commoners not elites.
 b. The sense that is felt by an individual rather than a group of people.
 c. Sound and prudent judgment based on a simple perception of the situation.
 d. The sense that is felt by a group of people rather than just an individual.
- What is necessary to help the Earth retain balance?
 a. People should master the universe b. Humans should control everything
 c. People should not overstep their bounds. d. Humans should not be just species.
- What fact must developed countries realize?
 a. All peoples have equal rights. b. They are superior to others.
 c. They are inferior to others. d. They have more rights than others.

E. Writing

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The of the blog post should help to hook the reader.
 a. body b. introduction c. conclusion d. purpose
- Blog posts need to be to catch readers' attention.
 a. too long b. engaging c. ambiguous d. compacted
- Which of the following is punctuated well?
 a. Unfortunately, while she was going downhill, she fell off her bike into some bushes.
 b. Unfortunately, while she was going downhill she fell off her bike into some bushes.
 c. Unfortunately; while she was going downhill; she fell off her bike into some bushes.
 d. Unfortunately, while she was going downhill, she fell off her bike into some bushes.
- Another word for "*consequently*" is :
 a. To conclude b. In summary c. In turn d. Due to

2. Write about (180 – 200) words on one of the following:

- Why nurses' work is so important.
- The Opening of the Grand Egyptian Museum.

3. Write a paragraph of Six lines on the following:

- A blog post about (My Favourite Novel)
- A blog post on "My Favorite Way to Relax After a Busy Day"

F. The Novel

- Answer the following questions:

- What can we guess about Edmond's personality from how he takes responsibility on the ship? (SB)
- Do you think Edmond's loyalty to his captain was more important than reaching his family quickly? Why or why not? (SB)
- The sea voyage represents more than travel. What might the sea symbolize for Edmond at this point in the story? (SB)

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonyms	Antonyms
basic	أساسي / بسيط	fundamental / essential	secondary / minor
distract	يُشتت / يلهي	divert / sidetrack	immerse / engage
enhance	يعزز / يحسن	boost / reinforce	weaken / diminish
properly	بشكل صحيح	appropriately / suitably	wrongly / improperly
renewable	متجدد	sustainable / inexhaustible	nonrenewable / exhaustible
sophisticated	متطور / متقن	complex / elegant	simple / crude
standstill	توقف تام / جمود	stalemate / deadlock	advance / continuation
updated	محدث / مُجدد	modernized / refreshed	outdated / old-fashioned

Key Vocabulary

dynasty	سلالة / أسرة حاكمة	right-click	ينقر بالزر الأيمن	appliances	أجهزة
cotton gin	مطح الغطن	drivers	برامج تشغيل الأجهزة	chores	أعمال (مهارة) منزلية
adopt	يتبنى (فكرة أو طفلًا)	troubleshoot	يصلح مشكلات	automated	آلي
initiative	مبادرة / تمهيدية	version	إصدار / نسخة	track	يتتبع
infrastructure	بنية تحتية	cables	كابلات / أسلاك	efficiency	كفاءة / فعالية
offline	غير متصل بالنت	household	أسري / منزلي	artifacts	قطع أثرية

Vocabulary & Prepositions

rich in	غني بـ	perfect	مثالي / كامل	machinery	آلات (مفرد)
presentation	عرض تقديمي	shape	يشكل	crafts	أعمال يدوية
connect .. with ..	يربط .. بـ ..	settings	إعدادات	fear	يخشى / يخاف
listed	مضاف للقائمة	slightly	قليلاً	enhance	يساعد / يدعم
issue	قضية / مشكلة	levers	الروافع	human labor	العصالة البشرية
select	يختار	ramps	المنحدرات	innovations	ابتكارات / إبداعات
replacements	بدائل	monumental	ضخم / أثري	masters	أساتذة / خبراء
automation	تشغيل آلي	process	يقوم بعملية	preserve	يحافظ على
transportation	نقل / مواصلات	proceed	يتقدم	blend	يدمج / يخلط
maintain	يقوم بصيانة	revolutionize	يغير جذرياً	loose	متفكك
software	برنامج	private sector	القطاع الخاص	technician	فني
digital age (era)	عصر رقمي	steam engines	محركات بخارية	technical support	دعم فني
partnerships	شراكات	productivity	الإنتاجية	remark	يعلق / يقول أن
operate	يدير / يشغل	3D scanning	مسح ثلاثي الأبعاد	marketing	تسويق
stand still	يبقى ثابتاً	separate from	يفصل .. عن	cotton fibers	ألياف الغطن
assemble	يُجمع / يركب	powered by	مُشغل بواسطة	access	مدخل لـ / يصل إلى
track	مسار / طريق / درب	entertained	شاعر بالتسلية	struggle	يكافح / كفاح

routines	روتين / عادات يومية	fairness	عدل / إنصاف	fashion	موضة
influence	تأثير / يؤثر	scanners	أجهزة ماسح ضوئي	distraction	مصدر تشتيت
detect illness	يكشف مرض	vacuum cleaner	مكنسة كهربائية	build cars	يصنع سيارات
heart rate	معدل ضربات القلب	on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى	pack products	يعبئ منتجات
interactive	تفاعلي	in charge of	مسؤول عن	limit	حد / يحد
tempted to	تم إغراؤه	context	السياق	clue	مفتاح لفهم شيء
maximize	يعظم	power cut	انقطاع الكهرباء	claim	ادعاء
minimize	يصغر	look up	يبحث في قاموس	for or against	مع أم ضد

Idioms - Collocations - Expressions

lay the groundwork	يضع الأساس	come to a standstill	يتوقف تماما
full steam ahead	بكل سرعة وحماس	not the other way around	ليس العكس
industrial revolution	الثورة الصناعية	rely heavily on	يعتمد بشدة على
engineering marvels	روائع هندسية	play an important role	يلعب دورا هاما
drive forward projects	تقود المشروعات للأمام	computerized factories	مصانع تعمل بالحاسب
pyramid-building robot	إنسان آلي لبناء الهرم	solar-powered tool	آلة تعمل بطاقة الشمس
give accurate diagnoses	يعطي تشخيصات دقيقة	track our heart rate	يتتبع معدل ضربات القلب
step-by-step process	عملية خطوة بخطوة	machine-driven world	عالم تقوده الآلات
join online meeting	ينضم إلى اجتماع عبر النت	safety considerations	اعتبارات السلامة
at a speed no human can match	بسرعة لا يمكن لأي إنسان أن يضاهيها		

Language Notes

at the age of (aged)	في سن (في عمر)	in the age (reign) of	في عهد - في عصر
work for + شخص / شركة	يعمل لدى	work as + وظيفة	يعمل كـ
energy	طاقة العمل والحركة	power	طاقة التشغيل / قوة طبيعية / نفوذ
replace ... with / by ...	يستبدل ... بـ ...	be replaced by / with	يستبدل بـ
ring / rang / rung	يتصل تليفونيا / يرن (منبه)	ring / ringed / ringed	يضع دائرة حول
agree on / about	يوافق على شيء	agree with	يتفق مع شخص / يوافق على فكرة
instead + جملة	بدلا من ذلك	instead of + V.ing / Noun	بدلا من

Vocabulary Question Bank بنك أسئلة الكلمات

A. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- The system is too sophisticated for us to understand. A synonym for "sophisticated" is
a. complicated b. crude c. complex d. simple e. plain
- The machine stopped as the surface wasn't smooth enough. An antonym for "smooth" is
a. flat b. polished c. even d. rough e. coarse
- Poor lighting can enhance nothing; it makes photos worse. A synonym for "enhance" is
a. reinforce b. reduce c. weaken d. diminish e. boost
- Designers try to blend traditional styles with modern ones. An antonym for "blend" is
a. mix b. combine c. isolate d. merge e. separate

5. They plan to assemble the new shelves today. A synonym for "assemble" is
 a. disperse b. collect c. waste d. scatter e. gather
6. Nurses must show compassion toward their patients. An antonym for "compassion" is
 a. harshness b. sympathy c. cruelty d. kindness e. mercy
7. The phone kept distracting him during the meeting. A synonym for "distract" is
 a. sidetrack b. disturb c. immerse d. concentrate e. engage
8. The children were entertained by the magic show. An antonym for "entertained" is
 a. satisfied b. amused c. delighted d. displeased e. bored
9. Traffic came to a standstill after the accident. A synonym for "standstill" is
 a. advance b. deadlock c. flow d. continuation e. stalemate
10. Make sure the list is updated before the meeting. An antonym for "updated" is
 a. modernized b. outdated c. refreshed d. old-fashioned e. improved
11. Solar energy is renewable. An antonym for "renewable" is
 a. sustainable b. nonrenewable c. exhaustible d. inexhaustible e. ever-lasting
12. The police tracked the suspect's movements. A synonym for "tracked" is
 a. followed b. lost track of c. pursued d. ignored e. checked

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The museum displayed rare artifacts that belonged to a powerful ruled for centuries.
 a. dynamic b. dynasty c. diamond d. direction
2. Her explanation revealed a surprisingly understanding of economy for someone her age.
 a. sufficient b. soft-hearted c. sophistry d. sophisticated
3. Using a cotton significantly shortened the time needed to prepare cotton for market.
 a. bud b. tool c. loom d. gin
4. Check if your computer can support the new to prevent compatibility issues.
 a. version b. editor c. versatile d. portion
5. Developing rural areas requires reliable, including roads, bridges and utilities.
 a. infrared b. technology c. buildings d. infrastructure
6. Companies often modern technologies to improve efficiency and remain competitive.
 a. reject b. adopt c. ignore d. addict
7. The technicians tested all to ensure signals transmitted without interference or data loss.
 a. whales b. cords c. cables d. ropes
8. Her decision to start the charity without waiting for approval showed remarkable
 a. insensitive b. imperative c. infinitive d. initiative
9. Families sometimes rotate weekly to ensure no member feels bored by repeated tasks.
 a. chores b. shores c. scores d. floors
10. To rename a folder, simply it and choose the appropriate command from list.
 a. over-click b. side-click c. clicker d. right-click
11. The committee tried to lay the for long-term cooperation between the two institutions.
 a. grounds b. ground c. groundwork d. grounded
12. The research unit went full steam after receiving the new equipment.
 a. across b. aside c. above d. ahead
13. He demonstrated the principle of using to lift heavy objects with minimal effort.
 a. levers b. chains c. springs d. pulleys
14. The new software features efficiency by automating repetitive tasks for employees.
 a. disrupt b. diminish c. enhance d. hinder
15. Athletes follow strict training schedules to strength before major competitions.
 a. lessen b. restrict c. minimize d. maximize
16. All students for the field trip should bring their permission slips.
 a. stored b. listed c. explained d. noted

17. The cultural festival featured exhibitions showing local that reflect the region's heritage.
a. crafts b. architecture c. technologies d. studies
18. Modern robotics relies on precise to ensure accurate automated operations.
a. physics b. thermodynamics c. mechanics d. optics
19. The new table had a/an surface that felt nice to touch.
a. rigid b. awkward c. clumsy d. smooth
20. Homeowners are advised to doors and windows at night to prevent theft.
a. attribute b. secure c. dismantle d. forfeit
21. Rural economies depend on to sustain local communities and export food worldwide.
a. technology b. industry c. agriculture d. commerce
22. His success is to the hard work he put into his studies.
a. isolated b. communicated c. detached d. connected
23. The factory contains heavy that requires frequent maintenance.
a. mechanic b. machinery c. machine d. machinist
24. The engineer was praised as a talented for restoring the system after hours of failure.
a. troubleshooter b. translator c. pathfinder d. timekeeper
25. Engineers made a/an study to ensure the project could continue without obstacles.
a. imitative b. imperative c. derivative d. initiative
26. A real prefers conversations that challenge assumptions rather than simple topics.
a. syndicate b. sophisticate c. dedicate d. replicate
27. In the past, farmers would huge amounts of cotton during harvest seasons.
a. grin b. gin c. gain d. pin
28. Modern processors complete billions of operations at a speed no human can
a. touch b. clutch c. match d. switch
29. Various streaming platforms us entertained with new series that appeal to us.
a. have b. do c. keep d. give
30. Users should follow steps in the correct order, not the way around.
a. other b. another c. others d. either
31. Engineers reviewed all safety before approving the new machine for public use.
a. contaminations b. condemnations c. conventions d. considerations
32. Healthy habits become part of daily when practiced consistently.
a. tape b. red-tape c. rural d. routine
33. Futurists debate how a world might alter human roles in creative industries.
a. machinery b. machine drive c. machine-driven d. machine driven
34. Following a process reduced errors and helped trainees learn complicated tasks.
a. stepped b. stepping c. step on step d. step-by-step
35. Advanced imaging tools help physicians give diagnoses faster.
a. accuracy b. accurate c. accurately d. accreted
36. Medical staff install sensors to patients' hearts remotely.
a. monsoon b. montage c. moniker d. monitor
37. Factory supervisors require staff to the machines regularly to ensure safety.
a. cheer b. choke c. check d. cheque
38. Wearable devices can accurately track our heart during exercise.
a. ritual b. rate c. root d. route
39. Try to life without electricity and consider how routines would change dramatically.
a. merge b. imagine c. melt d. emerge
40. Students attempted to the online meeting but they faced login errors.
a. join for b. join at c. join to d. join
41. Several new programs aim to tasks easier by simplifying user interfaces.
a. do b. have c. make d. perform

42. Writers use poetry for personal, allowing them to explore internal conflicts freely.
 a. expression b. intention c. addiction d. convention
43. The solar-..... irrigation tool helped distribute water evenly across large fields.
 a. power b. powering c. powered d. powers
44. Specialists worked overnight to repair the printer.
 a. broke b. broken c. breaking d. broker
45. Officials worked hard to the preparations needed for the launch of the new project.
 a. do b. make c. work d. have
46. Leaders encourage young innovators to the future with optimism.
 a. look to b. lock to c. leak to d. leak to
47. Cultural festivals old and new traditions to attract both youth and elders.
 a. blind b. blend c. bland d. bend
48. Several rural communities still traditional ways of life.
 a. converse b. reverse c. preserve d. diverse
49. Modern learning platforms offer educational by giving students real-time feedback.
 a. potency b. potentially c. potent d. potential
50. During the technical call, the agent guided the user to restore the lost data successfully.
 a. support b. supporter c. supportive d. supporting
51. International teams cooperate to drive projects that address environmental challenges.
 a. foreword b. forwarded c. forwardly d. forward
52. Governments encourage businesses to build factories for industrial modernization.
 a. computerizing b. compute c. computerized d. computer
53. Ancient engineering show how early civilizations constructed massive structures.
 a. markers b. marbles c. visuals d. marvels
54. Volunteer groups play an important in raising awareness about endangered species.
 a. relay b. rule c. roll d. role
55. The northern plateau is in ancient wonders that attract researchers every year.
 a. reach b. rich c. richly d. ridge
56. Scientists on precise measurements when evaluating long-term climate patterns.
 a. relay b. rely c. replay d. relive
57. The meaning becomes clearer once you examine the words used by the author.
 a. surrounding b. round c. surround d. surrounded
58. Negotiations a standstill once both parties refused to adjust their conditions.
 a. came b. got c. came to d. went
59. She didn't study abroad; she stayed home to support her family in a difficult period.
 a. instead of b. instead c. inside d. instead at
60. Students who read widely often a large amount of vocabulary.
 a. inquire b. enquire c. require d. acquire
61. Many travelers felt excited as the train approached its final after a long journey.
 a. destiny b. destination c. design d. decision
62. After a long investigation, the police decided to charge the suspect theft.
 a. on b. of c. with d. about
63. The teacher put him in of distributing the homework.
 a. responsible b. change c. charge d. irresponsibility
64. During the exam, students had to the correct answer before handing in their papers.
 a. wing b. ring c. ding d. dent
65. Modern houses use special materials to the walls and keep indoor temperatures stable.
 a. inflate b. isolate c. insulate d. illustrate
66. To prepare for exams, students need personal that helps them study consistently.
 a. discipline b. system c. display d. dismiss

1. Reported Statements الجمل الخبرية الغير مباشرة

- خطوات تحويل الجملة الخبرية من المباشر إلى غير المباشر

1. Changing the reporting verb تحويل فعل القول

- say / says / said (say / says / said) - say to / says to / said to (tell / tells / told)
 - He **said to** me, "I'm tired today." = He **told** me (that) he was tired that day.
 - She **said**, "I'll be home tomorrow." = She **promised** she **would** be home **the next day**.

2. Changing the inverted commas تحويل علامات التنصيص

- نحذف الفاصلة وعلامات التنصيص ونضيف (that) بعد فعل القول. نستطيع حذف كلمة (that) بعد فعل القول.
 - Ali **says**, "I'm ready for the exam." - Ali **says** (that) he is ready for the exam.

3. Changing the pronouns of the addresser and the addressee ضمائر المتكلم المخاطب

نحول (I / We) حسب المتكلم ونحول (you) حسب المخاطب ولا نغير (He / She / It / One / They)

- Ali said, "These are **mine**. They belong to **me**. I own **them**." مباشر
 Ali said (that) those were **his**. They belonged to **him** and **he** owned **them**. غير مباشر

4. Changing the tense علينا أن نحول الزمن إلى زمن آخر أسبق بدرجة واحدة في الماضي: تغيير الزمن

1. نحول أزمنة المضارع إلى أزمنة ماضي كما يلي

الزمن في المباشر	الزمن في غير المباشر
زمن المضارع البسيط (التصريف الأول للفعل)	زمن الماضي البسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل)
زمن المضارع المستمر (am / is / are + V.ing)	زمن الماضي المستمر (was / were + V.ing)
زمن المضارع التام (have / has + P.P)	زمن الماضي التام (had + P.P)
مضارع تام مستمر (have / has + been + V.ing)	ماضي تام مستمر (had + been + V.ing)
مصدر + will / can / may	مصدر + would / could / might
مصدر + shall (في المستقبل)	مصدر + would
مصدر + shall (في النصيحة)	مصدر + should
مصدر + must (ضرورة / الزام)	مصدر + must / had to
مصدر + must (استنتاج)	مصدر + must + have + P.P

2. أزمنة الماضي تبقى كما هي أو تحول إلى الصيغة التامة في الماضي

- زمن الماضي البسيط أو الماضي التام - زمن الماضي البسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل)
 - زمن الماضي المستمر أو الماضي التام - زمن الماضي المستمر (was / were + V.ing)

3. الأفعال الناقصة الآتية تبقى كما هي دون تحويل

would/ should / ought to / could / might / had to / had better / would rather/ used to

5. Changing demonstratives, time and place تحويل كلمات الإشارة والزمن والمكان

مباشر	غير مباشر	مباشر	غير مباشر
this	that	yesterday	the day before / the previous day
these	those	tomorrow	the day after / the next (following) day
here	there	اسم + next	اسم + the + after / the next (following)
today	that day	اسم + last	اسم + the + before / the previous

tonight	that night	tomorrow morning	the next (following) morning
now	then / at that time	this year / this month	that year / that month
at the moment	at that time	مدة + ago	مدة + before / مدة + earlier

Direct Ahmed said to me, "I **will** meet them **here tomorrow**."

Indirect Ahmed told me (that) **he would** meet them **there the next day**.

ملاحظات هامة جدا على تحويل الزمن والظروف

١ - لا نغير الزمن أو الظروف في الحالات الآتية: إذا كان فعل القول في زمن المضارع أو المستقبل البسيط:

Direct Sabry says, "I usually **have** a break for coffee at midday."

Indirect Sabry says he usually **has** a break for coffee at midday.

٢ إذا صاحب فعل القول: **now / just / just now / a moment (minute / short time) ago**

Direct Huda said just now, "I **have** met you before somewhere."

Indirect Huda said just now (that) **she has** met me before somewhere.

٣ إذا كانت الجملة بين علامات التنصيص تعبر عن حقيقة علمية:

Direct The teacher said, "The earth **orbits** the sun once a year."

Indirect The teacher said (that) the earth **orbits** the sun once a year.

٤ لا نغير أزمنة الحالتين الثانية والثالثة لـ (If):

Direct Ahmed said to me, "I **would go** with them you if I **had** enough time."

Indirect Ahmed told me that he **would go** with them if he **had** enough time.

٥ لا نغير أزمنة الجمل التي تتبع التعبيرات الآتية:

مصدر + (could (would) / ماضي تام / ماضي بسيط + **I wish / If only**

ماضي بسيط + **I'd rather** / ماضي بسيط + **It's time**

Direct Ahmed says, "I **wish I were** taller."

Indirect Ahmed says (that) he **wishes** he **were** taller.

Direct The mother said to her child, "It's time you **went** to bed."

Indirect The mother told her child (that) it **was** time he **went** to bed."

٦ إذا بلغت الجملة في نفس اليوم والمكان: لا نغير الظروف، بالتالي نملك الحرية في تغيير الزمن (الفعل) أو لا.

Direct Ali said, "I **will** meet them here again **tomorrow**."

Indirect Ali said (that) he **will** meet them here again **tomorrow**.

Indirect Ali said (that) he **would** meet them there again **tomorrow**.

2. Reported imperatives, suggestions and advice الأوامر والاقتراحات والنصائح الغير مباشرة

١. **Direct** الكلام المباشر:

(للاوامر المثبتة) "..... + مصدر الفعل" ، فعل قول + فاعل

(للاوامر المنفية) "..... + مصدر الفعل + Don't" ، فعل قول + فاعل

- The teacher said to us, "Keep silent." - Mum said to us, "Don't play with fire."

٢. **Indirect** الكلام الغير مباشر:

مصدر الفعل + to/ not to + (مفعول) + فعل قول + فاعل

- Mum said to me, "Keep the door open." = Mum asked/told me to keep the door open.

- The teacher said to us, "Don't make noise." = The teacher ordered us not to make noise.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She said that they a new machine. (SB)
 a. builds b. build c. have built d. had built
2. He said that their house long time ago. (SB)
 a. is built b. had been built c. built d. has been built
3. The engineer said that machines jobs easier. (SB)
 a. makes b. made c. are making d. has made
4. The police officer told us without a seat belt. (SB)
 a. not drive b. to not drive c. not to drive d. don't drive
5. He asked me the report. (SB)
 a. writing b. to write c. write d. wrote
6. The teacher told the students their homework. (SB)
 a. do b. to do c. did d. doing
7. Ibrahim promised that he us as soon as the plane arrives. (2025 – First Session)
 a. will phone b. would phone c. phoned d. phone
8. Maria said she had not visited her aunt (2025 – Experimental)
 a. yesterday b. the day after c. the previous day d. the following day
9. I suggest that this room for the children. (2025 – Experimental)
 a. leave b. be left c. was left d. is leaving
10. Our teacher insists that the group organized. (2025 – Experimental)
 a. being b. to be c. be d. are
11. Mona was when her father sold his old car, he would buy a new one. (2025 – Exp.)
 a. spoken b. said c. told d. asked
12. My father suggests that Heba the instructions of her doctor to get better. (2025 - Exp.)
 a. follows b. follow c. followed d. following
13. Hospitals around the world don't permit; it's forbidden. (2025 - Exp.)
 a. to smoke b. smokes c. smoke d. smoking
14. Ali told me that he his lesson at that moment. (LM)
 a. was revising b. has been revising c. will revise d. was revised
15. I was told that a secondary school in the neighbouring village. (LM)
 a. has built b. has been built c. had been built d. had built
16. My father told me that we to the club until we finished our homework. (LM)
 a. don't go b. won't go c. hadn't gone d. wouldn't go
17. Samir says he the summer holiday in Hurgada when he has finished exams. (LM)
 a. has spent b. will spend c. would spend d. had spent
18. The manager declared the company punctual workers the next month. (LM)
 a. had promoted b. is promoting c. is going to promote d. was going to promote
19. Tom said that he about that accident before he returned home. (LM)
 a. hadn't told b. isn't told c. hadn't been told d. won't tell
20. She informed me Rami a terrible accident while he was driving to work. (LM)
 a. have had b. had c. will be having d. is having
21. I told her that she a bad mistake and that she should be cautious later on. (LM)
 a. had made b. is making c. would make d. has made
22. Gaber he was ready for the interview. (LM)
 a. told b. said c. wondered d. informed
23. The social studies teacher told us Russia the world's largest country by landmass. (LM)
 a. was b. is c. has been d. will be
24. Tarek complained that the service at that hotel bad. (LM)
 a. has been b. is c. was d. would be

25. The interviewer said that they would inform me of the result of the interview (LM)
 a. next week b. last week c. the following week d. the week before
26. My friend recommends that I that mobile because it isn't a smartphone. (LM)
 a. to buy b. not to buy c. don't buy d. buy
27. The policeman the rash driver not to drive so fast. (LM)
 a. made b. wondered c. instructed d. said
28. I suggested that Ali to the library with us. (LM)
 a. went b. to go c. go d. both a and c
29. My friend recommends "Oliver Twist" as it is interesting. (LM)
 a. reading b. to read c. read d. not reading
30. "Don't park here; it is forbidden". – The policeman said we park there. (LM)
 a. should b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. must
31. My friend suggests for the next bus because it is too late. (LM)
 a. not waiting b. to waiting c. we waited d. don't wait
32. The teacher told us that we never succeed without hard work.
 a. would b. had c. will d. have
33. He said he wished he more time in the day to help people.
 a. has had b. had c. would d. could
34. She told me just now that she the plan tomorrow.
 a. would make b. would be made c. will be made d. will make
35. She said she was going to the cinema
 a. tonight b. the day before c. the following day d. tomorrow
36. She says she soon.
 a. came b. had come c. is coming d. would come
37. She said she had prepared dinner
 a. the night after b. the night before c. last night d. the following night
38. Last Friday, she said she wouldn't go to school
 a. the day after b. tomorrow c. the day before d. yesterday
39. They said that they the following Friday.
 a. had met b. met c. are meeting d. were meeting
40. She said she by her aunt the day before.
 a. had visited b. had been visited c. was visited d. visited
41. She told me she very angry.
 a. was b. was being c. is d. is being
42. The coach the skill to be done again.
 a. told b. said c. ordered d. ask
43. My friend that I join a sports club.
 a. told b. said to c. recommended d. said
44. The policeman said that we exceed the speed limit.
 a. not to b. not c. don't have to d. mustn't
45. She shout at her.
 a. asked me not b. asked not I c. asked me not to d. asked not
46. It's important she at work in time.
 a. be b. to be c. been d. being
47. I wanted me my money back.
 a. that to give b. him to give c. him give d. him to be given
48. I insist that this plan by another one.
 a. be replaced b. to replace c. to be replaced d. replace
49. She said they had insulted her in public.
 a. this b. us c. no word d. what

50. The mother that her daughter tidy her room before going out.
 a. advised b. said c. told d. insisted

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. "I have never seen such a wonderful film," said Ahmed. (that)
2. Mom said to me, "Turn off the lights." (ordered me)
3. "I don't have any brothers," said Mona. (that)
4. Samir said to us, "I haven't received any news today." (stated that)
5. Ola said, "I can't come to the party because I'm tired." (explained that)
6. "Come and have dinner with me," Amir said to Gameela. (invited)
7. "We'll have finished the task by tomorrow afternoon," said Amgad. (said that)
8. She told me her uncle had had an accident the week before. ("My uncle")
9. Samira said to me, "I bought this laptop last week." (told me that)
10. "I'll send this for you as soon as I can," said Salwa. (told me)
11. "A thief has broken into my flat," said Ali to the officer. (reported that)
12. He said to me, "Could you check the system?" (asked)
13. "We have done this experiment several times," said Doaa. (complained that)
14. He said to me, "Can you update the software of my computer?" (asked)
15. She said to me, "I must leave now." (told me that)
16. He said to me, "Please, help me with my homework". (told)
17. "The teacher said to me, "You mustn't give the research to anyone." (warned me)
18. The teacher said, "Please, write your name." (asked me)
19. "I saw her at the party yesterday," said Akram about Ola. (Akram told me)
20. The guide said, "Don't touch the ancient statue." (not to)

خلاصة مهارات الكتابة

Writing Skills: Hints

Writing tips on argumentative essays نصائح لكتابة المقال الجدلي

- An argumentative essay is a type of writing where you give your claim on a topic and support it with reasons and evidence.

المقال الجدلي هو نوع من الكتابة تُقدّم فيه وجهة نظرك حول موضوع ما، مدعّمًا إياها بالحجج والأدلة.

- You also mention the opposite claim and explain why you think your claim is stronger. كما تُشير إلى وجهة النظر المُعاكسة، موضحًا لماذا تعتقد أن وجهة نظرك أقوى.

Parts of an argumentative essay أجزاء المقال الجدلي

1. **Introduction:** Introduce the topic - give background - state your claim (thesis).
2. **Body Paragraph 1:** Your first reason - give examples or evidence.
3. **Body Paragraph 2:** Your second reason - more examples or facts.
4. **Opposing View:** Mention the opposite side- say why you disagree.
5. **Conclusion:** Restate your claim- summarize your main points.

- Use these phrases when: استخدم التعبيرات التالية

- **Stating your claim:** I believe that... / In my opinion... / I think it is clear that...
- **Supporting your claim:** - Firstly,... / Another reason is... / For example,...
- **Introducing the other side:** Some people say that/ It is argued that/ On the other hand
- **Refuting the other side:** However, I disagree because... / This may be true, but...
I believe this is not strong enough because...
- **Concluding:** In conclusion,... / To sum up,... / That's why I believe...

Exercises on Writing Skills

- Which phrase can be used to refute the opposing side?
 - "I agree with the point that...."
 - "This may be true, but ..."
 - "To sum up, ..."
 - "In my opinion, ..."
- In an argumentative essay, body Paragraph 1 usually contains
 - a quote
 - your first reason
 - the opposing view
 - the concluding idea
- The main purpose of an argumentative essay is to
 - tell a story
 - give your claim
 - describe a place
 - summarize a book
- In the main body of an argumentative essay you write paragraphs to
 - start the essay
 - conclude the essay
 - support your opinion
 - introduce your topic
- In an argumentative essay, body Paragraph 2 usually contains
 - another reason
 - the title
 - the introduction
 - a question
- Which of the following phrases can be used to support your claim?
 - Another reason is
 - On the other hand,
 - I think it is obvious that
 - However, I disagree because
- In an argumentative essay, an introduction should include:
 - Opposing view
 - Conclusion
 - Background, topic, and thesis statement
 - Only your first reason
- Which phrase can you use to state your claim?
 - Firstly, ...
 - I believe that ...
 - On the other hand, ...
 - In conclusion, ...

تمارين على القواعد التراكمية (قاعدة: If)

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- If you read quickly, you quickly too.
 - will be learned
 - learn
 - would learn
 - would have learned
- If we go swimming, we'd better take a towel.
 - are going to
 - would
 - must to
 - will
- If that milk boiled, there would have been no bacteria in it.
 - had
 - would be
 - had been
 - both a and c
- If the final match tomorrow, I would watch it at the stadium.
 - is
 - will be
 - has been
 - were
-, metals expand.
 - When heat
 - If heated
 - Unless heat
 - Unless heated
- If you really want to be an engineer, you be good at math's.
 - will
 - should
 - would
 - shall
- Would you angry if they didn't invite you?
 - have been
 - have
 - be
 - been
- If metal is heated, it (دور أول ٢٠١٤)
 - will expand
 - expand
 - expands
 - would expand
- I always a severe headache if I spend much time on the computer. (دور أول ٢٠١٤)
 - will get
 - got
 - am getting
 - get
- If you face a problem, the police. (أزهر ٢٠١٣)
 - will call
 - would call
 - call
 - can call

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- It was cloudy yesterday so I didn't see the eclipse. (If) (2008)
- Heating makes water boil. (If) (2007)
- I didn't have an umbrella. Therefore I got wet in the rain. (If) (1995)
- Magda lost her tennis match because she didn't have enough practice. (If) (1994)
- I wasn't able to buy the books I wanted because I didn't have enough money. (If) (1992)
- He was late for work. He didn't hear the news. (If) (1986)

A. Vocabulary

1. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- The care she gives to her skin makes it smooth. An antonym for "smooth" is
a. flat b. harsh c. polished d. stable e. hard
- We want the system to work properly. A synonym for "properly" is
a. inappropriately b. conveniently c. suitably d. wrongly e. incorrectly
- Negotiations came to a standstill after conflicts. An antonym for "standstill" is
a. death b. advance c. deadlock d. stalemate e. progress
- The buzz distracted me from studying. A synonym for "distracted" is
a. disturbed b. immersed c. diverted d. focused e. engaged

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The manager asked us to finish the report with because the client was waiting. (SB)
a. urgency b. utility c. emergency d. antiquity
- The computer will not work if the correct are not installed. (SB)
a. divers b. drivers c. drives d. derivatives
- The IT team is trying to the network problem. (SB)
a. transplant b. transparent c. troubleshoot d. transport
- The website was yesterday for maintenance. (SB)
a. offline b. a line c. online d. linear
- The software needs to be to the latest version. (SB)
a. automated b. outdated c. updated d. estimated
- We called a to repair the broken printer. (SB)
a. technician b. technical c. technique d. techno
- The GPS app helps drivers to stay on the right to their destination. (SB)
a. trick b. track c. troop d. tick
- Modern washing machines and fridges are common in most homes. (SB)
a. apprehends b. appendix c. appendices d. appliances
- The company installed an system to pack the products without human labour. (SB)
a. automated b. abandoned c. old-fashioned d. antiqued
- Soap and vinegar are common products. (SB)
a. house-holding b. household c. house-held d. held housing
- After the power cut, all the machines in the factory came to a complete (SB)
a. standstill b. summit c. statement d. station
- Modern inventions can make household easier. (SB)
a. missions b. omissions c. missiles d. risks

B. Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- He said he had played football two weeks
a. ago b. earlier c. after d. for
- She said she made a new plan.
a. had been b. was being c. was d. had
- They that their neighbour had made so much noise.
a. complained b. told c. said to d. wondered
- He said, "It's time we united". He said it was time they
a. had united b. united c. have united d. unite
- The plan is suggested by me.
a. changing b. being changed c. to change d. to be changed

6. She has just told me that she was given a prize
- a. tomorrow b. the day after c. yesterday d. the day before
7. He recommended the ice cream.
- a. trying b. tried c. that try d. to try
8. She says she for a computer company. She enjoys her job a lot.
- a. works b. has worked c. worked d. is working
9. The teacher urged the students a way to end the project early.
- a. that find b. finding c. to be found d. to find
10. The manager the workers to be on time.
- a. said b. told c. said to d. say

2. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The doctor said, "Take this medicine regularly." (advised me)
2. The supervisor said to me, "Turn on the machine!" (told)
3. She said to us, "Don't touch the wires!" (warned)
4. He said, "We will visit the zoo tomorrow." (would)

C. Translation

١. التفاؤل طريق للقناعة بما هو متاح من أجل تحقيق ما هو مطلوب.

- a. Optimist is a bathe to satisfaction with what is available to achieve what is required.
- b. Optimism is a path to satisfaction with what is available to achieve what is required.
- c. Optimist is a bath to satisfaction with which is available to achieve what requires.
- d. Optimism is a path to satisfaction with what is available to achieve what required.

٢. يتمتع الإنترنت بميزات كثيرة تساعد الشباب على الوصول إلى المعلومات التعليمية بسهولة.

- a. The Internet has many factors these help youth to easy excess educational information.
- b. The Internet has many features that help youth to easy excess educational information.
- c. The Internet has many features that help youth to easily access educational information.
- d. The Internet has many factors that help youth to easily access educational information.
3. There are several forces which can cause changes in the Earth's surface including volcanoes, earthquakes, tornadoes, floods, and forest fires. One of the slowest types of forces which cause such changes is erosion.

١. هناك العديد من القوى التي يمكن أن تسبب تغيرات في سطح الأرض بما في ذلك البراكين والزلازل والأعاصير والفيضانات وحرائق الغابات. يعد التآكل من أبطأ أنواع القوى التي تسبب مثل هذه التغيرات.
- ب. هناك العديد من القوات التي يمكن أن تسبب تغيرات في سطح الأرض بما في ذلك البراكين والزلازل والرياحين والفيضانات وحرائق الغابات. يعد التعري من أبطأ أنواع القوى التي تسبب مثل هذه التغيرات.
- ج. هناك العديد من القوات التي يمكن أن تسبب تحولات في سطح الأرض بما في ذلك البراكين والمحاور والأعاصير والفيضانات وحرائق الغابات. يعد التآكل من أبطأ أنواع القوى التي تسبب مثل هذه التغيرات.
- د. هناك العديد من القوى التي يمكن أن تسبب تغيرات في باطن الأرض بما في ذلك البراكين والزلازل والأعاصير والفيضانات وحرائق الغابات. يعد التآكل من أبطأ أنواع القوى التي تسبب مثل هذه التغيرات.
4. Prevention can be done by storing garbage in sealed containers and dispose of it regularly.

- أ. يمكن تحقيق الحماية عن طريق تخزين القمامة في حاويات محكمة الفتح والتخلص منها بانتظام.
- ب. يمكن تحقيق الوقاية عن طريق تخزين القمامة في حاويات محكمة الفتح والتخلص منها بانتظام.
- ج. يمكن تحقيق الحماية عن طريق تخزين القمامة في حاويات محكمة الغلق والتخلص منها بانتظام.
- د. يمكن تحقيق الوقاية عن طريق تخزين القمامة في حاويات محكمة الغلق والتخلص منها بانتظام.

D. Reading Comprehension

1. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

The *Invisible Man* الرجل الخفي, by H.G. Wells, is a science fiction story written in the late 1800s. The story is about an evil شرير and selfish man named Griffin. After years of study and experiments, he discovered a way to make himself invisible. Griffin was very pleased with this

discovery. He could steal without leaving a trace اثر. He could rob people's homes without fear of being caught. He made many plans as he dreamed of his new life of riches.

But Griffin had not thought about the problems of being invisible. Although his body could not be seen, it still needed to be clothed بپوشانده شده and fed like any other body. Griffin lived in London, where the weather was often cool and damp رطوبت. He needed clothes and shoes but soon found that they were hard to steal. People would not notice him, but they would notice clothing flying away. Food was another problem. Griffin had made his stomach invisible, but not the food going into it. He had to hide himself when he ate.

Finally, Griffin disguised تظاهر کرد himself. He wore a big coat, scarves, bandages, and sunglasses. He was able to pass as a man who had been badly hurt. He rented a room in a boardinghouse بنسبون and began working on his experiment again. But the townspeople soon discovered his secret. While he was trying to get away, Griffin damaged the house and hurt several people. Soon people all over were searching for him. As Griffin ran from town to town, he became more ruthless and evil. He killed almost anyone who crossed his path. Finally, his terrible way of life caught up with him. The experiment he thought to bring happiness only brought a cruel and lonely death.

- The invisible man's life was
 - happy and rich.
 - full of funny events.
 - full of hiding and terror.
 - full of messy and obvious events.
- Griffin couldn't hide his
 - face
 - body
 - food
 - coat
- Griffin hoped his experiment would make him
 - wealthy
 - a scientist
 - well known
 - poor
- "Griffin became more ruthless and evil". The opposite of "ruthless" is
 - invisible
 - mean
 - wealthy
 - mild
- The townspeople wanted to catch Griffin in order to him.
 - punish
 - host
 - reward
 - feed
- What lesson does this story teach us?
 - Be satisfied with what you have.
 - Don't count your chickens before they hatch.
 - Be careful with science experiments.
 - Never cry over spilt milk.
- How did Griffin meet his end?
 - He drowned in a river
 - He died cruelly
 - He committed suicide
 - He killed himself
- The underlined words "his terrible way of life caught up with him" mean that
 - Griffin died comfortably in his bed.
 - Griffin was rewarded for his kindness.
 - Griffin was punished despite his kindness.
 - Griffin had the destiny he deserved.

2. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Jane slipped the shiny pen into her pocket. She had been eyeing that gleaming لامع treasure at the shopping centre for about a month. Besides, she was **green with envy** at how other children at school had more beautiful pens than she. When she found this unique pen, she was disappointed to find that it was too expensive to afford. That's when she decided to steal it.

Nervous and shivering ترسده at what she had just done, she put both her hands into her pockets and headed for the exit مخرج. She was surprised that she got off so easily and she sighed سهرت with relief بارتياح. Thinking that she did not want to spend another minute at the scene of her crime, she walked briskly بخفة towards the main entrance.

She was five steps from the main exit when a security guard tapped her on the shoulder. "I believe you have a silver pen?" Jane was stunned مصدومة. She did not know how to react. She saw the security guard communicating with someone else. Jane's first instinct was to run but **that** would only attract more attention since people were already beginning to stare.

The guard took Jane to the manager's office. The manager called her parents and explained the matter to them. Later, when Jane's parents arrived, they paid for the pen and took her home. Since Jane was a juvenile *صغيرة* and a first time offender *مذنب*, no police report was made. Jane regretted stealing and promised not to disappoint her parents again.

- Where exactly was Jane caught for her crime?
 - Inside the shop
 - Near the manager's office
 - At her house
 - Near the exit
- Why wasn't the theft reported to the police?
 - As the manager was Jane's relative.
 - The guard insisted on not doing this.
 - Because Jane cried a lot.
 - It was the first theft for Jane.
- Why did Jane not escape from the guard?
 - So that he wouldn't tell the manager.
 - She didn't want the guard to report the police.
 - She wanted to avoid the looks of the people.
 - She didn't want to attract more attention.
- Why did Jane admire the pen?
 - Because it was owned by other children.
 - Because it was unique and shiny.
 - Because it was very expensive.
 - Because she couldn't afford it.
- What does the underlined word "*that*" refer to?
 - running
 - stealing
 - staring
 - communicating
- What pushed Jane to steal the pen?
 - The pen was expensive
 - The pen didn't appeal to her
 - She hated the shop owner
 - She wanted to revenge for herself
- What does the writer mean by saying Jane was "*green with envy*"?
 - She was pale
 - She was tired
 - She was a criminal
 - She was jealous
- What is the writer's attitude towards Jane's deed?
 - He is neutral
 - He hates her
 - He is on her side
 - He supports her

E. Writing

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We use transitions like "*due to*" so as to
 - express the result of something
 - start stating some new ideas
 - summarize a whole paragraph
 - give reasons for something
- Which of the following is used in an essay to give opinions?
 - to conclude
 - consequently
 - personally
 - whilst
- Which sentence is correct?
 - "I'm very pleased," said Samy.
 - "I'm very pleased," said Samy.
 - "I'm very pleased,"; said Samy.
 - "I'm very pleased,"; said Samy.
- A/An is used to join two words together, especially to form a compound noun.
 - hyphen
 - comma
 - colon
 - semicolon

2. Write about (180 – 200) words on one of the following:

- A famous legend in your country.
- Machines and the future of work.

3. Write a paragraph of Six lines on the following:

- An introduction for an essay on "Communicating in person is better than communication online."
- A concluding paragraph of an essay on "The Importance of Distance Learning"

F. The Novel

- Answer the following questions:

- How can we tell that Fernand's feelings for Mercédès were more than friendship? (SB)
- Do you think Edmond should have noticed Fernand's jealousy earlier? Why (not)? (SB)
- Why did Ville fort destroy the letter?

Word	Meaning	Synonyms	Antonyms
extreme	شديد	severe / intense	moderate / mild
implement	ينفذ / يطبق	carry out / execute	abandon / neglect
intensify	يزداد حدة	heighten / escalate	undermine / hinder
justice	العدل / الإنصاف	lawfulness / integrity	falsehood / corruption
marginalize	يهمش	exclude / disempower	elevate / promote
mitigate	يخفف / يقلل	alleviate / soothe	agitate / provoke
persistence	عزيمة / إصرار	stamina / endurance	lethargy / laziness
sustainable	مستدام	lasting / maintainable	unsustainable / temporary

Key Vocabulary

equity	إنصاف / مساواة	baking	حار جدًا	accompany	يصحب / يحدث مع
meteorologist	عالم أرصاد	freezing cold	بارد جدًا	phenomenon	ظاهرة
forecast	التنبؤ بالطقس	chilly	بارد قليلا	exposed to	معرض لـ
extreme weather	طقس قاسي	pouring with rain	تمطر بغزارة	megacities	مدن ضخمة
heat wave	موجة حارة	humid	رطب	climate migration	هجرة مناخية
pessimistic about	متشائم	stormy	عاصف	large-scale	واسع النطاق
scorching (hot)	شديد الحرارة	foggy	ضبابي	expansion	توسع / امتداد
boiling	شديد الحرارة	overcast	ملبّد بالغيوم	indicate	يشير إلى / يدل على

Vocabulary & Prepositions

emphasize	يؤكد	empower	يُعزّز / يقوي	optimistic about	متفائل
extent	المدى / القدر	majority	غالبية / أكثرية	draught	مسودة / تيار هواء
at its core	في جوهرها	minority	أقلية	drought	فترة جفاف / جفاف
negative outcome	نتيجة سلبية	unheard	غير مسموع / لا صوت له	global activism	النشاط العالمي
insights	رؤى / أفكار	run a campaign	بدير حملة	take action	يتخذ إجراء
youth innovators	مبتكرون شباب	experience	يختبر / يواجه	carbon footprint	بصمة كربونية
tangible change	تغيير ملموس	climate justice	عدالة مناخية	higher taxes	ضرائب أعلى
crisis	أزمة	profound issue	قضية عميقة	fair policies	سياسات عادلة
weather forecast	توقع طقس	industrialized	صناعي	food shortage	نقص الغذاء
various regions	مناطق مختلفة	immediate	فوري	rainfall pattern	نمط المطر
particularly	خاصة	financially	ماليا	resources	موارد

destructive	مدمر	trap heat	يحبس الحرارة	frequent	متكرر
deliver	يوصل / يقدم	dramatically	بشكل مثير (كبير)	thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية
last for	يستمر لمدة	deadly	مميت	hurricane	إعصار
melting	ذوبان / انصهار	glaciers	أنهار جليدية	a potential rise	زيادة محتملة
authorities	السلطات	neighborhood	منطقة	approximately	تقريبا
go off	يرن (المنبه)	in advance	مقما	far greater	أكبر بكثير
in average	في المتوسط	projections	توقعات / تقديرات	trend	اتجاه / صيحة
mechanisms	آليات	driven by	مدفوعا بـ	potential (n)	قوة / مقدرة
ice sheets	صفائح جليدية	accelerated	سريع / متسارع	potential (adj.)	محتمل / ممكن
situated in	تقع في	dominant	مسيطر	reside in	يعيش في
notably	بشكل ملحوظ / ولا سيما	contributor to	مساهم في	estimate	يقدر / يحسب
urban centers	مراكز حضرية	including	شاملا / متضمنا	significant	كبير
models	نماذج	commitment	التزام	flood risks	مخاطر الفيضان
demonstrate	يوضح	growing	متزايد	recognition	اعتراف
address	يعالج / يواجه	modify	يعدل / يغير	pressing	عاجل / ملح
factors	عوامل	implications	نتائج / تداعيات	hire employee	يوظف موظفا
ruin	دمار / خراب	range from ... to	يتراوح ..	characteristics	سمات
advocate for	يدافع عن	ethical business	عمل أخلاقي	matter	يهم / يؤثر

Idioms - Collocations - Expressions

bear the brunt	يتحمل العبء الأكبر	how far ahead	إلى أي مدى قدما
shoulder the burden	يتحمل العبء	rising sea levels	مستويات بحر مرتفعة
face the music	يواجه العواقب	recycling campaign	حملة لإعادة التدوير
take the heat	يتحمل اللوم	low-income community	مجتمع محدود الدخل
develop solutions for / to	يطور حلولاً لـ	give a voice to	يناصر / يدافع عن
waste reduction programs	برامج تقليل نفايات	take responsibility for	يتولى مسؤولية
flood-prone regions	مناطق معرضة للفيضان	take precautions / steps	يتخذ احتياطات / خطوات
gain knowledge	يكتسب معرفة	take measures (procedures)	يتخذ تدبير (إجراء)
further from the truth	أبعد عن الحقيقة	reversed overnight	يُحل في يوم ويلة
population displacement	نزوح السكان	thermal expansion	التمدد الحراري للماء
low-lying coastal zones	مناطق ساحلية منخفضة	amphibious architecture	العمارة البرمائية
greenhouse gas emissions	الانبعاثات غازات دفيئة	marginalized communities	مجتمعات مهمشة

Language Notes

as a result + جملة	لذلك	as a result of + V.ing/N	كنتيجة لـ / بسبب
expert at + V.ing	خبير في	expert on (in) + اسم	خبير في
every (each) day / daily	كل يوم (ظرف)	everyday / daily	يومي (صفة)
attached (connected) to	موصول بـ	attached (connected) with	مرتبط بـ
because / as / since / for + جملة	لأن	because of / due to + V.ing/N	بسبب
other than	عدا - غير	rather than	بدلاً من - أكثر من
insist on + V.ing / Noun	بصر على	persist in + V.ing / Noun	بصر على
result in / lead to / bring about	يسبب	result from	ينتج عن
lie / lied / lied / lying (to)	يكذب على	lie / lay / lain / lying (in / on)	يستلقي / يقع
lay / laid / laid / laying	نضع البيض	stand / be located (situated)	يقع في مكان

Vocabulary Question Bank بنك أسئلة الكلمات

A. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- They praised the new law because it promotes among citizens.
a. justice b. unfairness c. equity d. injustice e. inequality
- The of ignoring global warming will be disastrous كارثة.
a. effects b. causes c. sources d. origins e. results
- Planting trees can mitigate air pollution. A synonym for "mitigate" is
a. alleviate b. soothe c. aggravate d. agitate e. extend
- The winds intensified when the storm became near. An antonym for "intensify" is
a. soften b. sharpen c. deepen d. enhance e. soothe
- It's critical to follow the safety rules. An antonym for "critical" is
a. trivial b. significant c. urgent d. integral e. inessential
- They implemented a plan to save energy. A synonym for "implement" is
a. give up b. neglect c. lose d. carry out e. enforce
- He is in serious trouble as he ignored the warning signs. A synonym for "serious" is
a. dangerous b. humorous c. funny d. severe e. insignificant
- Persistence is an important source of success. An antonym for "persistence" is
a. perseverance b. lethargy c. resolution d. apathy e. stamina
- Ignoring rules can lead to serious consequences. The antonym of "consequences" is
a. effects b. reasons c. origins d. cases e. results
- Lack of sleep can affect your concentration. The synonym of "affect" is
a. ignore b. influence c. avoid d. weaken e. alter
- Education empowers us to make positive changes. A synonym of "empower" is
a. authorize b. limit c. hinder d. enable e. prevent
- The extreme weather destroyed the crops. An antonym of "extreme" is
a. severe b. intense c. wild d. mild e. moderate

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Farmers tend to the brunt of droughts because their crops depend on stable rainfall.
a. take b. bear c. face d. heat
- Developing countries should not shoulder the of climate change alone.
a. broaden b. border c. burden d. bridge
- After ignoring warnings, the company had to the music and pay a huge fine.
a. heat b. take c. wing d. face
- Leaders must be ready to take the when making difficult decisions.
a. music b. burden c. heat d. brunt

5. The workshop helped students solutions for real environmental problems.
 a. promote b. progress c. develop d. retire
6. Cities around the world are introducing waste programs to cut landfill use.
 a. increase b. reduction c. promotion d. enhancement
7. People living in flood-..... regions must prepare emergency plans each year.
 a. prone b. borne c. prime d. primary
8. You knowledge faster when you actively practice what you learn.
 a. earn b. win c. beat d. gain
9. Some people think climate change is not real, but nothing could be from the truth.
 a. further b. factor c. feature d. fractional
10. Rising sea levels may cause massive population in coastal areas.
 a. displacement b. attachment c. negotiation d. involvement
11. Low-..... coastal zones are at high risk of flooding from storm surges and sea-level rise.
 a. laying b. relying c. allying d. lying
12. Reducing greenhouse gas is essential to slow the effects of global warming.
 a. commissions b. emissions c. missiles d. missions
13. Scientists warn that sea levels could lead to large-scale population displacement.
 a. raising b. rising c. rousing d. arising
14. Local authorities organized a recycling that collected thousands of plastic bottles.
 a. crump b. campaign c. campus d. coaster
15. Programs targeting communities help provide clean water and better healthcare.
 a. low-income b. income-low c. lower incomes d. incomes lower
16. The project aims to give a to marginalized communities affected by pollution.
 a. noise b. voice c. voter d. vice
17. Companies must take for their environmental impact.
 a. responsible b. responsibility c. responsibly d. irresponsible
18. Residents were advised to take before the storm hit.
 a. cautious b. provoking c. precautions d. proverbs
19. The government took to reduce traffic congestion in the city.
 a. misses b. measures c. calculates d. estimates
20. Market gains were overnight when unexpected news caused panic selling.
 a. served b. reserved c. reversed d. conversed
21. Rising ocean temperatures cause expansion, which contributes to higher sea levels.
 a. thermal b. mortal c. immortal d. moral
22. In flood-prone regions, architecture allows buildings to float when water levels rise.
 a. ambiguous b. vague c. obvious d. amphibious
23. Programs that support communities can help reduce social inequality.
 a. mortified b. marginalized c. migrated d. mentioned
24. The government plans to new environmental laws to reduce pollution.
 a. imperfect b. implement c. carry down d. impact
25. As the storm approached the coast, the winds began to evacuating residents.
 a. alleviate b. testify c. soften d. intensify
26. The lawyer worked tirelessly to ensure the innocent man received the he deserved.
 a. justice b. fair c. injustice d. unjust
27. Planting more trees in the city can help the harmful effects of air pollution.
 a. mitigate b. increase c. enhance d. reinforce
28. Her in studying every day helped her pass the exam with outstanding results.
 a. assistance b. negligence c. ignorance d. persistence
29. Many countries are now investing in energy sources such as wind and solar power.
 a. marginalized b. suspected c. sustainable d. suspicious

30. The project aims to create in education by giving all students the same chances.
 a. quietness b. equity c. inequality d. unequal
31. We walked for almost an hour in the sun, and by the end we were exhausted.
 a. breaking b. baking c. freezing d. mild
32. Although it was cold outside, the players continued the game with determination.
 a. freezing b. scorching c. baking d. peaking
33. According to the latest weather, a heavy storm is expected to arrive later tonight.
 a. forehead b. foremost c. forecast d. cast
34. The weather turned in the evening, so we wrapped ourselves in blankets.
 a. scorching b. chilly c. baking d. hiking
35. Without proper protection, the workers were to dangerous chemicals.
 a. exported b. imposed c. proposed d. exposed
36. The match was delayed because it had been with rain since early morning.
 a. peering b. rearing c. roaring d. pouring
37. As populations grow, more will appear, especially in developing countries.
 a. megacities b. mechanics c. magnets d. mandates
38. The wave lasted almost a month, causing schools to close.
 a. high b. heat c. height d. hit
39. The weather was so that even standing still made us feel sweaty and uncomfortable.
 a. humid b. humble c. mild d. moderate
40. Climate is becoming more common as extreme weather threatens livelihoods.
 a. mitigation b. migration c. dimension d. occupation
41. The sea was too for fishermen to go out, so all boats stayed safely at the harbor.
 a. wonderful b. perfect c. stormy d. proper
42. The company announced an plan that includes opening new branches in 5 countries.
 a. imperfection b. expansion c. attraction d. intonation
43. The sky remained all day, making everything look dull and grey.
 a. broadcast b. overcast c. forecast d. instruct
44. Teachers often the importance of reviewing lessons regularly.
 a. emphasize b. sympathize c. regret d. fabricate
45. The argument is, at its, about fairness and equal access to opportunities.
 a. chorus b. chore c. core d. sheer
46. Ignoring early symptoms can lead to a negative, especially in serious illnesses.
 a. income b. previous c. outcome d. outline
47. Her experience in the field gave her deep that helped shape the final solution.
 a. sights b. resists c. insights d. slights
48. Youth around the world are developing creative technologies to fight climate change.
 a. innovators b. vibrators c. commands d. requests
49. Planting trees in local communities can create change that people can see and feel.
 a. tangible b. tandem c. triangular d. spectator
50. The hurricane was so that entire neighborhoods were wiped out.
 a. instructive b. constructive c. destructive d. perspective
51. The meeting was supposed to for an hour, but it extended to almost three.
 a. least b. last c. lost d. loss
52. Scientists warn that glaciers are faster than predicted, threatening sea levels worldwide.
 a. smelling b. melting c. brightening d. straightening
53. Students, on, spend three to four hours daily studying outside of class.
 a. percent b. average c. vintage d. savage
54. Scientists are studying natural that help regulate Earth's temperature.
 a. mechanisms b. glaciers c. mechanics d. merchants

55. The university is in the heart of the city, making it easy for students to commute.
 a. lied b. situated c. pieced d. planted
56. Several countries, Japan and Germany, are investing heavily in clean energy.
 a. notably b. noticeable c. remark d. remarkable
57. Scientists use computer to simulate how storms form and develop.
 a. moulds b. medals c. milds d. models
58. The research results that renewable energy can reduce carbon emissions.
 a. administer b. demonstrate c. dimension d. allocate
59. Governments must the causes of climate change, not just the effects.
 a. address b. dress c. actress d. invest
60. Many contribute to rising temperatures, including pollution and deforestation.
 a. vocals b. visuals c. factors d. feature
61. Heavy rainfall threatened to the crops that farmers had worked so hard to grow.
 a. roan b. ruin c. groan d. moan
62. She always for children's rights, especially in underserved communities.
 a. locates b. situates c. positions d. advocates
63. Education can young people to create positive change in their communities.
 a. power b. empower c. powder d. bride
64. The organization plans to a campaign to raise awareness about climate justice.
 a. run b. take c. give d. attain
65. Climate change is a issue that affects every aspect of human life.
 a. profound b. pirated c. private d. separated
66. Greenhouse gases heat in the atmosphere, causing global temperatures to rise.
 a. trip b. track c. trap d. tape
67. The company's profits increased after it launched its new product.
 a. drama b. dramatic c. dramatist d. dramatically
68. Please book your tickets in because the event fills up quickly.
 a. advocate b. advance c. addict d. advice
69. Climate show that sea levels will continue to rise in the coming decades.
 a. proverbs b. projections c. proteins d. paragraphs
70. Her success was by hard work and a strong passion for learning.
 a. dived b. driven c. drawn d. diverted
71. The melting of polar ice has due to rising temperatures.
 a. lessened b. accelerated c. slowed d. retarded
72. Deforestation is a major to global warming.
 a. compressor b. contributor c. commuter d. commentator
73. Achieving long-term goals requires dedication and strong
 a. commitment b. contamination c. coronation d. cosmetics
74. She her study plan after realizing it was too difficult to follow.
 a. developed b. promoted c. modified d. sustained
75. Rising sea levels have serious for coastal communities.
 a. implications b. privatizations c. globalizations d. intonations
76. Fair ensure that no group suffers more than others from climate change effects.
 a. policies b. pieces c. replaces d. ports
77. Scientists warn of a/an rise in global temperatures if emissions continue.
 a. potential b. practice c. pirate d. intentional
78. The toward hotter summers is becoming more noticeable each year.
 a. tend b. trend c. attend d. addition
79. Millions of people in coastal cities that are vulnerable to rising sea levels.
 a. side b. reside c. aside d. retrieve

80. Climate change is one of the most issues facing humanity today.
 a. pressure b. pressed c. press d. pressing
81. The company plans to employees with strong problem-solving skills.
 a. hear b. hire c. hurt d. hide
82. One of the main of a strong leader is the ability to stay calm in crises.
 a. characters b. demerits c. characteristics d. smarts

خلاصة القواعد

Language: Quick Hints

1. Making Deduction عمل الاستنتاجات

must / can't + مصدر	أكد يفعل / أكد لا يفعل (مضارع)
must + have + P.P.	أكد فعل (ماضي)
can't + have + P.P. / couldn't + have + P.P.	أكد لم يفعل (ماضي)
may (not) + مصدر	ربما (لا) يفعل (مضارع / مستقبل)
may (not) + have + P.P.	ربما (لا) فعل (ماضي)
might (not) + مصدر	من الممكن أن (لا) يفعل (مضارع / مستقبل)
might (not) + have + P.P.	من الممكن أن (لا) يكون قد فعل (ماضي)
could + have + P.P.	كان بإمكانه أن لكنه لم يفعل

- He **must** be English. He speaks English well.
- He **can't** be Syrian. He doesn't speak Arabic.
- It's 4 o'clock. The match **can't have finished** already.
- They **may** visit us. It's probable. - He **could have died**, but the doctor saved him.

النصيحة والتدم واللوم:

should / ought to / had better + مصدر	نصيحة مثبتة في الحاضر	تبعي أن
shouldn't / ought not to / had better not + مصدر	نصيحة منفية في الحاضر	لا ينبغي أن
should + have + P.P. / ought to + have + P.P.	لوم على ما لم يحدث (ماضي)	كان ينبغي
shouldn't + have + P.P. / ought not to + have + P.P.	لوم على ما حدث	ما كان ينبغي

- I **should have phoned** my friend yesterday, but I didn't.
- Mona **shouldn't have left** the door open. The thief got through it.

طرق أخرى للتعبير عن التدم على شيء في الماضي

فاعل + regret + V.ing / فاعل + regret + not + V.ing	يندم أنه فعل كذا / يندم أنه لم يفعل كذا
فاعل + sorry for + V.ing / فاعل + sorry for + not + V.ing	يندم أنه فعل / يندم أنه لم يفعل
If only (فاعل + wish) + فاعل + had + P.P	ليت فعل كذا
If only (فاعل + wish) + فاعل + had not + P.P	ليت لم يفعل كذا

- I regret going to the party; it was bad. = I wish I hadn't gone to the party.
- I regret not helping her; she lost everything. = I wish I had helped her.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You haven't eaten anything since morning, you be hungry. (SB)
a. must b. might c. can't d. should
2. It's very cold outside, but the windows are open. He have forgotten to close them. (SB)
a. must b. should c. can't d. shouldn't
3. The alarm didn't go off last night, so it have been turned off by mistake. I'm sure. (SB)
a. must b. might c. can't d. should
4. There is no food in the fridge. She have gone shopping this morning. (SB)
a. must b. might c. can't d. may
5. The garden looks wet. It have rained last night. (SB)
a. must b. might be c. can't d. should
6. He be at home now because his car is not in the driveway. (SB)
a. must b. might c. can't d. should
7. They left early because their bags are gone. (SB)
a. must have b. might have c. can't have d. should have
8. The lights are still on though everyone left. Someone forgotten to switch them off. (SB)
a. must have b. might have c. can't have d. should have
9. She be at home; her lights are off. (SB)
a. may b. might c. must d. can't
10. They be tired after walking all day in the heat. (SB)
a. can't b. may not c. mustn't d. must
11. Ann hasn't arrived yet. She the train. Who knows? (LM)
a. should have missed b. might have missed c. had to miss d. must have missed
12. I regret making that silly mistake; I have quarrelled with my friend. (LM)
a. should b. must c. shouldn't d. can't
13. She be happy; she has just passed her final exam. (LM)
a. must b. had to c. can't d. ought not to
14. Amin travelled to work by bus. He by train as usual. (LM)
a. must have travelled b. had to travel c. could have traveled d. might have travelled
15. He didn't attend the party. He invited. He's just had a heart attack and is in hospital. (LM)
a. can't have b. can't have been c. mustn't have been d. shouldn't have
16. My dad left for work and he to take his mobile. I found it in the living room. (LM)
a. mustn't have remembered b. had to remember
c. couldn't have remembered d. must have remembered
17. Kamal by train yesterday. I'm uncertain. (LM)
a. might travel b. might have travelled c. should travel d. must have travelled
18. She the map. She found herself in a completely different town. (LM)
a. had to follow b. can't have followed c. may have followed d. mustn't have followed
19. Your answer is full of mistakes. You it well. (LM)
a. needn't have checked b. must have checked c. can't have checked d. had to check
20. He on time because he missed his usual early train. (LM)
a. had to arrive b. must have arrived c. won't have arrived d. couldn't have arrived
21. This temple be important; it's visited by hundreds of people every day. (LM)
a. shouldn't b. can't c. mustn't d. must
22. Everyone is putting their umbrellas up; it raining. (LM)
a. had to start b. must have started c. shouldn't have started d. mustn't have started
23. You your composition: it is full of mistakes. (LM)
a. must have revised b. should have revised c. shouldn't have revised d. had to revise
24. I regret arriving late; I on time. (LM)
a. must have come b. needn't have come c. should have come d. had to come

25. You another mobile phone. The one you have is just fine. (LM)
 a. must have bought b. should have bought c. shouldn't have bought d. had to buy
26. I shouldn't have repeated that mistake. This means that I it. (LM)
 a. didn't commit b. repeated c. ought to have repeated d. had to repeat
27. In the past, people a lot more books because they had more free time.
 a. must have been read b. can't have read c. can't have been read d. must have read
28. It have been easy to have lived without electricity years ago.
 a. must b. should c. might d. can't
29. He have known about the bad news. He seemed very sad.
 a. could not b. must c. can't d. will
30. He have known that the pool closed at 7 pm or he would be here by now.
 a. must b. can't c. should d. would
31. It have been a very interesting story because everyone looked bored.
 a. can't b. must c. might d. may
32. I'm not sure where he is, but I think he have gone to the market.
 a. can't b. must c. might d. will
33. He his lunch. The food is still in the fridge.
 a. must have had b. must have c. can't have had d. can't have been
34. I don't see my father's car outside. He left the place.
 a. must have been b. must have c. can't have been d. can't have
35. Mona have been proud if she had got the full mark.
 a. must b. may c. would d. will
36. He drank all the juice in the bottle. He thirsty.
 a. must have been b. can't have been c. must be d. should have been
37. I don't know where my father is. He to the club.
 a. might have gone b. must have gone c. may gone d. can't have gone
38. I was happy to see the boy alive after the car hit him. He been killed.
 a. can't have b. should have c. must had d. could have
39. The teacher punished us severely this morning. We have been so late.
 a. mustn't b. couldn't c. shouldn't d. might not
40. He came late for school. He missed the train. I think so but I'm not sure.
 a. might have b. must have c. may be d. can't have
41. All the students passed the test. It been difficult.
 a. can't have b. might have c. could have d. must have
42. -Why is your brother angry? -I don't know. He passed his driving test.
 a. can't have b. mustn't have c. might not have d. shouldn't have
43. He usually gets the full mark in all exams. He lazy.
 a. must be b. must been c. can't d. can't be
44. You Mona at the club yesterday. She has been abroad for nearly two weeks.
 a. can't have seen b. must see c. must have seen d. should have seen
45. If you want to join the faculty of engineering, you study hard.
 a. better b. should c. need d. ought
46. Ali have travelled abroad. I have no idea about what really happened.
 a. must b. might c. can't d. would
47. He a valid visa before he travels to England.
 a. must have b. may have c. must be d. should be
48. What a pity! He's bleeding terribly. He an accident.
 a. can't have had b. have had c. shouldn't have had d. must have had
49. The boys to have made so much noise in the library.
 a. oughtn't b. should c. shouldn't d. ought

50. She caught her bus because she would have been here by now.

- a. can't have b. might have c. could have d. must have

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. I regret not studying hard last year. (should)
2. It's possible that he didn't hear the ringing. (might)
3. I'm certain he isn't tired. (can't)
4. I could answer the question though it was hard. (able)
5. Perhaps she missed the train. (could)
6. I shouldn't have eaten so much meat. (regret)
7. It's possible that he lost his wallet. (may)
8. I should have apologized to my teacher. (regret)
9. It's possible that the data is incorrect. (might)
10. It was wrong of Ali to ignore the doctor's advice. (shouldn't)
11. Perhaps he is working in his laboratory. (could)
12. Perhaps she misunderstood the points explained. (might have been)
13. I don't think she is married. (can't)
14. She had time to discuss it with you, but she forgot. (could have)
15. I'm sure he consulted his lawyer. (must)
16. It's probable that they are separated. (may)
17. Perhaps they have forgotten the date of the agreement. (might)
18. There was a possibility that Ahmed would visit us, but he didn't do. (could have)
19. I'm sure she was at school yesterday. (must)
20. I'm sure Yasmeen is feeling happy. (must)

خلاصة مهارات الكتابة

Writing Skills: Hints

الكتابة الإقناعية Persuasive Writing

- Use Persuasive Writing if you want to: ... استخدم الكتابة الإقناعية حين تريد أن ...
- Convince the reader to take action. تقنع القارئ بأن يتصرف بطريقة ما.
- Share your opinion and support it with reasons and evidence. تشارك رأيك وتدعمه بأسباب وأدلة.
- Key Characteristics of Persuasive Writing الخصائص الرئيسية للكتابة الإقناعية
- 1. Clear Opinion or Point of View رأي أو وجهة نظر واضحة
 - The writer states their opinion or position clearly. يعبر الكاتب عن رأيه أو موقفه بوضوح.
- 2. Strong Reasons and Evidence أسباب وأدلة قوية
 - The writer gives reasons, facts, examples, or statistics to support their opinion. يقدم الكاتب أسباباً أو حقائق أو أمثلة أو إحصاءات لدعم رأيه.
- 3. Emotional Appeal التأثير العاطفي
 - Uses words that make the reader feel something—like fear, hope, guilt, or pride. يستخدم كلمات تثير مشاعر القارئ - كالخوف، أو الأمل، أو الشعور بالذنب، أو الكبرياء.
- 4. Persuasive Language لغة إقناعية
 - Includes words like: must, should, need to, important, urgent, we all know, clearly, obviously. تتضمن كلمات مثل: يجب، ينبغي، نحتاج إلى، مهم، عاجل، نعم جميعاً، بوضوح، جلي.
 - Uses rhetorical questions: "What will happen if we do nothing?" يستخدم أسئلة بلاغية: "ماذا سيحدث إذا لم نفعل شيئاً؟"
- 5. Call to Action دعوة للعمل
 - Tells the reader what they should do after reading. تُخبر القارئ بما يجب عليه فعله بعد القراءة.

Exercises on Writing Skills

- Which of the following is a key characteristic of persuasive writing?
a. No evidence or examples b. Telling a story c. Vague opinion d. Clear point of view
- Evidence is important in persuasive writing because it
a. confuses the reader b. supports the writer's opinion
c. makes the essay longer d. is optional
- Persuasive language often includes words like:
a. Must, urgent b. Maybe, possibly c. Once, then d. Yesterday, today
- Which phrase is suitable for giving evidence?
a. For example b. We all know c. What will happen if d. Clearly
- Persuasive writing helps the writer
a. write unemotional essays b. list all facts in the world
c. copy other people's ideas d. share their opinions
- What should a writer include to support their opinion?
a. Facts or examples b. No personal feelings c. Irrelevant stories d. Questions only
- Emotional appeal makes the reader
a. care about the issue b. feel bored c. ignore the topic d. make the essay shorter
- Why might a writer use a rhetorical question?
a. To make the reader feel involved b. To confuse the reader
c. To provide evidence d. To summarize the essay

تمارين على القواعد التراكمية (قاعدة: بدائل If)

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I would have enrolled on the course its high cost.
a. but for b. unless c. should d. provided that
- You can borrow this book as you look after it.
a. if b. provided c. on condition d. as long
- Don't go to that restaurant you like spicy food.
a. if not b. in case c. unless d. if
- You will make mistakes you are careful.
a. unless b. if c. in case d. without
- passing the driving test is necessary, you have to train well for it.
a. Unless b. Should c. As long as d. In case of
- I hungry, I would eat.
a. Were b. Unless c. If d. Had
- He will attend the lecture that he comes on time.
a. should b. provided c. unless d. if
- my father's help, I wouldn't have passed my exams. (نور أول ٩٨)
a. Unless b. If it weren't for c. Without d. Hadn't
- you had helped me, I would have failed my test.
a. Without b. In case of c. Unless d. Provided
- he read the newspaper, he would have known about the accident.
a. Had b. Unless c. If d. Hadn't

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- The referee cancelled the match because of the heavy rain. (If it) (1990)
- Without the rescuers' efforts, many people would have died. (If it hadn't) (1993)
- Without your help, I would have lost my way in the desert. (If) (2004)
- He will buy a car only if he has enough money. (provided that) (2005)
- If the team do not improve their game, they are going to lose the match. (unless) (2006)
- If she hadn't studied hard, she would have failed the exam. (But for)

A. Vocabulary

1. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- All people should fight for justice. The synonym of "justice" is
a. corruption b. fairness c. inequality d. injustice e. equity
- They are looking for sustainable energy solutions. A synonym of "sustainable" is
a. lasting b. weak c. maintainable d. unstable e. temporary
- We have to implement efficient practices. An antonym for "implement" is
a. give up b. carry out c. neglect d. enforce e. achieve
- It is critical to follow these instructions. A synonym for "critical" is
a. crucial b. trivial c. pivotal d. minor e. inessential

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The predicted thunderstorms across the northern region. (SB)
a. meteorologist b. zoologist c. botanist d. chemist
- It's absolutely today. Don't forget sunscreen and water! (SB)
a. stretching b. scorching c. researching d. insight
- The country experienced a deadly that lasted for two weeks. (SB)
a. heat woven b. hot waved c. weaver heat d. heat wave
- Floods, hurricanes, and sandstorms are all examples of weather. (SB)
a. extremism b. extremely c. extremes d. extreme
- According to the five-day, temperatures will remain high. (SB)
a. forehead b. forward c. forecast d. furthermore
- Some scientists feel about the future of our climate. They have no hope. (SB)
a. optimistically b. optimism c. pessimistic d. optimistic
- Building the bridge was a project that took five years to finish. (SB)
a. potential b. large-scale c. expand d. phenomenon
- The scientist explained the strange natural to the students. (SB)
a. phenomenon b. phenomenal c. phonetic d. homophone
- Climate change may cause the of millions of people to safer areas. (SB)
a. innovation b. creativity c. motivation d. migration
- The young athlete has the to become a world champion. (SB)
a. potential b. poverty c. hungry d. visual
- The red light on the machine that it is not working properly. (SB)
a. imperfects b. indicates c. delicates d. assassinates
- The teacher the students on their trip. (SB)
a. connected b. communicated c. attended d. accompanied

B. Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Souad remembered our phone number because she called us today.
a. might have b. mustn't have c. can't have d. must have
- The thief have escaped through this well-locked window.
a. might b. must c. can't d. mustn't
- Ali is very honest. He stolen the money.
a. must be b. can't have c. must have d. can't be
- Ali have travelled to Alexandria this morning. He is ill in bed!
a. may b. can't c. might d. must
- She feels ill now. She eaten such a big meal.
a. can't have b. shouldn't have c. couldn't have d. mustn't have

6. You arrived late for your exam yesterday.
 a. should have b. shouldn't have c. should have been d. shouldn't have been
7. You look exhausted. You better take a rest.
 a. had b. should c. must d. ought to
8. You should spend more time on self-care. This is my
 a. advice b. necessity c. lack of necessity d. probability
9. He phoned me this afternoon. I was in the house all day long.
 a. must have b. might have c. would have d. can't have
10. He speaks English fluently. He British.
 a. must be b. must have c. must have had d. must have had

2. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. It's impossible that the risks can be completely avoided. (can't) (SB)
2. It's advisable for families to take precautions to stay safe during storms. (should) (SB)
3. Citizens didn't listen carefully to awareness campaigns in the past. (should) (SB)
4. The waves are surely stronger than before as they sometimes reach the streets. (must) (SB)

C. Translation

١. تمام الدلافين بشكل غريب؛ يبقى نصف دماغ مستيقظاً وينام النصف الآخر.

- a. Dolphins sleep strangely; a half of the brain remain awake and the other half sleeps.
 b. Dolphins sleep strangely; a half of the brain remains awake and the other half sleeps.
 c. Dolphins sleep strangely; half of the brain remains a wake and the other half sleeps.
 d. Dolphins sleep strange; half of the brain remain a wake and the other half sleep.

٢. التمر هو استخدام التهديد للإساءة أو السيطرة أو الترهيب بقوة. وغالباً ما يتكرر السلوك ليُعتاد.

- a. Bullying is the use of threaten to dissuade, control, or intimidate forceful. The behavior often is repeating to become usual.
 b. Bullying is the use of threat to abuse, control, or direct forcefully. The behavior often is repeated to become unusual.
 c. Bullying is the use of threat to abuse, control, or intimidate forcefully. The behavior is often repeated to become usual.
 d. Bullying is using threat to abuse, control, or intimidate forcefully. The behavior is often repeated to become usual.

3. Bones support the human body. They are the structure on which the skin hangs.
 Without bones, the body would collapse.

أ. تحفز العظام جسم الإنسان. هي البناء الذي يتدلى عليه الجلد. بدون العظام ينهار الجسم.

ب. تدعم العظام جسم الإنسان. هي البناء الذي يتكون حوله الجلد. بدون العظام يهبط الجسم.

ج. تدعم العظام جسم الإنسان. هي الهيكل الذي يتكون حوله الجلد. بدون العظام يموت الجسم.

د. تدعم العظام جسم الإنسان. هي الهيكل الذي يتدلى عليه الجلد. بدون العظام ينهار الجسم.

4. Computers are devices that are used to carry out tasks that people want done in a more efficient and usually faster way than can be done by the human brain.

أ. أجهزة الكمبيوتر عبارة عن أجهزة تُستخدم لتنفيذ الدوال التي يريد الأشخاص القيام بها بطريقة أكثر فعالية وعادة أسرع مما يمكن أن يفعله البشر.

ب. أجهزة الكمبيوتر عبارة عن أجهزة تُستخدم لتنفيذ الدوال التي يريد الأشخاص القيام بها بطريقة أكثر فعالية وعادة أسرع مما يمكن أن يفعله العنصر البشري.

ج. أجهزة الكمبيوتر عبارة عن أجهزة تُستخدم لتنفيذ المهام التي يريد الأشخاص القيام بها بطريقة أكثر سرعة وعادة أتمن مما يمكن أن يفعله الدماغ البشري.

د. أجهزة الكمبيوتر عبارة عن أجهزة تُستخدم لتنفيذ المهام التي يريد الأشخاص القيام بها بطريقة أكثر فعالية وعادة أسرع مما يمكن أن يفعله الدماغ البشري.

D. Comprehension

1. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

The canopy *غطاء الشجر*, the upper level of the trees, holds many large climbing mammals *ثدييات* like monkeys and cats. Smaller species, like mice and small squirrels *السنجاب*, are not as widespread in high tropical *استوائي* canopies as they are in most habitats globally. In the trees, where shelter from heat and cold may be scarce *نادر* and conditions may fluctuate *تتقلب*, a small mammal may have trouble maintaining its body temperature.

Small size makes it easy to *scramble* among branches in the canopy, but small mammals are beaten *تتهزم* by large mammals in the competition for food. Large mammals have their own tactics *خطط* for browsing among food-rich twigs *أغصان*. A small ape *قرد* hanging below a branch can drop the fruits toward its face. Walking or leaping species of a similar size access the outer twigs by snapping off *قطع* the whole branch or by clutching *ب-الإمساك* stiff branches with the feet or tail and plucking *تلقف* food with their hands.

Small climbing animals reach twigs with difficulty. Large climbing animals easily cross the wide gaps from one tree crown to the next. A small ape can hurl *يلقي* itself farther than a mouse can: it can more effectively use a branch as a springboard *نقطة انطلاق*. The forward movement of a small animal is seriously reduced by the air friction *احتكاك* against the large surface area of its body. Finally, small mammals that can't span open gaps between tree crowns will find difficulty supplementing *يكمل* their insect diet with fruits and seeds.

- Large animals tend to the upper canopy of the rain forest.
 - dominate
 - estimate
 - delete
 - allow
- are less common in the upper canopy than in other environments.
 - Cats
 - Monkeys
 - Large animals
 - Mice
- What is the *message* of the passage?
 - If you are weak, commit suicide.
 - Strong creatures deserve care more than weak ones.
 - Small animals aren't tasty for eating.
 - Weak creatures strive to gain survival.
- The word "*scramble*" is a *synonym* of the words:
 - move slowly
 - sleep well
 - sleep long
 - move quickly
- Small mammals use the canopy of the trees for from heat and cold.
 - shutter
 - shelter
 - slum
 - steady
- Small animals find it to reach twigs.
 - hard
 - easy
 - simple
 - short
- The *main idea* of the last paragraph is:
 - The hardships small animals face.
 - The ways in which small animals can survive.
 - The speed that small animals gain.
 - The gibbon's diet is healthier than the mouse's.
- The *sentence* which *best summarises* the first paragraph is
 - Mice are more common in canopies.
 - Monkeys are less common in canopies.
 - Cats are less widespread in canopies.
 - Smaller species are less common in canopies.

2. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Too dark to read your book? Just switch on a light! It is hard to believe that only just over a century ago, *this* was not possible. There were no electric lights to switch on. People used candles, gas and oil lamps to light their homes and to work and study by

The electric light bulb was invented in 1879 by Thomas Edison. He invented many other things which we *take for granted* today. He also invented many things which helped other people develop their own inventions. For example, his carbon transmitter made Alexander Graham Bell's telephone possible. Having invented the light bulb, Edison also developed a system of distributing *توزيع* electric power from central generating stations. The General Electric Company which he *founded* supplies most of the electricity in North America today.

Edison was a brilliant inventor. However, when he was a child, his teachers thought he was stupid. He had to leave school when he was 7 because he asked too many questions. His

mother recognized he was curious about how things worked. She educated him at home. One of his famous sayings is “*genius is 1% inspiration and 99% perspiration*” اجتهاد. He worked hard, but unfortunately his *dedication* to work meant he had little time for family or friends.

- Which of the following sentences is a *fact* according to the *passage*?
 - Edison was selfish and wanted glory for himself.
 - Edison was stupid and asked trivial questions.
 - Edison didn't render any services for humanity.
 - Edison helped other inventors and scientists.
- We can understand that the author believes that
 - having little time for family is beneficial
 - one is unlucky if one cares too much for friends
 - dedication to work brings misfortune
 - there must be balance between work and family life
- Edison's *viewpoint concerning genius* means everyone should
 - do physical exercise
 - work hard
 - have good ideas
 - balance between work and life
- What is the *meaning* of the underlined verb “*founded*”?
 - discovered
 - demolished
 - established
 - prevented
- According to the text, what does “*take something for granted*” mean?
 - To pay for something without using it.
 - To take something without paying for it.
 - To use something without thinking about it.
 - To borrow a thing and return it later.
- According to the passage, which one of these statements is *true*?
 - Edison invented the telephone.
 - The electric company Edison started still exists today.
 - Edison never went to school.
 - Edison's mother agreed with his teachers.
- What does the word “*this*” in bold refer to?
 - Living a century ago
 - Reading a book
 - Having lights
 - Being in darkness
- At school, Edison asked so many questions because he was
 - inadvisable
 - not clever
 - innovative
 - curious

E. Writing

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We use “.....” when we want to introduce the summary. (LM)
 - first of all
 - not at all
 - above all
 - all in all
- The concluding sentence should be very similar to the sentence.
 - summary
 - topic
 - title
 - transition
- Which of the following is punctuated correctly? (Longman)
 - Amin said to me “I'll take a five day holiday to prepare for my sister's wedding next Thursday”.
 - Amin said to me, “I'll take a five day holiday to prepare for my sister s wedding next Thursday”.
 - Amin said to me, “I'll take a five-day holiday to prepare for my sister's wedding next Thursday.”
 - Amin said to me, “I'll take a five-day-holiday to prepare for my sister s wedding next Thursday.”
- Which of the following has the perfect punctuation?
 - “I'm coming home late tonight.” my father said.
 - “I'm coming home late tonight,” my father said.
 - “I'm coming home late, tonight” my father said.
 - “I'm coming home late, tonight.” my father said.

2. Write about (180 – 200) words on one of the following:

- Our cultural influences.
- Different ways to help the poor.

3. Write a paragraph of Six lines on the following:

- An introduction of an essay on “Precautions to be taken to solve climate problems”
- A body paragraph for an essay on “The Bad Effects of Global Warming”

F. The Novel

- Answer the following questions:

- What does Fernand's and Danglars' betrayal tell us about their characters? (SB)
- Do you think the authorities acted fairly when they arrested Edmond? Why/Why not? (SB)
- Why do you think the night of Edmond Dantès's arrest remained etched in the memory of all who had gathered to celebrate his betrothal?

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonyms	Antonyms
accidentally	عن طريق الخطأ	unintentionally / by chance	deliberately / intentionally
dedicated	متفنى / مخصص	committed / devoted	indifferent / uncommitted
entangled	متشابك / متداخل	tangled / twisted	free / untangled
fragile	هش / ضعيف / حساس	delicate / breakable / brittle	tough / durable
graceful	رشيق / أنيق الحركة	elegant / smooth / stylish	clumsy / awkward
lifeless	بلا حياة	inanimate / dull	alive / lively
thrive	يزدهر / ينجح	flourish / prosper	fail / decline
tirelessly	بلا كلل	persistently / energetically	idly / lazily
unique	فريد	one-of-a-kind / special	common / ordinary
vivid	زاهي / مشرق	bright / brilliant	dull / faded

Key Vocabulary

brehtaking	مبهر / أخاذ	struggle	يكافح / كفاح	awe-inspiring	مثير للرغبة
diverse	متنوع / متعدد	disrupt	يعرقل / يعطل	hatching	الفقس
pose	يشكل (خطراً)	hazardous	خطير	literally	حرفياً
bleach	يبيض / يصبح أبيض	non-invasive	غير جراحي (تطلي)	figuratively	مجازياً
underestimate	يستوحيب به	magnificent	رائع / مهيب	detect	يكشف / يلح
erosion	تعرية / زوال / تلاشي	mind-blowing	مذهل للغاية	endangered	معرض للانقراض
haunting	مؤثر / يبقى في الذاكرة	glow-producing	منتج للتوهج	coordinated	منسق / متناسق

Vocabulary & Prepositions

organized	منظم / مرتب	grand	عظيم / كبير	beneath	تحت / أسفل
crystal-clear	صافي / رائق	sea creatures	مخلوقات بحرية	coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
brightly coloured	زاهي اللون	home to	موطن له	coral polyp	مرجان صغير
priceless	لا يُقدر بثمن	habitats	مواطن / بيئات طبيعية	marine species	الأنواع البحرية
ship strikes	اصطدامات السفن	severe	شديد / خطير	promote	يروج له
migratory	مهاجر	wooden fence	سياج خشبي	memorable	لا ينسى
pale gray	رمادي باهت	in danger / at risk	في خطر	survival	بقاء / نجاة
stricter laws	قوانين أكثر صرامة	critical threats	تهديدات خطيرة	ban	حظر / يحظر
sonar device	جهاز السونار	eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة	plastic waste	نفايات بلاستيك
vital	حيوي	ecosystems	أنظمة بيئية	human-made	من صنع الإنسان
deadly	مميت / قاتل	oil spills	تسربات نفطية	widespread	واسع / منتشر
long-term	طويل المدى	practices	ممارسات	highly-respected	يحترمه الآخر

splendid	رائع	drones	طائرات مسيرة	wide variety	تشكيلة واسعة
brand-new	جديد تماما	densely-populated	مكتظ بالسكان	fussy	صعب الإرضاء
long-lasting	طويل الأمد	high-pitched	حاد النغمات	open-minded	منفتح الذهن
hiking	التنزه سيراً	well-dressed	حسن الثياب	good-looking	حسن المظهر
overfishing	الصيد الجائر	in contrast	على النقيض	attract prey	يجذب الفريسة
thunder crashed	دوى الرعد	roaring wind	الرياح المدوية	reputation	سمعة
legend	أسطورة / شخص أسطورة	tropical seas	بخار استوائية	biologists	عالم أحياء
afford to	يقدر على	fade	يتلاشى	gather	يتجمع

Idioms - Collocations - Expressions

a stitch in time saves nine	الوقاية خير من العلاج	turn a blind eye	يتغاضى / يتجاهل عمداً
a thing of the past	شيء من الماضي	in deep water	نقع في ورطة / مأزق
heart-stoppingly beautiful	جماله رهيب	pose serious threats to	يشكل تهديدات خطيرة
plastic-filled waters	مياه ملوثة بالبلاستيك	alive with motion	ناهض بالحركة
long-distance migrations	هجرات طويلة	fast-rising temperatures	حرارة سريعة الارتفاع
a hard-to-survive journey	رحلة صعب التمتع منها	glide gracefully through	ينزلق برشاقة عبر

Language Notes

include	يشمل	contain	يحتوي على
involve	يتضمن	consist of / be composed of	يتكون من
discover	يكشف شيء	explore	يستكشف مكان
invent	يخترع شيء لأول مرة	create	يبدع - يخلق
well-known for	معروف بـ	well-known to	معروف لدى

Vocabulary Question Bank بنك أسئلة الكلمات

- A. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:**
- The strong sunlight can bleach the color of the curtains. A synonym for "bleach" is
 a. dark b. stain c. fade d. smudge e. whiten
 - The company needs employees dedicated to their duties. An antonym for "dedicated" is ...
 a. committed b. uncommitted c. indifferent d. devoted e. focused
 - The construction work threatened to disrupt the meeting. A synonym for "disrupt" is
 a. organize b. steady c. interrupt d. settle e. disturb
 - The design lacked originality as the ideas were too diverse. An antonym for "diverse" is
 a. similar b. varied c. assorted d. identical e. different
 - The wires were entangled; repairing them took hours. A synonym for "entangled" is
 a. tangled b. organized c. untangled d. free e. twisted
 - Handle the vase carefully; it is extremely fragile. An antonym for "fragile" is
 a. durable b. delicate c. tough d. breakable e. brittle
 - The actor delivered a graceful bow at the end of the show. A synonym for "graceful" is
 a. clumsy b. smooth c. elegant d. awkward e. harsh
 - The market overflowed with priceless items. An antonym for "priceless" is
 a. precious b. inestimable c. treasured d. worthless e. cheap

9. The project started to thrive in spite of lack of resources. A synonym for "thrive" is
- a. prosper b. fail c. flourish d. decline e. weaken
10. He gave a vivid description of the event. An antonym for "vivid" is
- a. glowing b. dull c. bright d. brilliant e. faded
11. The view was absolutely amazing. The synonym of "amazing" is
- a. silly b. astonishing c. mind-blowing d. boring e. predictable
12. Doctors could detect the disease early. The antonym of the word "detect" is
- a. ignore b. identify c. miss d. notice e. observe

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Coral reef is important to marine life. (SB)
- a. losing b. conversation c. dialogue d. conservation
2. The baby dolphins will if the bay stays clean. (SB)
- a. die b. vanish c. thrive d. grave
3. The view from the peak was absolutely, leaving every hiker speechless with awe.
- a. unimpressive b. modest c. breathtaking d. ordinary
4. The melody of the violin was so that it evoked deep emotions in every listener.
- a. haunting b. cheerful c. mundane d. bright
5. Discovering the secret passage beneath the museum was a experience for all the students.
- a. expected b. simple c. ordinary d. mind-blowing
6. The team performed a/an dance routine that impressed the judges with perfect timing.
- a. unorganized b. coordinated c. sloppy d. random
7. The decorative lamps in the art exhibit were, adding a magical touch to the gallery.
- a. glow-producing b. fading c. blowing d. plain
8. The palace was with grand halls, intricate designs, and luxurious furnishings.
- a. plain b. mundane c. modest d. magnificent
9. The heavy traffic can a serious risk to people walking along the busy streets.
- a. eliminate b. mitigate c. avoid d. pose
10. Unexpected protests managed to daily transportation across the city for several hours.
- a. attract b. destroy c. disrupt d. interpret
11. A calm and approach is essential when managing a team under pressure.
- a. clean b. illogical c. unstructured d. organized
12. Handling strong acids without gloves is extremely and can cause severe injuries.
- a. hazardous b. harmless c. protected d. controlled
13. Visiting the ancient pyramids is an experience that fascinates tourists of all ages.
- a. uninspiring b. mundane c. unimpressive d. awe-inspiring
14. His warning was meant, to emphasize the danger without implying real threat.
- a. literally b. figuratively c. genuinely d. actually
15. Investors sometimes the risks involved in new ventures, leading to financial losses.
- a. underestimate b. overestimate c. inflate d. exaggerate
16. Using treatments is safer for elderly patients who cannot tolerate traditional surgery.
- a. harmful b. risky c. invasive d. non-invasive
17. The tiger is considered because its population has dropped drastically in the wild.
- a. safe b. endangered c. thriving d. abundant
18. We cannot waste time when the deadline for this project is approaching rapidly.
- a. affect to b. refuse to c. afford to d. apply to
19. Volunteers organized efforts to wildlife affected by the recent forest fires.
- a. ignore b. abandon c. harm d. rescue
20. Changes in climate affect patterns, forcing animals to alter their usual travel routes.
- a. permanent b. migratory c. sedentary d. stationary

21. Seasonal whale can cover thousands of kilometers across oceans and seas every year.
 a. passages b. dispersals c. excursions d. migrations
22. The government seeks to tourism in rural areas to boost the local economy effectively.
 a. promote b. prevent c. oppose d. reduce
23. The novel describes a character falling into a clever created by the villain's scheme.
 a. trip b. trap c. tarp d. trope
24. Legends tell of a mystical who protects sailors and guides ships through waters.
 a. ocean nymph b. sea girl c. sea woman d. ocean fairy
25. Protective measures prevent by rerouting ships away from critical marine habitats.
 a. boat hits b. vessel bumps c. ship strikes d. ship tracks
26. Managing ship efficiently is crucial to reduce the risk of maritime incidents.
 a. thrive b. traffic c. static d. dynamic
27. The patient experienced pain due to complications following a surgery yesterday.
 a. server b. several c. severe d. suffer
28. The flood caused a landslide that blocked the main highway for several days.
 a. passive b. plosive c. mild d. massive
29. The first half of the play was humorous; the second half became very serious.
 a. likewise b. in contrast c. furthermore d. additionally
30. Wetlands are fragile that require careful management to support ecological balance.
 a. habitats b. habitants c. habits d. habitual
31. Politicians may economic reforms, but few take decisive actions to implement them.
 a. suppress b. speak of c. conceal d. disregard
32. The fishing net can easily marine creatures if not handled carefully by fishermen.
 a. untwist b. clarify c. entangle d. release
33. The festival celebrates the of music genres, attracting fans of jazz and classical styles.
 a. similarity b. sameness c. diversity d. uniformity
34. The storm intensified, forcing the sailor to turn his boat before entering deeper waters.
 a. about b. beyond c. across d. around
35. Advanced submarines descend into the of the ocean.
 a. depth b. deepen c. deepness d. deeply
36. Advanced scanners detect movement beneath the of the seabed.
 a. surfacing b. surfed c. service d. surface
37. If you deal with the problem early, you'll avoid bigger trouble later; a ... in time saves nine.
 a. stitch b. switch c. smash d. scorch
38. The teacher decided to a blind eye to the students whispering during the test.
 a. return b. turn c. train d. intern
39. With smartphones everywhere, traditional phone booths have become a thing of
 a. past b. the past c. historian d. historical
40. After losing his passport abroad, he found himself in water.
 a. cold b. mild c. deep d. wild
41. marine areas support biodiversity and long-term ecosystem stability.
 a. Protecting b. Protected c. Protective d. Protection
42. Marine mammals often gracefully through open waters using tail movements.
 a. glide b. slide c. drive d. dove
43. Explorers documented a journey through freezing temperatures and scarce supplies.
 a. hard-surviving b. hard-to-survive c. survival-hard d. survive-hard
44. Divers observed fish moving quickly among coral branches under tropical sunlight.
 a. brightness b. brightly-colors c. bright-colored d. brightly-colored
45. Wildlife suffers severely in waters where debris interferes with feeding patterns.
 a. plastified b. plastic-filled c. plastic-filling d. plasticize

46. The forecast warned of dark clouds due to rapid changes in atmospheric pressure.
 a. roaring b. mattering c. gathering d. wondering
47. Coral reefs are to a wide variety of marine organisms.
 a. home b. habit c. habitant d. habitual
48. Pilgrims often a journey across harsh landscapes driven by cultural motivations.
 a. give b. moan c. do d. make
49. Documentaries reveal animals adapt unique features to thrive far below the surface.
 a. deep-seed b. seafloor c. seabed d. deep-sea
50. Local authorities promote tourism to protect natural sites.
 a. ecosystem b. economical c. ecological d. eco-friendly
51. Marine life in coral reefs is incredibly due to complex environmental interactions.
 a. diversify b. divert c. diversity d. diverse
52. Adopting eco-friendly requires consistent effort rather than temporary enthusiasm.
 a. habitat b. habits c. habitual d. habitation
53. Firefighters trained extensively to work when disasters strike without warning.
 a. tired b. tireless c. tirelessly d. tiring
54. Photographers captured images of a ocean during calm weather conditions.
 a. clear-crystal b. crystalline c. crystal-clear d. clearest
55. Public policies encourage plastic waste through innovation and education campaigns.
 a. reduction b. induction c. deduction d. dedication
56. Authorities prioritize limiting dangers by enforcing strict regulations.
 a. made-human b. human-make c. make-human d. human-made
57. Smoking is a habit that can lead to serious health problems.
 a. defender b. deadened c. deadly d. drought
58. Coral reefs can vivid colors when exposed to prolonged temperature stress.
 a. lose b. loose c. loss d. miss
59. The marketplace was alive with as traders moved goods rapidly between stalls.
 a. emotion b. notion c. motion d. commotion
60. New policies aim to protect areas that support fisheries and tourism.
 a. wasteful b. coastal c. total d. brutal
61. Public health systems face critical during outbreaks without good preparation.
 a. troughs b. treats c. threads d. threats
62. Social media has contributed to awareness by rapidly sharing verified information.
 a. widespread b. withstand c. withdraw d. wondered
63. Governments often launch awareness campaigns to educate citizens about health risks.
 a. publicity b. publicly c. publish d. public
64. Environmentalists warn against fishing practices that damage coral reefs permanently.
 a. distractive b. defensive c. destructive d. instructive
65. New regulations are expected to have an on fishing industries worldwide.
 a. impulse b. implant c. import d. impact
66. Natural barriers shelter and protection from storms and rising sea levels.
 a. provide b. protect c. prevent d. produce
67. The scientist was already many researchers who followed his work closely.
 a. well-known at b. well-known in c. well-known to d. well-known for
68. Artists try to unique designs that express their personal perspectives in creative ways.
 a. invest b. create c. curate d. relate
69. The adventurers planned to the ancient caves to learn more about early human life.
 a. expose b. expand c. discover d. explore
70. She politely asked her brother not to her while she was explaining an important point.
 a. interrupt b. disrupt c. interpret d. intrude

الصفات المتراكبة Compound Adjectives

عندما توضع قبل الاسم الذي تصفه تقوم بالفصل بين الأجزاء بشرطة أو واصلة (hyphen).

- She is a very **well-rounded** person. - Spanish is a **widely-spoken** language.

عندما توضع بعد الاسم الذي تصفه لا تقوم بالفصل بين الأجزاء بشرطة أو واصلة (hyphen).

- Doha is very **well rounded**. - The language is **widely spoken** in all the villages.

- She is a very **beautiful** girl. ... (very + صفة) بعد (الواصلة)

استخدام الأرقام داخل الصفة المركبة: الاسم الذي يستخدم كصفة يتحدد شكله حسب الاسم الذي هو يصفه

اسم مفرد بعد + اسم مفرد كصفة + عدد + a / an
اسم جمع + اسم مفرد كصفة + عدد +
اسم لا بعد + 's + اسم مفرد كصفة +
اسم لا بعد + 's + اسم جمع كصفة + عدد أكبر من الواحد

- He did a **two-hour** space walk.
- We do **two-hour** space walks.
- I spent a **(one) year's** time preparing.
- She spent **four months'** time studying.
- I have a **ten-minute** break between sessions.

- a **three-day** conference / **three day** conferences / a **two-hour** drive / **ten years'** time.
- يمكن التعامل مع اسم ما (مرة على أنه بعد ومرة على أنه لا بعد) كما يلي:
- We went on a **three-year** mission (**three years'** mission) in space.

بنك أسئلة القواعد Grammar Question Bank

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We bought a car that had a unique color. (SB)
a. newly-brand b. brand-new c. brand-newly d. brand-news
- Social networking sites are all over the world. (LM)
a. widely-used b. widely used c. widely using d. using widely
- I am sure bamboo is a plant. (LM)
a. grow fast b. growing fast c. fast growing d. fast-growing
- Do you think French is all over Africa? (LM)
a. speaking b. speaking widely c. widely spoken d. widely-spoken
- It is a fact that being bilingual can improve some brain functions. (LM)
a. known b. widely knowing c. well known d. well-known
- German isn't widely like English all over the world. (LM)
a. speaking b. spoken c. speaker d. speak
- I really admire this woman. She is always (2025 - Exp.)
a. god dress b. good dressed c. well dressed d. well-dress
- by the rude cashier, Karima complained to the manager. (2025-Exp.)
a. Annoyed b. Annoys c. Annoy d. Annoying
- A lot of people are glad for their appreciation. (2025-Exp.)
a. a well-educated b. well-educated c. a good-education d. good-education
- Anyone in joining the club should contact us at the address below. (2025)
a. interested b. is interested c. who interested d. interesting
- A meal or diet contains all the different things you need to keep you healthy.
a. good-balanced b. well-balance c. good-balance d. well-balanced
- Om Kolthoum is all over the world.
a. well-knowing b. well known c. good-known d. well-known

13. I'm sorry you have a fear of failure.
 a. deep-seat b. deeply-seat c. deep-seated d. deep seated
14. The villa is It is enclosed by a very high fence.
 a. good fortification b. well-fortified c. good-fortified d. well fortified
15. If the bark of the tree is badly, the tree dies.
 a. damaged b. damages c. damaging d. is damaged
16. She is a very person.
 a. good-rounded b. good-round c. well-rounded d. well rounded
17. A wall has been built around the garden to keep it.
 a. thirty metres' b. thirty metre's c. thirty-metres d. thrity-metre
18. She has been engaged to a man.
 a. aged-middle b. middle-aged c. middle age d. middle aged
19. She bought a dress that reached her shoes.
 a. fully length b. length-full c. full-length d. full length
20. I love dealing with people who accept others' points of view.
 a. open-mind b. open-minded c. open mind d. open minded
21. She is; she can't see near objects.
 a. length sight b. long-sighted c. long sighted d. length-sight
22. She was sitting here with a woman.
 a. good looking b. good-looking c. well-looked d. well looked
23. Naguib Mahfouz is a writer.
 a. world famous b. famous world c. world-famous d. famous-world
24. She has three girls; one of them is
 a. green-eyed b. green-eye c. green eyed d. green eyes
25. Dr Saad is a scientist.
 a. high respected b. highly respected c. highly-respected d. high-respected
26. She is travelling in three time.
 a. week b. weeks' c. week's d. weeks
27. This agency sells only cars.
 a. second hand b. secondly hand c. secondly-hand d. second-hand
28. They have experienced a relationship.
 a. long-distance b. long distance c. long distanced d. long-distanced
29. problems are the main cause of pollution.
 a. Human made b. Made human c. Human-making d. Human-made
30. He ran in a twenty race.
 a. -kilometer b. kilometer c. kilometres' d. -kilometres'
31. Cairo is a city.
 a. densely-population b. dense-populate c. densely-populated d. densely populated
32. She wants to get married to a man.
 a. good education b. well educated c. well-educated d. good-education
33. Smoking causes health problems.
 a. term-long b. long term c. long-term d. term length
34. Internet technology is a thing.
 a. changing-fast b. fast change c. change fast d. fast-changing
35. Solar-..... vehicles can save energy.
 a. powering b. power c. powers d. powered
36. She couldn't grasp the information because she was
 a. absent-minding b. mind-absent c. absent-mind d. absent-minded
37. My neighbour is a man.
 a. kind heart b. heart-kind c. kind-hearted d. hearted-kind

38. My father is a worker; he wants to have a permanent job.
 a. part time b. time part c. part-time d. time-part
39. When she was in Paris, she stayed in a five-..... hotel.
 a. stars b. star's c. star d. stars'
40. They during the party.
 a. well-behaved b. behaved-well c. behaved good d. behaved well

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The journey took ten hours. (ten-hour) (SB)
 2. They offered me a job that was full time. (a full-time) (SB)
 3. My grandmother who is seventy years old still loves hiking. (seventy-year-old) (SB)
 4. The movie lasted for two hours. (a two-hour) (SB)
 5. English is spoken everywhere all over the world. (widely-)
 6. The river is full of plastic. (-filled)
 7. The cargo weight three tonnes. (three-tonne)
 8. The woman crossing the bridge seems strange. (strange-looking)
 9. She had a session that lasted for four hours. (four-hour)
 10. The meeting lasted for a long time. (long-lasting)
 11. We need cars that run on solar power. (solar-powered)
 12. She bought a very modern mobile phone. (brand-)
 13. The story he narrated broke the audience's hearts. (heart-breaking)
 14. The damage continued for a long time. (long-term)
 15. She has a son who is six years old. (six-year)
 16. The project consumed a long time. (time-consuming)
 17. She wants a bike made of steel. (steel-built)
 18. He chooses his words well during speeches. (well-chosen)
 19. The vehicle has four wheels. (four-wheeled)
 20. She is a woman who is praised high by everyone. (highly-praised)

خلاصة مهارات الكتابة

Writing Skills: Hints

أساطير المحيط ورواية القصص Ocean Legends and Storytelling

- 1. Beginning – (Introduction) (مقدمة) - البداية** • Introduce the main character(s)
 • Set the time and place (Where? When?) • Show the situation or problem.
- 2. Middle-(Development) (التطور) - المنتصف** • Show what happens (the action or conflict)
 • Describe how the character tries to solve the problem • Add tension or surprise
- 3. Ending – (Resolution) (الحل) - النهاية**
 • End the story clearly • Solve the problem (happy, sad, or unexpected ending)
 • Show what the character learns or feels
- **Useful Tools** أدوات مفيدة • Tense: Usually use past simple and past continuous
 • Linking Words: Then, suddenly, after that, while, finally, in the end
 • Adjectives/Adverbs: scary, exciting, slowly, angrily
 • Dialog: Add characters' speech (use “ ” quotation marks)
- **Writing Tip: Writing a short story** نصيحة للكتابة: كتابة قصة قصيرة
 • Use short paragraphs. • Add feelings: scared, excited, proud.
 • Use compound adjectives: ice-cold rain, heart-warming ending.
 • Use idioms or expressions: “She was over the moon.”

Exercises on Writing Skills

- At the end of the story, we
 a. introduce the conflict
 b. add new characters
 c. add another setting
 d. solve the problem
- At the beginning of a story, we
 a. solve the problem
 b. introduce the main characters.
 c. add tension or surprise
 d. end the story clearly
- Which of the following is a useful linking word for narrating stories?
 a. Then
 b. Because
 c. Moreover
 d. However
- is often shown at the start of the story.
 a. A situation
 b. An idiom
 c. An adjective
 d. A resolution
- In the middle of a story, the character usually tries to
 a. describe the place
 b. introduce the events
 c. solve the problem
 d. end the story
- What should be set in the beginning of a story besides characters?
 a. Weather and mood
 b. Time and place
 c. Ending and lesson
 d. Conflict and solution
- What tense is usually used in storytelling?
 a. Future simple
 b. Present simple
 c. Past simple and past continuous
 d. Present perfect
- What feelings can be added to make the story better?
 a. Hungry, thirsty
 b. Scared, proud, excited
 c. Angry, bored, lazy
 d. Sleepy, tired, sad

تمارين على القواعد التراكمية لإعادة السبب والنتيجة: too / such / enough / so

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I think that Chinese is difficult that we can't learn it easily. (Longman)
 a. such a
 b. so
 c. enough
 d. such
- Hungarian is difficult language that it is very hard to learn. (Longman)
 a. too
 b. so
 c. such
 d. such a
- Don't worry; the lecture is easy to study alone. (Longman)
 a. enough
 b. so
 c. too
 d. such a
- You aren't to lift this heavy box; I will help you. (Longman)
 a. strong enough
 b. such strong
 c. too strong
 d. such a strong
- The mobile phone cost so that I couldn't buy it. (Longman)
 a. many
 b. much
 c. few
 d. little
- The area where I live has poor internet that I can hardly get online. (Longman)
 a. too
 b. enough
 c. so
 d. such
- I don't know why you have many pens in your bag. (2020)
 a. very
 b. enough
 c. such
 d. so
- They were close to winning that everyone felt disappointed with the loss. (2019)
 a. so
 b. such
 c. enough
 d. too
- There are times when you can't work to live comfortably. (2019)
 a. enough hard
 b. hard enough
 c. hardly enough
 d. too hard
- There are many options in this marvelous mobile that I can hardly deal with. (2024)
 a. such
 b. so
 c. too
 d. very

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- He was very rash. He didn't take permission to leave. (enough) (1982)
- She was very tired. She couldn't walk. (enough) (1991)
- The play was so successful that all the tickets were sold. (It was) (1992)

4. The man is too weak to go for a walk alone. (so that) (2003)
 5. He was too tired to do his homework. (so that) (2004)
 6. I worked hard to expand my business. (so that) (2007)

General Question Bank (Unit 4) بنك الأسئلة العام على الوحدة

A. Vocabulary

1. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. The situation is a fast-changing one. The antonym of "fast-changing" is
 a. evolving b. unchanging c. stable d. developing e. shifting
2. We must protect endangered species of animals. The synonym of "endangered" is
 a. at risk b. protected c. threatened d. safe e. secure
3. The stick was so fragile that it broke easily. An antonym of "fragile" is
 a. brittle b. durable c. delicate d. powerful e. stained
4. She is a dedicated doctor who helps her patients a lot. The antonym of "dedicated" is
 a. indifferent b. committed c. careless d. careful e. devoted

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The coral reef was so beautiful, it was (SB)
 a. astonished b. amazing c. silly d. fabricated
2. The scientist works as a marine studying whales. (SB)
 a. voter b. voting c. biology d. biologist
3. Baby sea turtles are on sandy beaches. (SB)
 a. snatched b. hatched c. preached d. released
4. The team will efforts to clean the polluted bay. (SB)
 a. coordinate b. cooperate c. eradicate d. fail
5. Her as a leading ocean researcher is well known. (SB)
 a. disability b. vulnerability c. reputation d. operation
6. The sonar device can movement under the water. (SB)
 a. miss b. devastate c. insect d. detect
7. Some marine ecosystems are extremely and can be damaged easily by pollution. (SB)
 a. fragile b. powerful c. strengthened d. colossal
8. Sea turtles can only in clean waters with plenty of food sources. (SB)
 a. strike b. thrive c. swindle d. surrender
9. Rising sea levels and strong waves can cause severe coastal over time. (SB)
 a. devotion b. dedication c. erosion d. donation
10. Coral reefs are home to many fish whose colours attract divers from around the world. (SB)
 a. vivid b. wicked c. ducked d. dived
11. The sun the old wooden fence a pale gray. (SB)
 a. clinched b. snatched c. grabbed d. bleached
12. We speak when we say, "the ocean is crying". (SB)
 a. really b. literally c. by letter d. figuratively

B. Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Mohamed Salah is a footballer. (SB)
 a. good knowledge b. well knowing c. well known d. well-known
2. As a footballer, Mohamed Salah is (SB)
 a. well-known b. well known c. good known d. good-known
3. The water was so (SB)
 a. crystal-clear b. clearly-crystal c. crystallly-clear d. clear crystal
4. The Red Sea is home to many fish. (SB)
 a. color b. colourful c. colorfully d. colors

5. I took a photo of a turtle. (SB)
 a. slow-moving b. moving-slow c. slowly-moving d. move-slowly
6. We enjoyed a sunset on the beach. (SB)
 a. breathtaking b. heart-breaking c. breathless d. breath
7. The children at the party were very and listened to the rules. (SB)
 a. good behaviour b. well behaved c. well-behaved d. good-behaved
8. My grandma loves to wear dresses from 1970. (SB)
 a. old fashion b. old fashioned c. fashion old d. old-fashioned
9. The city is so that there's always traffic. (SB)
 a. dense population b. dense populated c. densely-populated d. populated-dense
10. Writing a research paper is a task that takes a lot of time and effort. (SB)
 a. consume-time b. time-consume c. time-consuming d. consuming-time
2. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:
1. She has a very open mind. (open-minded) (SB)
 2. He is a scientist who is known all over the world. (a world-known) (SB)
 3. The man has full confidence in himself. (a self-confident) (SB)
 4. She has blue eyes. (blue-eyed) (SB)

C. Translation

١. الحاسة السادسة من الممكن أن تحدث نتيجة تخزين الدماغ لشئ المعلومات عن موضوع ما.
- a. The six sense can be occur as a result of the brain storing every information about a subject.
 b. The sixth sense can occur result of the brain storing all information about a subject.
 c. The sixth sense can occur as a result from the brain storing every information about a subject.
 d. The sixth sense can occur as a result of the brain storing all information about a subject.
٢. التعلّم عن بُعد يركّز على الطلاب غير القادرين على الاستمرار في التعليم التقليدي.
- a. Distance learning focuses on students who are unable to continue with traditional education.
 b. Distant learning focuses on students who are unable to continue with traditional education.
 c. Distance learning focuses on students whom are unable to continue with tradition education.
 d. Distant learning focuses on students whom are unable to continue by tradition education.
3. The food-making process for plants to survive is called photosynthesis through which plants produce food and oxygen.
٤. القلب يضخ الدم الواهب للحياة في كل أنحاء الجسد. كما يعمل مع الأوعية الدموية لتوفير جميع احتياجات الخلايا.
٥. القلب يضخ الدم الجامع للحياة في كل خلايا الجسد. كما يعمل مع الأوعية الدموية لتوفير جميع احتياجات الأعضاء.
٦. القلب يضخ الدم الواهب للحياة في كل بقايا الجسد. كما يعمل مع الأنسجة الدموية لتوفير جميع احتياجات الأعضاء.
٧. القلب يضخ الدم الجامع للحياة في كل أنحاء الجسد. كما يعمل مع الأنسجة الدموية لتوفير جميع احتياجات الخلايا.

D. Reading Comprehension

1. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Long ago, people often used a sundial ^{ساعة الشمس} or shadow clock ^{ساعة الظل} to give them some idea of the time of day. They could tell ten o'clock in the morning from three o'clock in the afternoon. At night or on a cloudy day, however, the sun did not cast a shadow. At those times, people could not use a sundial.

Around 1600 BCE, the Egyptians created a water clock, or clepsydra الساعة المائية. This was a much more exact مضبوط way of measuring قياس time. The clepsydra was a large bowl that often had carvings منحوتات or paintings on the outside. There were holes in the bottom of the bowl. Water dripped تقطرت through them steadily بثبات. Inside the bowl, there were markings علامات every inch or so. These marks were spaced to measure a certain length of time. As the water dripped from the bowl, the water level dropped. The amount of water still in the bowl showed the time of day. Many kinds of water clocks were later used by the Greeks, Romans, Arabs, and Chinese. If you visit an Egyptian exhibit معرض at your local museum, you might get a chance to see a real water clock. Some of them date back to يرجع تاريخها لـ the time of Ramses the Great, an important Egyptian pharaoh. In fact, one of Ramses' treasures was a wonderful water clock. It's made of alabaster المرمر, a smooth, white stone. The ancient markings can still be seen inside the bowl. There are faded paintings on the outside of the bowl.

Despite all of our modern clocks, the Egyptian water clock, thousands of years old, drips on to let visitors know the time of day.

- The most important thing in this story is a/an.....
 - Chinese exhibition
 - Egyptian invention
 - Roman invention
 - Greek song
- A clepsydra is
 - a sundial
 - a modern watch
 - a water clock
 - a handy clock
- The water clock was first used
 - by Egyptians
 - in the United States
 - in space
 - in Europe
- A pharaoh is
 - a large ship
 - an alabaster bowl
 - the ruler of a country
 - a kind of clocks
- Why did people use a sundial?
 - to know the time
 - to create clocks
 - to measure size
 - to find missing things
- Alabaster must be very hard because
 - it has lasted for thousands of years.
 - it will not break if dropped.
 - the pharaohs built ships with it.
 - it is smooth and white.
- People using sundial couldn't know time when it was
 - sunny
 - cloudy
 - morning
 - afternoon
- The underlined word "faded" has the same meaning as
 - fool
 - faint
 - fat
 - fame

2. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

There are many theories about the beginning of drama in ancient Greece. The most widely accepted one today assumes تفترض that drama evolved تطورت from ritual الشعائر. In the beginning, human beings viewed the natural forces of the world, even the seasonal changes, as unpredictable لا يمكن التنبؤ بها, and they sought to سعوا إلى control these unknown and feared powers. Those measures which appeared to bring the desired results were then retained and repeated until they hardened into fixed rituals شعائر ثابتة. Eventually stories arose which explained or veiled the mysteries of the rites. As time passed, some rituals were abandoned, but myths persisted and provided material for art and drama.

Those who believe that drama evolved out of ritual also argue that those rites contained the seed of theater because music, dance, masks, and costumes ملابس خاصة were almost always used. Furthermore, a suitable site موقع مناسب had to be provided for performances العروض and a clear division was made between the acting area منطقة التمثيل and the auditorium القاعة. In addition, there were performers who avoided mistakes in the enactment أداء of rites and religious leaders who assumed tasks. Wearing masks and costumes, they often impersonated other people, animals, or supernatural beings كانتات خارقة, and mimed تمثيل صامت the desired effect (success in hunt or battle, the coming rain, the revival of the Sun) as an actor might. Eventually such dramatic representations were separated from منفصلة عن religious activities.

Another **theory** traces the theater's origin from the human interest in storytelling. According to this view, tales (about the hunt, war, or other feats) are gradually elaborated, at first through the use of impersonation التمثيل, action الحركة, and dialogue الحوار by a narrator راوي and then through the assumption of each role by a different person. A closely related theory traces theater to those dances that are primarily rhythmical إيقاعية and gymnastic رياضية or that are imitations تقليد of animal movements and sounds.

1. What does the passage mainly discuss?
 - a. The origins of theater
 - b. The importance of storytelling
 - c. The role of ritual in modern dance
 - d. The variety of early religious activities.
2. The word "they" refers to.....
 - a. theories
 - b. seasonal changes
 - c. human beings
 - d. natural forces
3. What aspect of drama does the author discuss in the first paragraph?
 - a. The importance of costumes in early drama.
 - b. The seasons in which dramas were performed.
 - c. The reason drama is often unpredictable.
 - d. The connection between myths and dramatic plots.
4. Which of the following is NOT mentioned as a common element of theater ritual?
 - a. Magic
 - b. Music
 - c. Dance
 - d. Costumes
5. The word "enactment" is closest in meaning to.....
 - a. authorization
 - b. performance
 - c. season
 - d. establishment
6. Drama came from
 - a. either religion or rituals
 - b. rituals only.
 - c. either rituals or man's interest in storytelling.
 - d. man's interest in storytelling only.
7. Which of the following is the main idea of the last paragraph?
 - a. Why people love dancing.
 - b. The only possible source of drama.
 - c. People's love for telling tales.
 - d. Another possible source of drama.
8. Put a suitable title for the passage.
 - a. Where rituals come from
 - b. How drama began
 - c. The importance of actors
 - d. Where religions started

E. Writing

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Which one of the following sentences is punctuated correctly?
 - a. She said "I'm busy".
 - b. "I'm busy", said she.
 - c. She said "I'm busy".
 - d. "I'm busy" said she?
2. The thesis statement represents the main idea of the
 - a. conclusion
 - b. introduction
 - c. body
 - d. summary
3. "Whose car is the red one?" What type of "whose" is this?
 - a. A relative pronoun
 - b. A question word
 - c. A question mark
 - d. An adverb of degree
4. What would you say to ask Ahmed to lend you his mobile?
 - a. Lend me your mobile Ahmed.
 - b. Lend me your mobile, Ahmed.
 - c. Lend me your mobile; Ahmed.
 - d. Lend me your mobile: Ahmed.

2. Write about (180 – 200) words on one of the following:

1. National unity.
2. A day to remember.

3. Write a paragraph of Six lines on the following:

1. An introduction on "My adventure in the jungles"
2. A paragraph on "Deforestation"

F. The Novel

- Answer the following questions:

1. What conditions did Edmond face inside Château d'If? (SB)
2. How does the prison setting increase the sense of injustice in the story? (SB)
3. "Knowledge is power." Do you agree with this idea? Explain with an example. (SB)

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonyms	Antonyms
accurately	بدقة	precisely / exactly	wrongly / imprecisely
adaptable	قابل للتكيف	adjustable / versatile	rigid / fixed
emotional	عاطفي	passionate / sentimental	apathetic / rational
flawless	مثالي - بلا عيب	faultless / impeccable	defective / faulty / flawed
flexibility	المرونة	versatility / resilience	rigidity / stiffness
passion	شغف	enthusiasm / devotion	apathy / coldness
repetitive	متكرر	monotonous / dull	lively / interesting
up to date	حديث / مواكب	contemporary / timely	obsolete / expired

Key Vocabulary

human insight	بصيرة إنسانية	diagnose	يشخص	emotion	عاطفة - شعور
mindset	العقلية - نمط التفكير	accuracy	الدقة	magic	السحر
collaboration	التعاون	in response to	استجابة لـ	imitate	يقلد / يحاكي
construction	بناء - تشييد	income	الدخل	curious	فضولي / شغوف
digital literacy	الثقافة الرقمية	future-proof	صالح للمستقبل	analyze	يحلل
advance	يتطور / يتحسن	warmth	الدفء	capture	يلتقط (صور) شيء

Vocabulary & Prepositions

manufacturing	التصنيع	participate in	يشارك في	workshops	ورش عمل
employable	أهل للتوظيف	frequently	بشكل متكرر	industries	صناعات
employees	موظفون	construct	يشيد / يبني	workforce	القوى العاملة
require	يطلب	focus on	يركز على	copy	ينسخ / يقلد
judgment	حكم	green energy	طاقة نظيفة	backgrounds	خلفيات
for instance	على سبيل المثال	digital tools	أدوات رقمية	increasingly	بشكل متزايد
attitude	موقف / نظرة	institutions	معاهد / مؤسسات	critical thinking	تفكير نقدي
open to	منفتح على	data management	إدارة بيانات	create jobs	يوفر وظائف
in short	باختصار	stay competitive	يظل منافسا	displace	يزيل / يحل محل
likely	من المحتمل	job areas (fields)	مجالات وظيفية	coding	تشفير / كتابة شفرات
firefly	يراعة (حشرة)	analysis	تحليل	rapid change	تغير سريع
pocket-sized	بحجم الجيب	metaphor	استعارة	constant learning	تعلم مستمر
gasps	أنفاس - شهقات	compose music	يؤلف موسيقى	stare at	يحدق في
over-dependence	اعتماد مفرط	human spark	شرارة إنسانية	powerful apps	تطبيقات فعالة
keep up with	يساير / يجاري	responsibly	بمسئولية	write a contract	يكتب عقدا
leading engineer	مهندس رائد	AI assistant	مساعد ذكاء اصطناعي	plot twists	العطافات الحبكة
sequence	تسلسل	automated assistant	مساعد آلي	missing	مفقود
reflection	تفكير	detailed	مفصل	resolution	حل

Idioms - Collocations - Expressions

emotional intelligence	الذكاء العاطفي	stay ahead of the curve	يبقى في المقدمة
artificial intelligence (AI)	الذكاء الاصطناعي	think outside the box	يفكر خارج الصندوق
digital transformation	التحول الرقمي	climb the career ladder	يترقى في الوظيفة
move up to higher positions	ينتقل لمناصب أعلى	develop soft skills	يطور مهارات سلوكية
AI-related fields	مجالات متعلقة بالذكاء ...	achieve (score) a goal	يحقق / يحرز في لعبة
moved people to tears	أثر في الناس فلبكاهم	follow new trends	يتبع الضجات الحديثة
paint a family portrait	يرسم صورة للعائلة	miss the feeling of	يفتقد شعور ..

Language Notes

together	سويا / معا	together with	بالإضافة إلى
ready to + مصدر	مستعد لـ	ready for + V.ing / N	مستعد لـ
able / unable to + مصدر	قادر (غير قادر) على	capable / incapable of + V.ing	(غير) قادر على
carved (cut) into	منحوت داخل	carved (cut) out of	منحوت من
capture	يأسر في معركة أو حرب	captivate	يأسر العقل أو القلب
human	إنساني (بشرى) (خاص بالبشر)	humane	إنساني (عطوف)
'd rather (would rather) + مصدر	يفضل	'd + better (had better) + مصدر	من الأفضل له
do better	يؤدي بشكل أفضل	get better	يتحسن
private	خاص (للملكية)	public	عام (للملكية)
special (particular)	خاص (من نوع خاص)	general	عام (شامل)
provide/supply + شخص + شيء + with	يمد شخص + شيء	provide/supply + شخص + شيء + for	يوفر شخص + شيء
present + شيء + to + شخص	يقدم شخص + شيء	present + شخص + شيء + with	يقدم شخص + شيء

Vocabulary Question Bank أسئلة الكلمات

A. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- "Her creativity shines in the paintings she makes." A synonym for "creativity" is
a. originality b. dullness c. imitation d. routine e. inventiveness
- Keep your software up to date to avoid security risks. An antonym for "up to date" is
a. outdated b. modern c. expired d. contemporary e. modern-day
- My uncle lives in a remote part of the country. A synonym for "remote" is
a. isolated b. nearby c. close d. public e. far
- The work was repetitive, so the employees felt bored. A synonym for "repetitive" is
a. monosyllabic b. monotonous c. lively d. interesting e. dull
- The construction of the highway is complete. An antonym of "construction" is
a. damage b. destruction c. structure d. erection e. composition
- It is common for students to feel nervous before exams. An antonym for "common" is ...
a. ordinary b. known c. exceptional d. unique e. familiar
- The change was very rapid. The word "rapid" can be replaced with
a. slow b. "radual" c. fast d. sluggish e. quick
- The storm was powerful; it knocked down the trees. "Powerful" can be replaced with
a. mighty b. influential c. feeble d. powerless e. weak
- A rainbow appeared in the sky after the rain stopped. A synonym for "appear" is
a. show b. vanish c. fade d. pale e. emerge

10. We replaced outdated computers with faster models. An antonym for "outdated" is
- a. old-fashioned b. current c. up-to-date d. obsolete e. expired
11. He pursued his career with great passion. A synonym for "passion" is
- a. apathy b. devotion c. lethargy d. enthusiasm e. coldness
12. An automated system will speed up production. A synonym for "automated" is
- a. hand-made b. human-made c. manual d. mechanical e. computerized

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Leaders with high intelligence manage teams more effectively.
- a. controversial b. emotion c. emotional d. controversy
2. intelligence is transforming many industries, from healthcare to finance.
- a. Artifact b. Artist c. Articular d. Artificial
3. Digital has changed how businesses interact with customers.
- a. transformation b. transplant c. transparent d. transaction
4. Employees work hard to move up to higher in the company.
- a. magnets b. permissions c. prepositions d. positions
5. Many students are interested in AI-..... fields like robotics and machine learning.
- a. relative b. related c. relation d. relating
6. The emotional film moved people to in the audience.
- a. tears b. graves c. brides d. tries
7. She learned to paint a family using oil paints in art class.
- a. portrait b. passport c. betrayal d. pregnant
8. He takes online courses to stay ahead of the in his career.
- a. crave b. serve c. curve d. grave
9. To solve complex problems, employees are encouraged to think outside the
- a. chest b. drawer c. waste d. box
10. He worked hard to climb the career and become a manager.
- a. stair b. stem c. leader d. ladder
11. It's important to soft skills like communication and teamwork.
- a. give b. develop c. enclose d. surround
12. With hard work and dedication, students can their academic goals.
- a. beat b. score c. achieve d. demolish
13. Tech companies constantly follow new in innovation and design.
- a. tends b. trends c. attends d. attains
14. She the feeling of joy she experienced during childhood holidays.
- a. loses b. wastes c. misses d. beats
15. The scientist measured the chemicals to avoid errors in the experiment.
- a. mistakenly b. accurately c. wrongly d. imperfectly
16. Employees who are can handle changes in the workplace more easily.
- a. inflexible b. intolerant c. addicted d. adaptable
17. The movie was so that many viewers cried.
- a. dull b. boring c. ordinary d. emotional
18. Her performance in the competition was, earning her first place.
- a. flawless b. mistaken c. unethical d. dependable
19. Yoga improves and helps prevent injuries.
- a. inflexible b. flexible c. flexibly d. flexibility
20. He has a for music and practices the piano every day.
- a. pressure b. passionate c. passion d. compassionate
21. The coach emphasized of drills to improve the team's skills.
- a. repeat b. repetition c. repetitive d. repeated

22. She always keeps herself with the latest fashion trends.
 a. old-fashioned b. out of date c. outdated d. up to date
23. His human helped the team understand customer needs better.
 a. assist b. sight c. insight d. slight
24. She developed a growth, believing that effort improves abilities.
 a. mindset b. mandate c. brain d. painful
25. Successful projects require between team members.
 a. contamination b. collaboration c. cooperative d. commandment
26. The of the new bridge will take two years.
 a. construction b. communication c. compassion d. passion
27. Digital is essential for students in the modern world.
 a. literature b. illiteracy c. literacy d. lethargy
28. Technology continues to at a rapid pace.
 a. advocate b. advice c. device d. advance
29. Early screening helps to diseases before they become serious.
 a. dialect b. detergent c. attract d. diagnose
30. The of the survey results depends on the quality of the data.
 a. cavity b. gravity c. accuracy d. appendix
31. The company released a statement in to customer complaints.
 a. responsive b. respond c. correspond d. response
32. Her main source of comes from teaching.
 a. outcome b. comer c. commute d. income
33. Learning coding skills can help future-..... your career.
 a. prove b. proof c. profound d. proverb
34. It was a evening with fireworks and music.
 a. magnate b. magnet c. magician d. magical
35. Young children often the behavior of adults.
 a. crop b. paste c. imitate d. mitigate
36. She was to know what was inside the mysterious box.
 a. notorious b. various c. server d. curious
37. Scientists data to draw meaningful conclusions.
 a. analyze b. recognize c. sterilize d. realize
38. The company specializes in electronic devices.
 a. cooperating b. manufacturing c. widening d. broadening
39. Students need practical skills to be after graduation.
 a. employee b. employment c. employer d. employable
40. This job will strong communication skills.
 a. inquire b. enquire c. require d. question
41. Good is essential for making important decisions.
 a. judgment b. attachment c. detachment d. compact
42. Many countries are investing in renewable energy; for, Germany leads in solar power.
 a. instant b. instantly c. instance d. instead
43. A positive can help you overcome challenges.
 a. tribute b. altitude c. attitude d. tape
44. She is always to new ideas and suggestions.
 a. open b. wide c. broad d. beard
45. It is to rain tomorrow, so take an umbrella.
 a. alike b. likely c. unlikely d. unlike
46. The children chased the glowing in the garden.
 a. fireplace b. firefighter c. fireflies d. garments

47. She carries a notebook to write down ideas anywhere.
 a. size-pocket b. pocket-sizes c. pocket-sizing d. pocket-sized
48. There were of surprise when the huge cake was revealed.
 a. gasps b. gaps c. jobs d. grapes
49. on technology can reduce human creativity.
 a. Over-dependence b. Independence c. Independently d. Independent
50. It is important to keep the latest news and trends.
 a. down in b. up with c. away with d. down with
51. He became the engineer due to his innovative ideas.
 a. leading b. mending c. attending d. condemning
52. Follow the of steps carefully to assemble the machine.
 a. sequence b. stamina c. usual d. perplex
53. Students are encouraged to in class discussions.
 a. participate b. circulate c. irrigate d. eradicate
54. The software is updated to fix bugs and improve performance.
 a. hardly b. rarely c. scarcely d. frequently
55. Engineers bridges using advanced materials.
 a. revolutionize b. construct c. instruct d. abstract
56. During the meeting, we need to on the main issues.
 a. focus b. mention c. demotion d. motion
57. Solar panels are an important part of energy solutions.
 a. red b. black c. white d. green
58. Teachers use digital to make lessons more interactive.
 a. toys b. tools c. trails d. instrument
59. Financial must follow strict regulations to protect customers.
 a. institutions b. constitutions c. costumes d. customs
60. Good data ensures accuracy and accessibility of information.
 a. management b. attachment c. involvement d. commitment
61. Companies must innovate constantly to stay in the market.
 a. competition b. competitive c. competed d. competitively
62. Technology and healthcare are some of the fastest-growing job
 a. zones b. fries c. areas d. wilds
63. The scientist's of the data revealed new insights.
 a. analyze b. analytically c. analytic d. analysis
64. "Time is a river" is a common used in literature.
 a. metal b. metaphor c. missile d. swindle
65. She likes to music in her free time.
 a. compact b. compose c. impose d. pose
66. Despite automation, the human is irreplaceable in creative work.
 a. sparkle b. spark c. smart d. swear
67. We should use natural resources to protect the environment.
 a. responsibility b. responsibly c. responsible d. irresponsibly
68. An AI can help schedule meetings and answer emails.
 a. assistance b. assist c. dentist d. assistant
69. Banks use assistants to handle simple customer inquiries.
 a. dominated b. automated c. sustained d. speculated
70. Training programs help develop a skilled
 a. work b. workplace c. workforce d. fierce
71. Students from different shared their experiences in class.
 a. surrounds b. backgrounds c. pirates d. implies

72. Remote work is popular in many industries.
 a. increased b. increasing c. increase d. increasingly
73. New businesses can jobs in local communities.
 a. explore b. discover c. invent d. create
74. Automation may some workers in traditional industries.
 a. place b. displace c. in place d. place in

خلاصة القواعد

Language: Quick Hints

Causative verbs أفعال السببية

أولاً: السببية في المبني للمعلوم:

- تعني أن يقوم شخص بجعل (السماح -) (إجبار) (الطلب من) (إقناع) شخص آخر أن يفعل شيئاً ما:

..... مصدر الفعل + مفعول + have + فاعل	(تعني: يجعل)
..... مصدر الفعل + to + مفعول + get + فاعل	(تعني: يجعل)
..... مصدر الفعل + مفعول + make + فاعل	(تعني: يجعل)
..... مصدر الفعل + مفعول + let + فاعل	(تعني: يسمح)
..... مصدر الفعل + to + مفعول + cause + فاعل	(تعني: يجعل)

- The teacher **had us do (got us to do)** extra work today.
- She **made** her sister **follow** her instructions as if she were a child.
- I **let** them **take** as much money as possible. - What **caused** you to **change** your mind?

ثانياً: السببية في المبني للمجهول:

- تعني أن يتم عمل (فعل) شيء ما عن طريق شخص آخر وليس عن طريقنا:

..... have (get) + مفعول + P.P + فاعل (تعني: يحصل على)

- We will **get** our car **repaired** at the mechanic's. (لسنا من سيصلح السيارة بل الميكانيكي)

ثالثاً: نستخدم الفعل (stop..... from + V.ing) لنقول أنه من المستحيل لأحدهم فعل شيء ما.

- The cold weather **stops** us **from going** outside.

بنك أسئلة القواعد Grammar Question Bank

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I always get my housework in the afternoon.
 a. done b. do c. to do d. to be done
- Heba always helps her mother to
 a. get done the washing b. the washing gets done
 c. get the washing done d. get the washed doing
- I my project work last weekend.
 a. have / doing b. get / doing c. had / to do d. got / done
- Our teacher the book again.
 a. let us to read b. made us read c. got us read d. had us to read
- The teacher sometimes an easy exercise for homework.
 a. makes us to do b. allows us do c. causes us do d. lets us do
- The very hot weather sometimes going outside.
 a. stops us from b. makes us to c. allows us to d. encourages us from
- Have a servant you at home.
 a. help b. helped c. helps d. to help

8. My mother doesn't out late at night.
 a. allow me go b. let me go c. allow to go me d. let go me
9. Ali himself. He didn't have help from anyone.
 a. had his dinner cooked b. cooked his dinner
 c. had had his dinner cooked d. got his dinner cooked
10. When I was little, I was poor so I to school.
 a. had to walk b. had me walk c. got me to walk d. had it walked
11. I bought the newspaper for dad. This means
 a. I had him buy the newspaper b. I got him to buy the newspaper
 c. He had me to buy the newspaper d. He had me buy the newspaper
12. My car must as soon as possible.
 a. have it washed b. have washed it c. have to be washed d. be washed
13. Mona swept the floor for her mother. This means
 a. Mona had mother sweep the floor b. Mother had Mona sweep the floor
 c. Mona got mother to sweep the floor d. Mother had Mona swept the floor
14. The sentence "I had my clothes washed" means that
 a. I washed them myself b. My clothes were washed by me
 c. I got someone wash them d. I got them washed
15. My brother did the homework for me. This means
 a. I did it myself b. I had it done c. I got it to do d. I had it do
16. The car doesn't start. You should yesterday.
 a. have had it checked b. check it c. have it checked d. have been checked
17. She two weeks ago.
 a. got her car fixing b. got fixed her car c. got her car fixes d. got her car fixed
18. I wash my clothes myself. I
 a. have them washed b. them are washed c. don't have them washed d. don't wash them
19. I myself.
 a. had my homework done b. got my homework done
 c. had my homework was done d. did my homework
20. You should the dinner for you.
 a. have Mona cooked b. have Mona cook c. get Mona cook d. cook Mona
21. My computer has stopped working. I'm tomorrow.
 a. repairing it b. getting it repair c. getting repaired it d. having it repaired
22. I had someone paint my flat. This means
 a. I painted it myself b. it was painted by me c. I had it painted d. I got it to paint
23. I usually tidy my room myself. I
 a. have no one tidy it b. have someone tidy it
 c. get no one tidy it d. get someone to tidy it
24. I will hard.
 a. make the players to train b. allow the players train
 c. have the players to train d. get the players to train
25. Wait there and I'll you with those bags.
 a. to help b. get someone help c. have someone to help d. get someone to help
26. Can I on a mug?
 a. have printed my photo b. have my photo print
 c. get my photo printed d. get printed my photo
27. My mother the meal. It's delicious.
 a. got prepared b. was prepared c. prepared d. had it prepared
28. My father always to school because he says it's healthy.
 a. forces me walk b. encourages me walk c. gets me walk d. makes me walk

53. I let my friends use my mobile phone. This means that I them to use it.
 a. made b. allowed c. forced d. suggested
54. My mother was busy, so she got lunch by my brother.
 a. made b. be made c. making d. to make

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. A friend is designing our website. (We) (SB)
2. The tailor is making a dress for me right now. (I'm)
3. I arranged for my car to be repaired. (got the mechanic)
4. He painted our flat while we were away. (had our flat)
5. My father allowed me to go out late at night. (let)
6. She told her secretary to cancel the appointment. (She had)
7. The movie was touching and it made me cry. (was made)
8. The flight attendant cancelled their tickets. (They had)
9. He arranged for a taxi to pick us up at eight. (had a taxi)
10. I had my tooth pulled out yesterday. (had the dentist)
11. I had my teacher help me with the project. (got)
12. The thief broke into my house. (I had)
13. I persuaded him to repair the device. (repaired)
14. The mechanic fixed my car well. (I had)
15. The teacher forced the students to do two extra tasks. (made)
16. A technician is designing my website. (I'm having)
17. The dentist is cleaning her teeth. (She)
18. She arranged for the photo to be developed. (She had)
19. The dressmaker made a new dress for me. (I had)
20. I will ask the servant to clean the curtains. (have the curtains)

خلاصة مهارات الكتابة

Writing Skills: Hints

Narrative Writing الكتابة السردية

- Narrative writing is a type of writing that tells a story. الكتابة السردية هي كتابة تروي قصة.
- It can be real (personal) or imagined (fiction), and it follows a clear sequence of events.
- **The Key Characteristics of Narrative Writing الخصائص الرئيسية للكتابة السردية**
- 1. **Characters:** People (or animals, robots, etc.) who take part in the events. الشخصيات: أشخاص (أو حيوانات، أو روبوتات، إلخ) يشاركون في الأحداث.
- 2. **Setting:** The time and place where the story happens. زمان ومكان القصة.
- 3. **Plot (Events in Order):** A sequence of events: a beginning, middle, and end. It often includes a problem or conflict and a resolution. الحبكة (ترتيب الأحداث): تسلسل الأحداث: بداية، وسط، ونهاية. - غالباً ما تتضمن مشكلة أو صراعاً وحلاً.
- 4. **Point of View:** Usually written in first person ("I") or third person ("he," "she") وجهة النظر: تكتب عادةً بضمير المتكلم ("أنا") أو بضمير الغائب ("هو"، "هي").
- 5. **Dialog and Description:** May include conversations and detailed descriptions to bring the story to life. الحوار والوصف: قد يتضمن حوارات وأوصافاً مفصلة لإضفاء الحيوية على القصة.
- 6. **Theme or Message:** Deeper meaning, lesson, or reflection. الموضوع أو الرسالة: معنى أعمق، أو درس، أو تأمل.
- 7. **Emotion and Voice:** The writer often shares feelings or thoughts to connect with the reader. العاطفة والصوت: غالباً ما يشارك الكاتب مشاعره أو أفكاره للتواصل مع القارئ.

Exercises on Writing Skills

- The theme of a narrative is the
 - ending sentence
 - deeper lesson
 - time and place
 - main character
- Narrative writing is writing that
 - explains facts
 - gives instructions
 - tells a story
 - argues a point
- Narrative writing usually follows a
 - random thought
 - clear sequence
 - scientific method
 - daily routine
- Which characteristic shows the writer's personal feelings?
 - Plot
 - Characters
 - Setting
 - Emotion and voice
- What point of view uses "I"?
 - First person
 - Second person
 - Third person
 - Fourth person
- In narrative writing, "setting" means the of the story.
 - events
 - lesson
 - problem
 - place and time
- The plot usually includes
 - the ending
 - a problem and a resolution
 - just the setting
 - only characters
- What is usually shared in the ending of a narrative?
 - The resolution
 - The setting
 - The characters
 - The mural

تمارين على القواعد التركيبية (قاعدة: الروابط - Conjunctions)

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We are losing 137 species every single day rainforest deforestation.
 - as
 - while
 - as a result
 - due to
- making cars smaller, these devices will make cars better in a number of ways.
 - Like
 - Once
 - Consequently
 - Besides
- He was ill,, he went to school.
 - so
 - although
 - even if
 - however
- You must work hard, you will not win.
 - otherwise
 - despite
 - although
 - though
- Which of the following sentences is incorrect?
 - He was tired, but he went out for a walk.
 - Tired he was, he went out for a walk.
 - Tired as he was, he went out for a walk.
 - Although he was tired, he went for a walk.
- it rained a lot, we enjoyed our weekend.
 - In spite of
 - For fear that
 - Despite
 - Even though
- I was feeling very tired, I went to bed early.
 - Although
 - Otherwise
 - As
 - Yet
- we arrived there, he had already gone away.
 - While
 - By the time
 - Since
 - Because
- They couldn't hold their meeting in the open air of the heavy rain.
 - for
 - but
 - since
 - because
- He wanted to watch a match on TV I was already watching another program.
 - but
 - or
 - so
 - and

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- I don't have enough money, I'll buy a car. (despite) (1981)
- Everybody admired Abdel-Wahab for his devotion to singing and music. (because) (1984)
- The bag is expensive. I'm going to buy it. (even though) (1985)
- The swimmer was encouraged by his success. He entered a competition. (Encouraged) (1989)
- She has a very sweet voice, but she doesn't want to be a singer. (In spite of) (2002)
- I arrived late at the airport. The result was that I missed my plane. (consequently) (2004)

A. Vocabulary

1. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- The machine is outdated, we should replace it. The antonym of "outdated" is
a. expired b. current c. up-to-date d. obsolete e. old-fashioned
- A computer processes data accurately. A synonym for "accurately" is
a. wrongly b. precisely c. incorrectly d. exactly e. imprecisely
- "She felt emotional after hearing the sad news." An antonym for "emotional" is
a. sensitive b. passionate c. expressive d. apathetic e. rational
- "Good employees are usually adaptable in situations." A synonym for "adaptable" is
a. fixed b. flexible c. rigid d. unyielding e. versatile

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The children felt a sense of when they listened to Amina's stories. (SB)
a. warmth b. worm c. wrath d. rhythm
- Machines couldn't the expressions on the children's faces. (SB)
a. captive b. captivate c. capsule d. capture
- Dr. Sami was about what made Amina's stories special. (SB)
a. keen b. interested c. fascinated d. curious
- The moon in her story was, just like some people in the modern world. (SB)
a. alone b. lane c. lonely d. loneliness
- The café was a place full of human and connection. (SB)
a. donation b. emotion c. convention d. promotion
- The storytelling had a kind of that technology couldn't explain. (SB)
a. magic b. magically c. magician d. magical
- Technology has become very and replaced many jobs. (SB)
a. advised b. devised c. revised d. advanced
- The job became boring because the tasks were too
a. creative b. unique c. innovative d. repetitive
- Some jobs strong communication skills in addition to technical knowledge.
a. require b. inquire c. acquire d. enquire
- Schools training programs to prepare students for real jobs.
a. did b. resigned c. assigned d. deigned
- Students thought outside the to build an eco-friendly project.
a. chest b. chart c. cartoon d. box
- If the manager is absent, the assistant will take his duties.
a. away b. off c. out d. over

B. Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The teacher had the class a 180 word research report. (2025-Exp.)
a. to write b. to be written c. write d. be written
- He is getting his teeth now. (SB)
a. checked b. check c. is checked d. to check
- She had the gardener the grass yesterday. (SB)
a. to cut b. be cut c. to be cut d. cut
- They got the lawyer the contract for 2 days. (SB)
a. reviewed b. reviewing c. to review d. review
- I had the mechanic my brakes yesterday. (SB)
a. fix b. fixed c. to fix d. fixing
- She got her brother her with her project. (SB)
a. help b. helped c. to help d. helping

7. We get the carpets every three months. (SB)
 a. clean b. cleaned c. to clean d. cleaning
8. They got the teacher the instructions again. (SB)
 a. explain b. explained c. to explain d. explains
9. He had his phone at the service center. (SB)
 a. repair b. repaired c. to repair d. repairing
10. We will have the house next month. (SB)
 a. be painted b. been painted c. painting d. painted
2. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:
1. A technician is installing their internet. (They) (SB)
 2. A dentist checked my teeth. (I) (SB)
 3. A tailor will make her dress. (She) (SB)
 4. A mechanic fixed my car. (I) (SB)

C. Translation

1. Arachnophobia is the fear of spiders. Spiders however are interesting and remarkable creatures.

أ. رهاب العنكب هو الخوف من العنكب ورغم ذلك فإن العنكب مخلوقات شائعة ومتميزة.
 ب. رهاب العنكب هو الخوف عند العنكب ورغم ذلك فإن العنكب مخلوقات شائعة وعجيبة.
 ج. رهاب العنكب هو الخوف لرؤية العنكب وعند ذلك فإن العنكب حشرات شائعة ومتميزة.
 د. رهاب العنكب هو الخوف من العنكب ويسبب ذلك فإن العنكب حشرات شائعة وعجيبة.

2. Tiny organisms can't be seen with the naked eye. They are located in water, on land, and in the air.

أ. الدقائق الكونية لا يمكن رؤيتها بالعين العارية وهي تتواجد في الماء وعلى اليابس وفي الهواء.
 ب. الكائنات الدقيقة لا يمكن رؤيتها بتجريد النظر وهي تتعايش في الماء وعلى اليابس وفي الهواء.
 ج. الدقائق الكونية لا يمكن رؤيتها بمجرد النظر وهي تتعايش في الماء وعلى اليابس وفي الهواء.
 د. الكائنات الدقيقة لا يمكن رؤيتها بالعين المجردة وهي تتواجد في الماء وعلى اليابس وفي الهواء.
 ٣. تطالب الأديان السماوية بالنظافة الشخصية لمنح الإنسان مظهراً مقبولاً.

- a. Heavenly religions inquire personal hygiene to give the human an acceptable appear.
 b. Heavenly religions require personal sanitation to give the human an acceptance appearance.
 c. Heavenly religions require personal hygiene to give the human an acceptable appearance.
 d. Heavenly religions acquire personal sanitation to give the human an acceptance appearing.

٤. أغلب المقابلات الوظيفية تعتمد على اللغة الإنجليزية كشرط أساسي في قبول المتقدم.

- a. Most job interviews based on English as a mainly conditional to agree an application.
 b. Most job interviews depend on English as a main condition to accept an applicant.
 c. Most job interviews based on English as a main conditional to accept an application.
 d. Most job interviews depend in English as a mainly condition to agree an applicant.

D. Reading Comprehension

1. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Specific symptoms of mental illness are related to suicide attempts and محاولات الانتحار and completed suicide. A feeling of hopelessness اليأس – being unable to imagine that things could get better – is common in depression الاكتئاب and related to such attempts. Sometimes these feelings can be due to being bullied تتمر, abused اعتداء, raped اغتصاب, or put through other trauma صدمة نفسية. Helplessness – a sense that nothing can be done to change things or solve problems – is also a common cause. Stress levels are also connected to suicide rates معدلات. People who feel isolated منعزل or different may turn to suicide as an escape. Similarly, veterans محاربون كبار of the military الجيش, especially those who have served in wartime وقت الحرب, are at increased risk of suicide. Loss is also a reason people consider suicide. It could include the death of a friend, family member, or loved one. Other triggers مشيرات may include a breakup انفصال, loss of a romantic relationship, a move to another place,

loss of housing, a loss of privilege or status مكانة, or a loss of freedom. It could be financial losses خسائر مالية such as losing a job, a house, or business. Certain religious beliefs may influence people to commit suicide. Some religions may leave people feeling guilty for things they have done and may lead them to believe they can't be forgiven. Some individuals may believe sacrificing التضحية their lives will earn them a reward like going to heaven.

- Those who are more likely to commit suicide.
a. win battles b. live surrounded by others c. are highly appreciated d. lose beloved people
- According to the passage, what kind of loss is the loss of a business?
a. A religious loss. b. A financial loss. c. A mental loss. d. A romantic loss.
- What makes people commit suicide to get rid of their guilt?
a. The great freedom they enjoy. b. The oppression they feel.
c. The religious belief they adopt. d. The love of themselves.
- Why do some people resort to suicide attempts?
a. To escape death. b. To go to hell.
c. To escape from isolation. d. So as not to join the army.
- What does the underlined word "it" refer to?
a. Loss b. Suicide c. Wartime d. The army
- The underlined word "privilege" is close in meaning to
a. excellence b. dishonor c. sadness d. combination
- Some losses can lead to
a. happiness b. suicide c. pleasure d. joyless
- A suitable title for the passage could be: "The of suicide."
a. causes b. benefits c. drawbacks d. results

2. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

You want to take good photographs of real life but you have few ideas for pictures; look around you. The everyday world is full of scenes مشاهد being played by ever-changing actors. You probably passed a dozen مئة picture situations without noticing on your way to work this morning. The realistic approach المنهج الواقعي to photography has been perfected in the past by many masters. But while you can learn a great deal from looking at others' work, you must develop an individual approach to achieve success in this field.

The main requirements for any photographer aren't technical matters. You must develop an awareness of the world around you, the people who inhabit يسكن it, and the point at which a situation develops so you can take a good picture. Those who are well prepared when the moment arises, will raise their camera quickly and shoot. Others who are not so aware will be struggling with camera cases حالات الكاميرا and lens caps أغطية العدسات.

Film manufacturers must be delighted with an inexperienced photographer setting out in search of the right situation and the right moment. Many costly materials have passed through thousands of cameras as this endless search continues. But although a lot of this waste must be put down to inexperience, even the professionals have to use a lot of film when they are shooting. Not every shot will be a winner. If you look at the work of even the best photographers, you'll notice dozens of pictures have been taken only because they lead up to the successful shot that the photographer has obviously been observing. You may find that you have taken one or two pictures after the right moment has passed as well. There is seldom more than one shot which stands out. There is just one point where it all comes together, and you often have to waste film to catch that precious moment.

- How can you become a better real-life photographer?
a. by watching other photographers at work. b. by developing skills and ideas for yourself.
c. by learning about famous photographers. d. by just taking a great many photographs.

2. The best real-life photography depends on being able to
- a. have a camera which is quick to use. b. tell when a good situation might arise.
c. alter camera techniques. d. go out and search for unusual situations.
3. The waste of film in real-life photography is
- a. limited to amateur photographers. b. expensive and unnecessary.
c. essential to the production of good pictures. d. the result of poor choices of subject.
4. – What is likely to be most successful? – It's
- a. taking pictures without too much preparation. b. taking a whole series of similar pictures.
c. taking great care to set up the situation. d. taking one picture at the right moment.
5. This text may be taken from ".....".
- a. A history of photography. b. An advertisement for film.
c. An introduction to photography. d. A camera instruction booklet.
6. The word "precious" has the same meaning as
- a. valuable b. vivid c. vigorous d. complicated
7. A good photographer must be of the world around.
- a. aware b. spare c. hesitant d. serious
8. Photographers
- a. always catch the precious moment b. might waste a lot of film
c. always take unsuccessful pictures d. never take successful pictures

E. Writing

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Which of the following is punctuated correctly? (LM)
- a. He said, "Have you read it Rami?" b. He said. "Have you read it, Rami?"
c. He said, "Have you read it, Rami?" d. He said "Have you read it, Rami?"
2., we can say that studying in the morning appears to be the most beneficial time to study. This was confirmed by experts through their approved research. (LM)
- a. In doubt b. In conclusion c. In turn d. In vain
3. A/an essay is a form of academic writing which is built around a detailed description of a person, building, place, situation, etc. (LM)
- a. narrative b. descriptive c. argumentative d. formal
4. The most general sentence in an essay is the
- a. thesis b. conclusion c. example d. detail

2. Write about (180 – 200) words on one of the following:

- The role of AI in modern work fields.
- A narrative story imagining your day in 2050.

3. Write a paragraph of Six lines on the following:

- A writer that has affected you so much.
- The disadvantages of eating junk foods.

F. The Novel

- Answer the following questions:

- Compare Edmond before and after meeting Abbé Faria. How does he change? (SB)
- Do you agree that knowledge can be more valuable than freedom? Why or why not? (SB)
- The "ray of hope" symbolizes more than a chance of freedom. What does it mean for Edmond's soul and future? (SB)

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonyms	Antonyms
beneficial	مفيد / نافع	useful / helpful	harmful / destructive
clumsy	أخرق / غير ماهر	awkward / graceless	graceful / coordinated
glamorous	ساحر / بدیع	charming / stylish	plain / unattractive
mortifying	مخزي	humiliating / shameful	comforting / reassuring
overwhelming	ساحق / غامر	overpowering / intense	weak / manageable
packed	مزدحم / مملوء	crowded / jammed	empty / spacious
peacefully	بسلام / بهدوء	calmly / harmoniously	violently / noisily
unaware	غير مدرك / غافل	ignorant / unconscious	aware / conscious
unconvinced	غير مقتنع	doubtful / unsure	convinced / persuaded

Key Vocabulary

promotion	ترقية في عمل	hormones	هرمونات	well-being	الخير / الرفاه
weeknight	ليلة في الأسبوع	strengthen	يقوي	interaction	تفاعل / تواصل
disaster	كارثة	maintain	يقوم بصيانة	compromise	تسوية / يسوي
salt shaker	المملحة	depression	اكتئاب	destructive	مدمر / مخرب
clumsiness	الخرق / الفشل	anxiety	قلق / توتر	entertainment	ترفيه / تسلية
socializing	الاختلاط بالناس	superficially	ظاهريا / سطحيا	be worth it	يستحق ما بذل لأجله

Vocabulary & Prepositions

superficial	سطحي / ظاهري	disastrous	كارثي	maintenance	الصيانة
celebration	احتفال	anxiously	بقلق / بتوتر	cruelty	القسوة
absolutely	تماما / بالتأكيد	narrator	راوي	broaden	يتسع / يتوسع
experience (n)	تجربة حياتية	embarrassing	مسبب للحرج	ignorance	الجهل
experience (v)	يمر به / يجرب	diagnosed with	تم تشخيصه به	knock over / drop	يسقط
actually	بالفعل	social	اجتماعي (شيء)	unaware of	غير واع به
forgive	يعفو / يسامح	sociable	اجتماعي (شخص)	evening gown	فستان سهرة
boost mood	يحسن المزاج	affection	مودة / محبة	well-deserved	جدير
fall asleep	يففو / ينام	close friends	أصدقاء مقربون	reduce stress	يقلل التوتر
go beyond	يتجاوز حدود	lasting memories	تكريات باقية	in public	أمام الناس / علنا
release	يطلق / يفرز	hang out with	يتسكع مع ...	regulate	ينظم
bump into	يصطدم به / يلتقي صدفة	catch up on	يستدعي	splash	يتناثر / ينسكب
reach for	يمد يده نحو	unease	عدم الراحة	unbearable	لا يحتمل
caring	عطوف	decline	يرفض (دعوة)	tend to	يميل إلى
characterized by	يتميز به	outer	خارجي	loss of interest	فقدان الشغف

options	خيارات	schedules	جداول زمنية	meaningful	ذو معنى
gentle breeze	نسيم عليل	texting	يرسل رسائل نصية	review	مراجعة / يراجع
in-person	وجهاً لوجه	guarantee	يضمن	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
worthwhile	يستحق الجهد	feel grateful for	يتمن لـ	develop empathy	يتعاطف
worthless	لا قيمة له	impression	انطباع / انبهار	must-see (n)	مكان ينبغي زيارته
thriller	فيلم إثارة	features	ملامح	aspects	جوانب
highlight	يبرز / الجزء الأهم	serve	يقدم وجبة / يخدم	lead actress	الممثلة الرئيسية

Idioms - Collocations - Expressions

hit the town	يخرج للتنزه / يسهر	face-to-face interaction	تفاعل وجهاً لوجه
through (in) thick and thin	في السراء والضراء	catch up on old times	يجتر الأوقات القديمة
stand by your side	يقف بجانبك / يساندك	quite the opposite of	على العكس تماماً
hanging out	يمضي وقتاً مع صديق	maybe another time	ربما مرة أخرى
maintain friendship	يحافظ على صداقة	various bodily functions	وظائف بدنية متنوعة
matters more than	أهم من	strengthen immune system	يقوي المناعة
on the one hand	من ناحية	throughout our lives	خلال حياتنا
on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى	shift social circles	يغير دوائر اجتماعية
bring so much depth to	يجعل ... أكثر عمقا	check on us	يطمئن على مستوى الخدمة

Language Notes

through	خلال (مكان)	within	خلال (زمان)
aged	كبير السن / في سن كذا	aging (ageing)	التقدم في السن
decide to + مصدر	يقرر أن يفعل ...	decide on + اسم	يختار - يحدد
be (get) promoted	يحصل على ترقية	get promotion	يحصل على ترقية
spend + وقت + (in) V.ing	يقضي الوقت في	spend + مال + on	ينفق المال على
research	يبحث علمياً	search	يبحث (يفتح)
fall - fell - fallen	يسقط	drop - dropped - dropped	يوقع / ينخفض
spill / spilt / spilled	يسكب	split / split / split	ينشط / يشطر
agree	يوافق على فكرة أو أن يفعل شيء	accept	يقبل (دعوة / اعتذار / عرض)

Vocabulary Question Bank بنك أسئلة الكلمات

A. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- The new plan is beneficial for most students. A synonym for "beneficial" is
a. damaging b. useful c. harmful d. risky e. helpful
- Her clumsy handwriting made the teacher struggle to read. An antonym for "clumsy" is
a. coordinated b. awkward c. graceless d. careless e. graceful
- His voice cracking during the speech was mortifying. A synonym for "mortifying" is
a. pleasant b. reassuring c. humiliating d. shameful e. comforting
- The movie showed cruel behavior towards animals. An antonym for "cruel" is
a. compassionate b. harsh c. gentle d. brutal e. tough

5. The hall looked glamorous during the school celebration. A synonym for "glamorous" is
 a. plain b. charming c. boring d. worse e. elegant
6. Many are unaware of how much time they waste online. An antonym for "unaware" is
 a. conscious b. unconscious c. ignorant d. aware e. careless
7. The performance was disappointing. A synonym for "disappointing" is
 a. cheerful b. encouraging c. frustrating d. unsatisfactory e. satisfying
8. The storm had a destructive effect on the small village. An antonym for "destructive" is
 a. beneficial b. constructive c. harmful d. damaging e. tough
9. The students considered the lesson enjoyable. A synonym for "enjoyable" is
 a. delightful b. unpleasant c. boring d. pleasant e. tiring
10. The pressure before the exam was overwhelming. An antonym for "overwhelming" is
 a. enormous b. intense c. weak d. manageable e. overpowering
11. He dropped the books as his movements were clumsy. A synonym for "clumsy" is
 a. graceful b. awkward c. balanced d. coordinated e. graceless
12. The bus was packed with passengers this morning. An antonym for "packed" is
 a. empty b. crowded c. jammed d. full e. spacious

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The scientist tested a/an device that promised to detect underwater signals accurately.
 a. outdated b. damaged c. brand-new d. broken
2. Researchers aim to partnerships with coastal communities to protect natural habitats.
 a. disturb b. strengthen c. ignore d. weaken
3. The documentary highlighted the among species living in coral reef systems.
 a. distance b. separation c. isolation d. interaction
4. Researchers try to stable water temperatures in lab tanks for sensitive species.
 a. ignore b. damage c. abandon d. maintain
5. Conservationists and fishermen reached a ... that protects species while supporting families.
 a. punishment b. threat c. victory d. compromise
6. The cost of the expedition was huge, but the collected data made it truly be it.
 a. worthless b. worthwhile c. worth d. wrath
7. Coral bleaching increases public about the future of ocean ecosystems.
 a. comfort b. anxiety c. satisfaction d. relief
8. The restaurant placed a salt and a pepper grinder on every table.
 a. checker b. cheque c. shaker d. shake
9. The hotel provides evening for its guests, including live shows and music.
 a. entertainment b. limitation c. pollution d. research
10. Because of his, he struggled to move smoothly in the strong underwater currents.
 a. accuracy b. balance c. clumsiness d. precision
11. Long-term exposure to noise pollution affects the mental of whales and dolphins.
 a. conflict b. well-being c. decline d. pressure
12. Researchers observed that artificial light affects the released by sea turtles at night.
 a. minerals b. fossils c. tissues d. hormones
13. After finishing their final exams, the students decided to the town and celebrate.
 a. hurt b. heat c. hit d. hint
14. She was standing completely still, as a ghost, unable to say a single word.
 a. pale b. plain c. poor d. paled
15. Teams must project details thoroughly to ensure requirement is understood.
 a. revive b. revoke c. review d. revote
16. Athletes regularly hiking to improve their stamina and strengthen their leg muscles.
 a. do b. make c. go d. have

17. Life skills programs prepare teens to challenges they may encounter in future careers.
 a. handle b. hand c. haggle d. tangle
18. Parents notice when their children to complete tasks responsibly every day.
 a. make affect b. make effort c. make afford d. make effects
19. High-quality materials usually better durability and longer product life.
 a. granitite b. guarantee c. guaranty d. grantee
20. The teacher praised the student's active in the class debate about global issues.
 a. devolvement b. evolvment c. involvement d. revilement
21. Families through group chats, especially when they live far apart.
 a. stay on touch b. stay in touch c. stay in tough d. stay on tough
22. The company decided to its strategy after facing unexpected financial challenges.
 a. craft b. left c. shift d. shaft
23. He began to the lessons learned from challenges he faced last year.
 a. feel tearful for b. feel grateful for c. feel careful for d. feel peaceful for
24. The child showed great for the dog that followed him every morning to school.
 a. affection b. inflection c. infection d. fiction
25. A balanced diet strengthens the, helping the body fight infections more effectively.
 a. solar panel b. immune system c. water pump d. road barrier
26. The actress walked confidently across the stage wearing a beautifully tailored
 a. cooking apron b. school uniform c. evening gown d. cotton robe
27. The director rewrote the script so could express deeper feelings in the dramatic ending.
 a. the art designer b. the stage painter c. the makeup trainee d. the lead actress
28. The actress admitted that life behind the cameras had far less than people imagined.
 a. sorrow b. rainfall c. glamour d. justice
29. The expert seemed because the evidence did not fully support the proposed solution.
 a. confident b. energetic c. relieved d. unconvinced
30. Be careful not to the sample containers because they hold delicate coral fragments.
 a. knock for b. knock over c. knock at d. knock on
31. The scientist was mild hearing damage due to long-term exposure to sonar testing.
 a. involved with b. diagnosed with c. compared with d. supplied with
32. The guided the audience through each chapter of the story with great emotion.
 a. hunter b. narrator c. painter d. guardian
33. Researchers try to their perspectives by studying ocean life in different regions.
 a. predict b. shorten c. block d. broaden
34. The lawyer requested that the witness his statement as it contained unclear details.
 a. mislead b. restate c. exaggerate d. congratulate
35. A single oil spill can create a impact on local fishing communities and marine life.
 a. gentle b. disastrous c. shallow d. mild
36. The movie had a atmosphere that made many viewers feel sad afterward.
 a. factual b. depressive c. thoughtful d. humorous
37. The team scheduled the next session to check the new digital microscopes.
 a. instruction b. exploration c. competition d. maintenance
38. Students were asked to visiting scientists during the conference to exchange ideas.
 a. socialize with b. worry about c. protest against d. decide for
39. He tried not to the new intern, although her mistake had delayed the entire project.
 a. praise b. mortify c. organize d. motivate
40. The actress's subtle expressions so much depth to her character.
 a. present b. sting c. bring d. string
41. Moving abroad may require people to shift social to adapt successfully.
 a. circles b. cycles c. centers d. crowds

42. Role-playing allows participants to communication skills in controlled environments.
 a. present b. process c. practice d. prepare
43. Tourists like to funny photos to remember joyful moments.
 a. take b. make c. do d. give
44. The performance felt a bit despite strong preparation.
 a. disappoint b. disappointed c. disappointment d. disappointing
45. The brain can chemicals that alter perception during moments of fear or excitement.
 a. raise b. reduce c. replace d. release
46. I enjoy living in the city; on the other, it can be very noisy and crowded.
 a. palm b. hand c. wrist d. elbow
47. Lack of safety measures can damage or harm in workplaces.
 a. control b. carry c. explore d. cause
48. Elderly people enjoy stories about their childhood experiences.
 a. check b. shade c. cheer d. share
49. Shy individuals may hesitate to social invitations despite personal interest.
 a. approve b. allow c. accept d. answer
50. Studies reveal lower of depression among people with strong support networks.
 a. ratios b. rates c. ranks d. ranges
51. People often feel more when communication is open and consistent.
 a. connects b. connection c. connect d. connected
52. Mentorship enables young professionals to better skills faster.
 a. define b. depend c. deliver d. develop
53. Sleep supports functions such as digestion and immune response.
 a. bodies b. body c. bodily d. bodied
54. Actions, not promises, usually true character in professional environments.
 a. shave b. share c. chew d. show
55. Despite digital tools, many companies still value meetings for complex negotiations.
 a. in person b. in-person c. in persona d. in personate
56. True friendship lasts through even when circumstances grow difficult.
 a. think and sing b. tick and thin c. thick and thin d. trick and think
57. Parents should monitor where their children are during late evening hours.
 a. making out b. hanging out c. holding out d. bending out
58. Leaders gain trust when they consistently their team's side during uncertainty.
 a. stand on b. stand by c. stand of d. stand in
59. His reaction was the opposite of what everyone expected during the meeting.
 a. quit b. quote c. quite d. quiet
60. Reunions help people old times that shaped their friendships.
 a. catch up b. catch down on c. catch up on d. catch on
61. Families often a wonderful time when activities are well-planned and stress-free.
 a. make b. have c. sound d. do
62. Customer service teams regularly to ensure issues are resolved accurately.
 a. check out us b. check at us c. check in us d. check on us
63. interaction strengthens communication skills more effectively than text messages.
 a. Face-on-face b. Face in face c. Face-to-face d. Face-into-face
64. Students share with classmates to strengthen understanding through discussion.
 a. experiences b. experts c. exports d. expositions
65. The team needs more time to a suitable location for holding the annual sports festival.
 a. decide for b. decide to c. decide on d. decide of
66. The weather forecast says it sunny tomorrow, so we should plan the trip carefully.
 a. be b. may c. maybe d. may be

67. She worked extremely hard and was finally able to
- a. get projection b. get promoted c. get promotion d. both b and c
68. She had to his argument because it was logical and well-supported by evidence.
- a. agree with b. agree at c. accept d. agree
69. Several branches began to from the old tree because of the strong wind.
- a. drop b. fail c. fall d. drill
70. The police had to the entire building after receiving reports about a missing child.
- a. search b. research c. secure d. seize

خلاصة القواعد

Language: Quick Hints

Reported Questions السؤال غير المباشر

يتمكون السؤال غير المباشر مما يلي:

جملة خبرية + if / whether / أداة استفهام + (مفعول) + فعل قول + فاعل

Direct	I asked him, "What are you doing?"
Indirect	I asked him what he was doing.
Direct	She asked me, "Have you watched the DVD?"
Indirect	She asked me if / whether I had watched the DVD.

خطوات تحويل السؤال من المباشر إلى غير المباشر

١. يتحول فعل القول في السؤال إلى ما يلي: ask / inquire / wonder / want to know

Direct	She asked me, "Why do you want to work abroad?"
Indirect	She wanted to know why I wanted to work abroad.

جملة خبرية + أداة استفهام

٢. نحذف الفاصلة وعلامات التنصيص ونضع ما يلي:

جملة خبرية + if / whether

① أداة استفهام إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بأداة استفهام.

جملة خبرية + or not + if / whether

② (if) أو (whether) إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد.

جملة خبرية + whether or not

* يُفضل استخدام (whether) عند وجود (or / or not).

لا بد من تحويل السؤال إلى جملة خبرية.

Direct	Ali said to me, "Are you going out?"
Indirect	Ali asked me if / whether I was going out (or not).
Indirect	Ali asked me whether or not I was going out.

بنك أسئلة القواعد Grammar Question Bank

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Could you tell me why to London last month? (LM)
- a. did you travel b. had you travelled c. you travelled d. you had travelled
2. Ali wanted to know I was ready for the exam or not. (LM)
- a. whether b. why c. that d. when
3. Tamer wonders when I home because he needs my help badly. (LM)
- a. had returned b. going to return c. would return d. will return

4. I asked my mother if food (LM)
 a. has prepared b. had prepared c. had been prepared d. has been prepared
5. Huda inquired or not I would accept that invitation. (LM)
 a. if b. whether c. that d. which
6. The shop assistant asked why I to change that tie. (LM)
 a. want b. was wanted c. wanted d. have wanted
7. Please, tell me where meet tomorrow. (LM)
 a. we were going to b. we are going to c. will we d. are we going to
8. Samir me why I had chosen that T-shirt. (LM)
 a. said b. inquired c. ordered d. asked
9. - Why a doctor? - Surely, I will act upon this suggestion. (LM)
 a. haven't you consulted b. don't you consult c. didn't you consult d. you didn't consult
10. He didn't understand (2025 - Experimental)
 a. what his teacher had explained. b. what his teacher had explained?
 c. what had his teacher explained? d. what his teacher had explained!
11. Could you just tell me what by that. (2025 - Experimental)
 a. do you mean b. you meant c. did you mean d. you meaning
12. He didn't understand what said. (2025)
 a. his teacher had b. his teacher has c. had his teacher d. was his teacher
13. I can't believe today! (2025)
 a. how slow the internet is b. how slowly the internet is
 c. what slowly is the internet d. what slow is the internet
14. The writer asked us if heard the myth of King Arthur.
 a. had we ever b. we had ever c. have we ever d. we have ever
15. you tell me how I can go to the train station?
 a. Could b. If c. Whether d. What
16. She wanted to know I had visited the day before.
 a. whom b. where c. which d. whether
17. She asked him what doing since he left school.
 a. had he been b. he had been c. he was d. he has been
18. My friend doing.
 a. wondered I was b. asked what was I c. wondered was I d. asked what I was
19. My brother asked me if we to the park.
 a. shall be go b. were gone c. should go d. go
20. Ahmed asked me where dinner the night before.
 a. I had been b. had I had c. had I been d. I had had
21. Ola asked Hadeer do the following Monday.
 a. what would she b. what will she c. what she will d. what she would
22. Could you tell me why to the hospital yesterday?
 a. did you go b. you went c. had you gone d. you had gone
23. Ali asked me I walked to school.
 a. had b. that c. weather d. if
24. Could you tell me with speak about the matter?
 a. who should I b. whom I should c. who I should d. whom should I
25. The teacher wanted to know which exams I
 a. had passed b. passed c. have passed d. am passing
26. I the name of my friend's cousin.
 a. told b. wondered c. inquired d. wanted to know
27. He us where he had spent his holiday.
 a. wondered b. said c. inquired d. told

28. I couldn't decide it was worth consulting him or not.
 a. how b. what c. which d. if
29. The manager asks that all the workers ready for overtime.
 a. had been b. were c. be d. been
30. I when you get up every morning.
 a. wonder you b. wonder from c. wonder d. wonder that
31. Ali asked Mona she had enjoyed the book.
 a. what b. which c. whether d. that
32. She inquired if there was a meeting
 a. today b. tonight c. this day d. that day
33. She asked me I was married or single.
 a. whether b. weather c. when d. if or not
34. Do you know anything about
 a. where does she live b. where she living c. her address d. where did she live
35. She where he had put his books the night before.
 a. wanted b. told c. wondered d. said
36. She asked help her with her homework.
 a. if I can b. if can I c. if I could d. if could I
37. They asked when announced.
 a. will the result b. the result will c. would the result d. the result would
38. The teacher inquired finished the task yet.
 a. had we b. whether had we c. we had d. whether we had
39. The doctor asked spending the holiday abroad.
 a. if I will be b. if I would be c. if will I be d. would I be
40. She asked me where spent my vacation.
 a. was I b. I was c. had I d. I had
41. She when she had completed her work, she would leave.
 a. told b. asked c. said d. inquired
42. She asked me to her wedding party.
 a. to come b. will I come c. whether I come d. would I come
43. Can you tell me where tomorrow?
 a. would we meet b. we would meet c. will we meet d. we will meet
44. Father asked me why such noise.
 a. I was making b. was I made c. I was made d. was I making
45. He asked me what doing since I left.
 a. had I been b. I was been c. was I been d. I had been
46. The coach the players to wait for him.
 a. wondered b. suggested c. warned d. asked
47. He asked them where going.
 a. were they b. had they c. they had d. they were
48. "When will you leave?" he asked. - "In an hour's time," I
 a. wondered b. told c. replied d. asked
49. Ola asked me if use my camera.
 a. her could b. she could c. could her d. could she
50. She wanted to know I had lived there.
 a. how long b. that c. whom d. what

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. "Do you want to hang out?" (She asked) (SB)
2. "Will you come to the party?", she asked. (if) (SB)
3. "Did you enjoy the movie last night?", dad asked. (if) (SB)

- | | |
|---|-----------------------|
| 4. "How long will you be in town?", he asked. | (asked me) (SB) |
| 5. "Will you travel next summer?" the doctor asked me. | (whether) |
| 6. She asked me, "When will the bus arrive?" | (would) |
| 7. She said to me, "Which car did you buy last year?" | (asked which) |
| 8. She said to me, "What are you doing tonight?" | (I was) |
| 9. "Did you watch the match yesterday?" Ahmed asked. | (if) |
| 10. The coach asked her, "Where have you put your bag?" | (she had) |
| 11. The waiter asked her, "Would you like some tea?" | (whether) |
| 12. Ahmed asked me, "Can you help me?" | (if) |
| 13. The teacher wondered if I had done my homework. | ("Have") |
| 14. Where did you leave the car keys? | (Can you tell me) |
| 15. "Should I send the report now?" Mona asked. | (if) |
| 16. "What time does the next train leave?" | (I asked the clerk) |
| 17. The police man asked us, "Whose car is parked outside?" | (car is) |
| 18. She said to me, "Are you planning to travel this week?" | (whether) |
| 19. Ali said to me, "What are you doing at the moment?" | (wanted to know what) |
| 20. He said to me, "Do you know the answer to this question?" | (whether) |

خلاصة مهارات الكتابة

Writing Skills: Hints

كتابة المراجعة Writing a Review

- A review is a written opinion about something you have experienced (a movie, a book)
- The purpose of a review is to inform and persuade your readers.

A good review usually has four main parts

- 1. Introduction المقدمة:** • **Purpose:** Introduce the movie, book, restaurant, product, etc.
 - **Basic information:** Give the title, director/ author, location, or type of product.
 - **Your general opinion:** Briefly state your overall impression (e.g., "It's a must-see!").
- 2. Body Paragraph 1** ١ **فقرة الموضوع:** • **Purpose:** Describe the main aspects.
 - **For a film/book:** Plot, characters, acting, special effects, writing style.
 - **For a restaurant:** Atmosphere, food quality, service, prices.
 - **For a product:** Design, features, ease of use, performance.- Use descriptive adjectives!
- 3. Body Paragraphs 2: (optional) (اختياري) ٢** **فقرة الموضوع:**
 - **Purpose:** Your Opinion & Reasons Specific likes/dislikes.
 - **Give reasons:** Explain why you felt that way. Provide examples to support your points.
- 4. Conclusion Summary of opinion الخاتمة: ملخص الرأي:**
 - **Purpose:** Briefly restate your overall opinion.
 - **Recommendation:** Tell your readers if you recommend it or not, and for whom.

عبارات ووظائفها Phrases and Functions

I really enjoyed...	Stating a positive opinion
On the one hand...	Giving a balanced opinion
The best thing about... was...	Highlighting a positive point
Although it was interesting, I thought...	Contrasting ideas
I wouldn't recommend it to...	Making a recommendation
It was a bit disappointing because...	Giving a negative opinion

- Which phrase highlights a positive point?
 - Although it was interesting, I thought...
 - It was a bit disappointing because...
 - The best thing about... was...
 - I wouldn't recommend it to...
- Which example shows a negative detail?
 - "The acting was terrific."
 - "The service was quite slow."
 - "The special effects were stunning."
 - "It's a must-see."
- Which phrase is for contrasting ideas?
 - Although it was interesting, I thought...
 - The best thing about... was...
 - I really enjoyed...
 - On the one hand...
- Which detail would you include in a restaurant review?
 - Characters and plot
 - Atmosphere, food, service, prices
 - Acting and special effects
 - Author and writing style
- What is the main purpose of a review?
 - To tell a story
 - To inform and persuade readers
 - To describe history
 - To write poetry
- Which paragraph describes the main aspects (plot, setting, quality, features)?
 - Introduction
 - Body Paragraph 1
 - Conclusion
 - Recommendation
- Which of the following is a suitable conclusion line?
 - "I went home after watching."
 - "Overall, this book is inspiring."
 - "It had four chapters."
 - "I liked the food."
- What should you use to make your review more vivid?
 - Equations
 - Descriptive adjectives
 - Only facts without feelings
 - Random numbers

تمارين على القواعد التراكمية (قاعدة: Participle Phrase)

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Making sure that everything was ready,
 - the machine was operated by me.
 - the machine had operated by me.
 - I operated the machine.
 - I was operated the machine.
- out of the window this morning, I saw some birds flying across the sky.
 - Looked
 - To look
 - Looking
 - On looked
- The boy to the teacher is my brother.
 - who talking
 - talking
 - talked
 - to talk
- extremely tired, I decided to rest under a tree.
 - Because felt
 - Felt
 - When feel
 - Feeling
- That is Mary over there.
 - sitting
 - being sat
 - to sit
 - to be sat
- The police caught him a car.
 - stolen
 - to be stolen
 - stealing
 - to steal
- These are the facts by the committee.
 - being gathered
 - gathered
 - gathering
 - to gather
- They got their car at the garage.
 - washing
 - wash
 - washed
 - being washed
- Which sentence is correct?
 - Heat, water evaporates.
 - Heating, water evaporates.
 - Heated, water evaporates.
 - To heat, water evaporates.
- to her friend, she forgot everything around her.
 - Talks
 - Talking
 - Talk
 - Talked

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- After Ali made sure that everything was ready, he operated the machine. (Making)

2. While Salwa was going home, she saw an accident. (Going)
 3. Because he came home late, he was punished by his father. (Coming)
 4. Because I had forgotten my wallet at home, I had to borrow some from a friend. (Having)
 5. As Ahmed was ill, he didn't go to school. (Being)
 6. The man who lives upstairs is very noisy. (living)

General Question Bank (Unit 6) بنك الأسئلة العام على الوحدة

A. Vocabulary

1. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. His bad behaviour was mortifying for his mother. The antonym of "mortifying" is
 a. humiliating b. shameful c. delightful d. embarrassing e. pleasing
 2. He was very clumsy and couldn't act. The antonym of "clumsy" is
 a. awkward b. graceful c. grateful d. unskillful e. organized
 3. The stadium was packed with cheering fans. A synonym for "packed" is
 a. empty b. crowded c. spacious d. jammed e. free
 4. The amount of work this week is overwhelming. A synonym for "overwhelming" is
 a. overpowering b. powerless c. amazing d. manageable e. weak

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The manager congratulated Yara on her well-deserved to team leader. (SB)
 a. disaster b. promotion c. ignorance d. glamour
 2. The lecture was so that several students nearly fell asleep. (SB)
 a. glamorous b. dull c. mortifying d. cruel
 3. The flood was a terrible for the small village. (SB)
 a. promotion b. disaster c. confidence d. glamor
 4. He was completely of the danger ahead and kept walking. (SB)
 a. unaware b. glamorous c. helpless d. cruelty
 5. The little boy dropped the plate because he was (SB)
 a. clumsy b. broadened c. relaxed d. glamorous
 6. The actress looked absolutely in her red evening gown. (SB)
 a. confidence b. affection c. glamorous d. unaware
 7. When we socialize, our bodies release that reduce stress. (SB)
 a. harmonies b. honours c. homophones d. hormones
 8. People with strong friendships have lower rates of and anxiety. (SB)
 a. promotion b. regularity c. depression d. commission
 9. matters more than quantity in friendships. (SB)
 a. Qualification b. Quality c. Quantum d. Qualify
 10. Doctors recommend regular exercise to help you good health. (SB)
 a. detain b. trap c. maintain d. accept
 11. She seemed friendly, but I think she was only interested in our problems. (SB)
 a. superficially b. significantly c. socially d. mentally
 12. Meeting new people and making friends is an important part of at university. (SB)
 a. personalizing b. socializing c. maintaining d. releasing

B. Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. She asked to go shopping. (SB)
 a. do I want b. whether do I want c. if I wanted d. if have I wanted
 2. He asked me where to eat. (SB)
 a. did I want b. I wanted c. had I wanted d. wanted I
 3. They asked meet earlier. (SB)
 a. if can we b. if we can c. if could we d. if we could

4. She asked me why to the party. (SB)
 a. I hadn't gone b. hadn't I gone c. I didn't go d. didn't I go
5. Sarah asked to go hiking at the weekend. (SB)
 a. whether wanted b. if do I want c. if I wanted d. whether do I want
6. Magdy called to ask what that night. (SB)
 a. are you doing b. you are doing c. I am doing d. I was doing
7. Lamia asked where (SB)
 a. the party is b. the party was c. was the party d. is the party
8. Lamia wanted to know what wear for the party. (SB)
 a. should she wear b. wear she c. she should wear d. wear she should
9. Hany asked finished the homework. (SB)
 a. had I b. I had c. if I had d. if had I
10. Can you tell me now? (2025 – Experimental)
 a. what time is it b. what time it is c. what time is d. what time is it being
2. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:
1. "Where did you stay?" (He asked) (SB)
 2. "Have you been to that new restaurant?", he asked. (whether) (SB)
 3. "Why can't you come to the party?", she asked. (I) (SB)
 4. "When are you free next week?", my friend asked. (asked me) (SB)

C. Translation

١. الاهتمام بالبحث العلمي ركيزة تستند إليها الأمم لتحقيق الرخاء.

- a. Paying intention to scientific research is a pillar on that nations depend to achieve prosperity.
 b. Paying attention at scientific research is pillars on that nations depends to achieve conspiracy.
 c. Paying intention to scientific research is pillars on which nations depend to achieve conspiracy.
 d. Paying attention to scientific research is a pillar on which nations depend to achieve prosperity.

٢. تلعب الكتب دورًا حيويًا في حياتنا، فنحن نفتح عالما جديدا كلما فتحنا كتابًا.

- a. Books plays vital role in our life but we enter a new world whenever we open a book.
 b. Books play a vital role in our life as we enters new world whenever opened a book.
 c. Books play a vital role in our life as we enter a new world whenever we open a book.
 d. Books play vital roles in our life as we enter new worlds whenever opening a book.
3. We are in urgent need of a revolution against our bad behaviours. Really, we should resist any strange conduct and try to modify it.

- أ. إننا في حاجة ماسة إلى ثورة ضد سلوكنا السيئ. حقا، ينبغي لنا أن نناضل أي سلوك غريب وأن نحاول تعديله.
 ب. إننا في حاجة ماسة إلى ثورة ضد سلوكنا السيئ. حقا، ينبغي لنا أن نقاوم أي سلوك غريب وأن نحاول تعديله.
 ج. إننا في حاجة ماسة إلى ثورة ضد سوء سلوكنا. حقا، ينبغي لنا أن نقاوم أي سلوك غريب وأن نحاول تغييره.
 د. إننا في حاجة ماسة إلى ثورة ضد سلوكنا السيئ. لذا، ينبغي لنا أن نقاوم أي سلوك غريب وأن نحاول تعديله.

4. Literature is more than just a historical or cultural artifact; it can serve as an introduction to a new world of experience.

- أ. الأدب أكثر من مجرد تاريخ فني أو ثقافي فيإمكانه أن يخدم منخل لعلم جديد من الخبرة.
 ب. الأدب أكثر من مجرد فن التاريخ أو ثقافي فيإمكانه أن يخدم مرجع لعلم جديد من الخبرة.
 ج. الأدب أكثر من مجرد فن تاريخي أو ثقافي فيإمكانه أن يعمل كمرجع لعلم جديد من الخبرة.
 د. الأدب أكثر من مجرد فن تاريخي أو ثقافي فيإمكانه أن يعمل كمنخل لعلم جديد من الخبرة.

D. Reading Comprehension

1. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

In the last autumn vacation (إجازة) I got sufficient (كفي) time and began to think of how I would exploit (يستغل) such a time to enjoy myself. So I made up my mind to make a journey by train from Cairo to Alex. I reached the station about half an hour before the departure (رحيل) of the train. It was then a very busy time. Cars were coming to the station with passengers. After

hearing the whistle الصافرة, the passengers stood in a queue صف for tickets. I also stood in the line and bought a second class ticket. The right time the right train came and the guard whistled and waved his flag. Everybody tried to get into the train fast. After much difficulty I got into a second class compartment مقصورة. The compartment was full to its capacity. The train left the station. I looked outside and found the beauty of nature. The train was running through green fields. There were wheat plants here and there. They were tossing their heads in the breeze نسيم. The compartment presented a good scene. Some passengers were talking on various matters. Some were reading newspapers and magazines. One passenger stood at a time and began to read out a poem he had written. It was written in a simple style and really enjoyable. All the passengers listening to him clapped after he had finished. It was a pleasant time. The train reached Alex. Station at 11 p.m. and I got down. The journey in my heart I bore. It gave me much pleasure. Indeed it was one of the most memorable days in my life.

- What did the writer enjoy seeing outside the train?
 - The people
 - The magazine
 - The capacity
 - The scenery
- The train that the writer took was
 - late
 - crowded
 - slow
 - very old
- Some of the passengers clapped their hands because the poem was
 - pitiful
 - enjoyable
 - miserable
 - sad
- What does the underlined word "their" refer to?
 - the passengers
 - the plants
 - the heads
 - the scenes
- What does the underlined word "various" mean?
 - hard
 - strange
 - witty
 - different
- What did the writer think of the train journey he made? - It was
 - deniable
 - memorable
 - boring
 - underlined
- Which of the following is *correct*?
 - The writer made journey in the fall.
 - The journey gave the writer sorrow.
 - The poem was complicated.
 - The writer got on the train easily.
- What do you think the writer means by saying, "*The journey in my heart I bore.*"?
 - He will not remember the journey
 - He will forget the journey.
 - He will never forget the journey.
 - He will never remember the journey.

2. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

The English Channel القناة الإنجليزية is an arm of the Atlantic Ocean that lies south of England. Large waves from the main body of water are squeezed into this small area, causing choppy متقطع waters and difficult sailing. The English Channel separates تفصل England and France. Although the distance between the two countries is not far, the Channel is often hard to cross because of dense fog ضباب كثيف and high seas. For many years, people had been talking about a tunnel under the Channel. Several attempts were made to build such a tunnel. Although walls were shored up for the tunnel, political disputes نزاعات caused the projects to be abandoned يترك. Finally, government leaders from France and Britain agreed to let the tunnel construction proceed without interference تدخل from either country.

But decisions still had to be made. Tunnels as long as 30 miles had been built on land, but underwater tunnels were usually just a few miles long. This tunnel would have to be extra wide because train tracks were to be incorporated تدمج in the design. Some began to wonder if the project could be done. Who would work on the project? The tunnel would connect both England and France, and workers from each country would speak different languages. Who would interpret يترجم? Who would be in charge? On which side would the project start?

Finally, the decisions were made, billions of dollars were spent, and the "Chunnel," as it was called, became a reality. When it opened in 1994, Queen Elizabeth II of England and President Mitterrand of France held a ceremony in honor of the achievement. Now, millions of commuters

use the Chunnel each year. Shuttle trains, about half a mile long, carry vehicles on rail tracks through the underwater tunnel. Passenger trains, tourists' vehicles, and freight ^{الشحن} vehicles now travel through the Chunnel without **interference** from weather, fog or dangerous waters.

- The Chunnel is a/an
a. bridge b. tunnel c. artificial river d. artificial island
- The English Channel is between
a. two European countries b. France and Ireland c. Germany and England d. England and Britain
- The project was abandoned for political reasons; reasons that are determined by
a. government b. builders c. France d. England
- What problem may have arisen when building the Chunnel?
a. Trains might not fit through it. b. Only people from England would use the tunnel.
c. No country would pay for the tunnel. d. Only people from France would use the tunnel.
- The Chunnel is helpful because it
a. is a way to get from England to France b. offers another traveling method
c. helps drain the Strait of Dover d. hinders the way to France
- The Channel is hard to cross due to
a. the coral reefs which live there b. the conflicts between the two countries
c. the high cost to cross d. the dense fog and high seas
- The underlined word "**interference**" means
a. performance b. confusion c. conversation d. intrusion
- Which of the following is true about the Chunnel?
a. It separates England and France. b. It connects two countries.
c. It isolates England and France. d. It goes under one country.

E. Writing

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- In a persuasive essay, we use "**whilst**" in order to
a. express contradiction b. finalize a topic
c. express a point of view d. give a sense of addition
- Another word for "....." is "**although**".
a. whilst b. furthermore c. consequently d. therefore
- "....." is used to introduce topics.
a. To conclude b. In brief c. To begin with d. To summarize
- Which of the following sentences is correct?
a. He said, "The room is for the priests"? b. He said, "the room is for the priests".
c. He said "The room is for the priests". d. He said, "The room is for the priests".

2. Write about (180 – 200) words on one of the following:

- "Which do you prefer: reading books from a library or reading online? Why?"
- National engineering projects in Egypt.

3. Write a paragraph of Six lines on the following:

- The biggest problem facing our world today.
- How to solve the problem of bullying at school.

F. The Novel

- Answer the following questions:

- How does the idea of treasure add to the theme of destiny in the story? (SB)
- Do you think the promise of great wealth can motivate someone to survive hardships? Why or why not? (SB)
- If you discovered a hidden fortune, would you use it for personal comfort or to change the lives of others? Explain. (SB)

At the Airport

في المطار

خلاصة الكلمات

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonyms	Antonyms
board	يصعد على متن	get on / embark	get off / disembark
bustle with	يعج به / يضح به	swarm with / abound with	devoid of / lack in
delay	يؤجل / يؤخر	postpone / hold up	accelerate / advance
expose	يكشف / يفسر	show / reveal / uncover	hide / conceal
luxury	الترف / الكماليات	affluence / extravagance	frugality / misery
restrictions	قيود	limitations / constraints	allowance / liberty
strike (struck) up	يبدأ / يستهل	initiate / commence	terminate / conclude
valid	صالح / ساري	legitimate / authentic	void / fallacious

Key Vocabulary

boarding pass	بطاقة صعود	carry-on	محمول / قابل للحمل	attendant	موظف
departure lounge	صالة مغادرة	navigate	يسير في شيء	reassure	يطمئن
terminal	مينى الركاب	phrase	عبارة	hand ... over	يسلم ... لـ

Vocabulary & Prepositions

handle	يتعامل مع / يتولى أمر	on board	على متن	travel wallet	محفظة سفر
depart	يرحل	if needed	لو ضروري	travel companion	رفيق سفر
stay focused	يبقى مركزا	check-in	تسجيل وصول	overall	عموما / إجمالا
stay positive	يبقى إيجابيا	timing	توقيت	trained staff	موظفون مدربون
toiletries	مستحضرات الزينة	vacation	إجازة	throw away	يرمي / يستبعد
stressful	مسبب للتوتر	approach	يقترب من	separately	بشكل منفصل
head to	يتوجه إلى	grab breakfast	يتناول الفطور	proved valuable	أثبت قيمته
pack	يحزم / يعيء	make it through	يمر / يجتاز	available	متاح / متوافر
video-call (v)	يتصل بالفيديو	productively	بكفاءة	fight against	يحارب ضد
managed to	تمكن من	cancelled	ملغى	transfer	يغير / يحول
stand out	يبرز / يظهر	destination	مقصد / مكان وصول	luggage	أمتعة / حقائب
book / reserve	يحجز	mistakenly	بالخطأ	swap roles	يتبادل الأدوار
confusion	التباس / ارتباك	reroute	يعد توجيه	come over	يأتي للزيارة
in the rush	في الاندفاع	signs	لافتات	notice / observe	يلاحظ
facilitate	يسهل	expository	توضيحي / تفسيري	checklist	لائحة / قائمة

Idioms - Collocations - Expressions

security checkpoint	نقطة تفتيش أمنية	in hot water	في ورطة
customer service manager	مدير خدمة العملاء	someone's heart sinks	يحبط أو يقلق
lost and found desk	مكتب المفقود والموجود	go with the flow	يمشي مع التيار
information counter	شباك استعلامات	update on	يخير بالمستجدات
a two-hour delay	تأخير لمدة ساعتين	public transportation	النقل العام
write down key words	يدون كلمات مفتاحية	air traffic control issues	مشكلات المرور الجوي
check-in desk attendant	موظف الاستعلامات	the smoke alarm went off	انطلق إنذار الحريق

Language Notes

chair / seat	كرسي بظهر / مقعد ثابت	stool / sofa	كرسي بدون ظهر / كنبية
queue	طابور (صف) خارجي	row	صف (داخل مكان)
announcement	اعلان (تصريح)	advertisement	اعلان عن بضائع
arrive in / at + مكان	يصل الى	reach + المكان	يصل الى
paper	الورق	papers	الوثائق / الجرائد / الأبحاث
steal from شيء من مكان	يسرق شيء	rob of شخص أو مكان	شيء من
in addition + جملة	بالإضافة الى ذلك	in addition to + V.ing/N	بالإضافة إلى
as well as	بالإضافة إلى	as well	أيضا

Vocabulary Question Bank بنك أسئلة الكلمات

- A. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:**
- Learning a new language can be challenging. An antonym for "challenging" is
a. hard b. effortless c. simple d. tough e. demanding
 - She stayed positive even when her plans changed. A synonym for "positive" is
a. hopeful b. negative c. pessimistic d. destructive e. optimistic
 - He had the luxury of a quiet weekend away to relax. A synonym for "luxury" is
a. opulence b. necessity c. frugality d. affluence e. misery
 - Make sure your passport is valid before a flight. An antonym for "valid" is
a. void b. fallacious c. sound d. legitimate e. authentic
 - She remained focused on her studies despite the noise. An antonym for "focused" is
a. concentrated b. inattentive c. absorbed d. attentive e. distracted
 - She struck up a conversation with a stranger on the train. An antonym for "struck up" is ...
a. began b. commenced c. terminated d. concluded e. initiated
 - She became frustrated trying to solve the difficult puzzle. A synonym for "frustrated" is ...
a. satisfied b. disappointed c. aggravated d. pleased e. content
 - The article exposed problems in public transportation. A synonym for "expose" is
a. cover b. show c. hide d. mislead e. reveal
 - She navigated the website to find information. A synonym for "navigate" is
a. wander b. direct c. mislead d. steer e. drift

10. Every student must learn the basic rules of grammar. An antonym for "basic" is
- a. sophisticated b. simple c. fundamental d. advanced e. elementary
11. The event was well organized; everything ran smoothly. A synonym for "organized" is
- a. orderly b. neat c. messy d. disorganized e. chaotic
12. We boarded the plane just before the final call. An antonym for "boarded" is
- a. got on b. disembarked c. entered d. embarked e. got off

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. It took almost thirty minutes to pass through the security because it was very crowded.
- a. check paint b. checkpoint c. checker d. shaker
2. The customer manager handled the situation professionally and offered compensation.
- a. servant b. severe c. server d. service
3. If you lose something at the airport, you should immediately visit the desk.
- a. information b. lost and found c. informative d. found in lost
4. When we got confused, we asked for help at the information
- a. account b. count c. counter d. accounts
5. Our flight had a two-..... delay because of air traffic control issues.
- a. hours b. hours' c. hour d. hour's
6. During the lecture, it's better to write down words instead of full sentences.
- a. care b. chorus c. key d. clue
7. The desk attendant asked for my passport and printed my boarding pass.
- a. check b. check-in c. check-up d. check-on
8. He found himself in water after forgetting to submit the report on time.
- a. cold b. boiled c. hot d. freezing
9. My sank when I realized I had left my passport at home.
- a. mind b. brain c. heart d. kidney
10. On vacation, we decided to go with the and explore whatever we found interesting.
- a. foe b. fly c. flying d. flow
11. She her team on the progress of the project.
- a. uploaded b. updated c. downloaded d. deprived
12. Many people use public to avoid traffic and save money.
- a. transformation b. transplant c. transparency d. transportation
13. Our flight was delayed due to air traffic control caused by heavy fog.
- a. issues b. tissues c. muscles d. missiles
14. We had to leave the building immediately after the smoke alarm went
- a. out b. down c. on d. off
15. We will the aircraft once the crew finishes preparing the cabin for passengers.
- a. broaden b. board c. broad d. breed
16. The airport terminal was with anxious travelers rushing to catch their morning flights.
- a. bustling b. boiling c. peeling d. implying
17. Due to heavy fog, our flight experienced a significant that postponed our departure.
- a. delight b. delay c. daylight d. dilemma
18. The journalist's report several hidden problems within the city's healthcare system.
- a. posed b. imposed c. exposed d. proposed
19. Staying in a suite overlooking the ocean was a rare we could only afford once a year.
- a. luxury b. pragmatic c. laundry d. diagram
20. Due to health concerns, the government introduced strict on large public gatherings.
- a. aspirations b. restrictions c. inventions d. conventions
21. He up an unexpected friendship with his neighbor as they shared similar hobbies.
- a. suck b. struck c. stuck d. smuggled

22. Make sure your passport is for at least six months beyond your travel dates.
 a. valuable b. visual c. visible d. valid
23. You must show both your pass and your passport at the gate.
 a. breading b. brooding c. boarding d. bearding
24. We relaxed in the departure, enjoying a cup of coffee.
 a. longue b. league c. delight d. length
25. International flights depart from 3, so make sure you go to the correct building.
 a. tactical b. terminal c. timing d. attribute
26. I packed all my essentials in a small so I wouldn't have to wait at baggage claim.
 a. carry-on b. carry out c. carry-in d. carry-out
27. With the help of a map, we could the old city's narrow streets without getting lost.
 a. delicate b. navigate c. imitate d. fabricate
28. I learned a new English today that will help me express myself more naturally.
 a. phase b. hose c. stage d. phrase
29. The flight walked down the aisle, offering passengers drinks, snacks, and assistance.
 a. representative b. actor c. attendant d. customer
30. The doctor the patient that the symptoms were normal and nothing serious.
 a. reassured b. regulated c. regretted d. secured
31. When entering the country, you must hand your passport to the immigration officer.
 a. down b. over c. away d. off
32. The team the emergency situation professionally, preventing further damage.
 a. handed b. murdered c. dealt d. handled
33. The train is scheduled to from Platform 4 at exactly 6:15, so please arrive early.
 a. depart b. deliver c. demerit d. deform
34. Although the classroom was noisy, she managed to stay and finish her assignments.
 a. factual b. facial c. visual d. focused
35. Even when everything seemed to be wrong, she tried to stay
 a. negative b. positively c. positive d. negatively
36. Don't forget to pack essential such as toothpaste, shampoo and deodorant.
 a. toilets b. toiletries c. trails d. territories
37. Traveling during the holiday season can be extremely as airports are overcrowded.
 a. stressed b. stamina c. stressful d. pressing
38. After checking out of the hotel, we decided to ... to the beach to enjoy the sunny weather.
 a. hide b. hid c. head d. shoulder
39. I started to my suitcase early in the morning so I wouldn't forget anything important.
 a. pick b. speck c. back d. pack
40. I will you once I land so you know I arrived safely.
 a. video-call b. conference c. comment d. blog
41. His bright red jacket made him in the crowd, so he was easy to find.
 a. stand out b. stand c. stand by d. stand on
42. We a table at the restaurant to celebrate her birthday.
 a. booked b. reserved c. blocked d. both a and b
43. There was a lot of at the airport when multiple flights were delayed at the same time.
 a. confrontation b. confusion c. confusable d. confused
44. In the to leave the house, I forgot my wallet on the kitchen table.
 a. crush b. rush c. rash d. reach
45. Online tools can communication between teachers and students.
 a. commute b. succeed c. facilitate d. estimate
46. I keep my important documents, such as my passport, in a travel to stay organized.
 a. wall b. wallet c. well d. wheel

47. A patient and flexible travel can make even long trips more enjoyable.
 a. compact b. companion c. companies d. campaign
48. The weather wasn't perfect, but the vacation was relaxing and memorable.
 a. overall b. all and all c. all over d. over and over
49. The hotel has trained who can handle medical emergencies if they happen.
 a. stuff b. staff c. sniff d. smart
50. Please don't throw your boarding pass until the flight is completely over.
 a. away b. a way c. way d. ways
51. They asked us to pay because each person ordered different items.
 a. collectively b. separately c. separate d. collective
52. The detailed map we bought valuable when we got lost in the old city.
 a. paved b. proved c. ventured d. adventured
53. The manager will be to meet with you after 3 p.m.
 a. valuable b. admitted c. available d. reliable
54. She against discrimination in her workplace until new rules were introduced.
 a. flown b. fought c. fraught d. drought
55. Passengers usually to another train at Central Station to reach the airport.
 a. transfer b. translate c. transparent d. transmit
56. I tried to keep my light, but I still ended up packing more than I needed.
 a. league b. colleague c. college d. luggage
57. The teacher made the students roles to understand different perspectives.
 a. swipe b. swap c. swallow d. wipe
58. I will stay late tonight if to finish the project.
 a. need b. needs c. needed d. need to
59. The of the meeting was perfect because everyone was available.
 a. timer b. times c. timing d. trimming
60. A storm is, so we should head home before it gets worse.
 a. approaching b. violating c. conducting d. respecting
61. We left early but still managed to breakfast at a small café near the station.
 a. gap b. grip c. grab d. grape
62. We barely made it security before the boarding gate closed.
 a. though b. throw c. through d. thrive
63. The team spent the entire afternoon working on the project.
 a. production b. productive c. productively d. unproductive
64. Our flight was because of severe weather conditions in the area.
 a. called b. cancelled c. concluded d. commented
65. Paris was our final after visiting several European cities.
 a. dentistry b. destiny c. destination d. deterioration
66. I picked up someone else's suitcase because it looked exactly like mine.
 a. mistake b. mistaken c. mistakes d. mistakenly
67. The bus had to due to road construction.
 a. route b. root c. rate d. reroute
68. The were confusing, so we had to ask for directions.
 a. signs b. sighs c. resigns d. assigns
69. She wrote a/an essay explaining how renewable energy works.
 a. narrative b. comparative c. expository d. vulnerable
70. We waited in a long at the supermarket because only one cashier was working.
 a. crawl b. row c. queue d. quack

The past perfect tense زمن الماضي التام

يتكون في المعلوم من (had + P.P) وفي المجهول من (had + been + P.P):

- **Key words:** the day (night / week / year) before / the previous day (night / week / year). by..... + مدة في الماضي (by eight o'clock yesterday / by ten last night)

أهم القواعد التي تربط زمن الماضي التام بزمن الماضي البسيط (كحدثين متتابعين):

1. After / As soon as / The moment + زمن الماضي التام + زمن الماضي البسيط.
2. After + V.ing (N) / After having + P.P / Having + P.P, زمن ماضي بسيط.
3. Before / By the time + ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام / Before + V.ing / اسم + زمن الماضي التام.
4. It was only when / It wasn't until + ماضي التام + that ماضي البسيط ... لم يكف حتى ...
5. زمن الماضي التام + till / until + زمن الماضي البسيط المنفي.
6. hardly when / scarcely when / no sooner than
7. On / immediately on / immediately after + V.ing, زمن الماضي البسيط.

- I had hardly heard (Hardly had I heard) them when I rushed out of the house.

الحالات المختلفة لـ (when):

1. **When = While + ماضي مستمر , ماضي مستمر** (حدثين كانا مستمرين ولم يقطع أحدهما الآخر)
* When she was watching TV, her husband was reading a book.
 2. **When = While + ماضي بسيط , ماضي مستمر** (حدثين كان أحدهما مستمراً وقطعه حدث آخر)
* When he was driving home, he made a terrible accident.
 3. **When = After + ماضي تام , ماضي بسيط** (حدثين تم أحدهما بعد الآخر في الماضي)
* When he had finished his work, he got a permission to leave.
- عندما يتبع (when) بزمن الماضي البسيط يتم اختيار زمن الجملة اللاحقة بها حسب الأوزان الآتية:
(حسب وانتهى وقتئذ أو بعدئذ - ماضي بسيط / كان يحدث - ماضي مستمر / كان قد حدث قبل ذلك - ماضي تام)
- When I reached the station, the train left. (I caught it)
 - When I reached the station, the train had left. (I missed it)

The past perfect Continuous tense زمن الماضي التام المستمر

- يتكون من (had + been + V.ing) في المعلوم وفي المجهول من (had + been + P.P).
- يعبر عن حدث اكتمل وقد كان مستمرا لفترة من الوقت قبل وقت معين أو قبل حدث آخر في الماضي:
- They had been queuing for four hours before they could get the bread.

الفرق بين (الماضي التام البسيط) و (الماضي التام المستمر)

1. نميز بينهما وفقاً للمعنى: الماضي التام (كان قد حدث) / الماضي التام المستمر (كان مستمرا في الحدث):
- He had done his homework since two in the afternoon. He was sleeping when I came.
- Ola had been doing the housework when I came home. She was very busy then.
2. كلمات لا تستخدم مع ماضي تام المستمر ولا تشير إلى استمرارية: ever / never / yet / just / already
- I had already heard about the problem before he told me.
3. عندما تأتي الكلمات التالية في نهاية الجملة أو بعد (since / for) يفضل استخدام الماضي التام المستمر.
still / all / then / hadn't finished yet.
- The child had been crying for a long time and still was when mother came home.

٤. عندما تشير إلى عدد مرات تكرار الحدث أو كمية شيء ما، من الضروري استخدام زمن الماضي التام البسيط:
- I had read twenty pages in the new story when he interrupted me.
٥. وجود (for) في جملة في الماضي يُدلّل على وجود الماضي التام المستمر.
- I went to the doctor's yesterday evening as I had been feeling ill for nearly a week.
٦. بعض الأفعال لا يمكن استخدامها في أي زمن مستمر ولذلك نستخدمها في الماضي التام وليس الماضي التام المستمر وهي فعل (be - يكون) وأفعال الحواس والملكية والعاطفة والتفكير.
- My dad had had that house for ten years before he sold it.

بنك أسئلة القواعد Grammar Question Bank

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- He was angry because someone his bicycle. (SB)
a. has stolen b. had been stolen c. had been stealing d. had stolen
- How long had you at the company when you got the promotion? (SB)
a. been worked b. been work c. been working d. working
- We our homework before our friends came over. (SB)
a. had been finished b. had finished c. had been finishing d. have been finishing
- They were angry because they for an hour and the store had just closed. (SB)
a. had queued b. have queued c. have been queuing d. had been queuing
- She the book, so she knew how the story ended. (SB)
a. had read b. had been read c. had been reading d. has been reading
- He dinner for a few minutes when the smoke alarm went off. (SB)
a. has cooked b. has been cooking c. had cooked d. had been cooking
- I had to lock the door before I left, so I had to go back. (SB)
a. been forgotten b. forgotten c. been forgetting d. forgetting
- I revising all my lessons by last night. (LM)
a. am finishing b. have finished c. had finished d. will be finishing
- The TV programme well for five years before it was terminated. (LM)
a. had been worked b. has been working c. had been working d. had worked
- ready for the party before the guests arrived? (LM)
a. Had you got b. Have you got c. Will you get d. Are you getting
- After her daily housework, she had some rest. (LM)
a. has done b. had done c. doing d. had been doing
- She was exhausted because she all day. (LM)
a. will be working b. had worked c. has worked d. had been working
- I till my brother returns home to make sure he's well. (LM)
a. left b. didn't leave c. won't leave d. am leaving
- He was overjoyed because he his final exam. (LM)
a. will be passed b. had passed c. has passed d. had been passing
- No sooner the classroom than the students started to make noise again! (LM)
a. the teacher left b. does the teacher leave c. the teacher had left d. had the teacher left
- I about the good news until she had informed me. (LM)
a. won't know b. didn't know c. hadn't known d. wasn't knowing
- The hotel's room service ... better after the manager had received lots of complaints. (LM)
a. has got b. got c. had got d. will get
- They had been playing football for an hour before it to rain. (LM)
a. had started b. have started c. started d. was starting
- As soon as she returned home, she realised that she her watch in her office. (LM)
a. had been left b. will leave c. has left d. had left

20. She refused to lend me her camera until I to take care of it. (LM)
 a. had promised b. have promised c. had been promising d. have been promising
21. What all evening by the time Tamer returned home? (LM)
 a. had you done b. are you doing c. had you been doing d. you had been doing
22. Unfortunately, he missed the train. When he reached the station, the train (LM)
 a. has left b. left c. had left d. had been left
23. My uncle for the company for ten years when he got the promotion. (LM)
 a. had been working b. has been working c. had worked d. will be working
24. Having my friend's telephone number, I contacted him. (LM)
 a. finding b. found c. to find d. been found
25. As soon as I heard of my friend's success, I him. (LM)
 a. had congratulated b. will congratulate c. have congratulated d. congratulated
26. After Yasser two chapters of Great Expectations, he went to bed. (LM)
 a. has been reading b. had been reading c. had read d. had been read
27. The match when I reached the stadium; I missed the exciting start. (LM)
 a. will begin b. had begun c. was beginning d. have begun
28. Before the manager arrived, the lazy employee any work for hours! (LM)
 a. hasn't been doing b. hadn't been doing c. hadn't done d. hasn't done
29. I saw my friend Feras last week. I him since 2019. (LM)
 a. hadn't seen b. hasn't seen c. didn't see d. won't see
30. I that manager for years before I worked with him in that company. (LM)
 a. had been knowing b. had known c. have been knowing d. was knowing
31. On the thief, she ran away in fear.
 a. she saw b. had seen c. had she seen d. seeing
32. When I came back home, I realized that the computer set disappeared.
 a. already had been b. had already c. already had d. had already been
33. I didn't go shopping I had finished the housework.
 a. until b. unless c. provided d. while
34. Hardly told me the news when I fainted.
 a. she had b. she was c. had she d. was she
35. When I had reached the station, the train left. "When" here means
 a. While b. During c. Before d. After
36. After eating her lunch yesterday, she the medicine.
 a. took b. has taken c. had taken d. takes
37. She had her lunch before she went to bed.
 a. had been b. has been c. had d. has
38. seeing the lion, she screamed in terror.
 a. Before b. Having c. On d. After having
39. I went shopping with my friend yesterday. Before that I my homework.
 a. had done b. did c. would do d. was done
40. As soon as I finished the story, I a summary of it.
 a. had written b. wrote c. write d. would write
41. It was the boss entered the office that the workers stood up.
 a. until b. till c. not until d. only
42. Before a break, I finished my homework.
 a. had taken b. took c. I had taken d. taking
43. I noticed the criminal, I cried for help.
 a. Before b. While c. On d. As soon as
44. She was unhappy because she had her exam.
 a. been failed b. been failing c. failed d. be failing

45. My father had come back home lunchtime.
a. at b. in c. by d. after
46. graduated in medicine, he became a doctor.
a. Having b. On c. After d. Before
47. She had no sooner eaten her lunch she went out.
a. than b. then c. that d. this
48. When she went back to school, she found she the wrong essay the day before.
a. wrote b. had written c. has written d. had been written
49. Luckily when I reached the station, the train
a. had been left b. had left c. was left d. left
50. He out for two hours. That was why he was fast asleep.
a. worked b. had worked c. had been working d. has been working
51. I to spend the summer holiday in Alexandria when my sister suddenly fell ill.
a. had been planning b. have planned c. have been planning d. had been planned
52. We for nearly an hour before the bus finally came.
a. have been waiting b. have waited c. had been waiting d. had waited
53. I all my water before we got to the top of the mountain.
a. had been drinking b. have been drunk c. had drunk d. had been drink
54. The musician Chopin his first piece of music before he was eight.
a. had been writing b. had written c. has written d. has been writing
55. The fields were flooded because it for ten days without stopping.
a. had been rained b. had rained c. had been raining d. has been raining
56. She for weeks before she played the first match.
a. has been training b. has trained c. had trained d. had been training
57. By 2015, I five short stories.
a. had written b. have written c. was written d. written
58. I three emails before I left the office.
a. have been sending b. have been sent c. had sent d. had been sending
59. Mr Ali at a shop for ten years before he got a job at the bank.
a. has worked b. is working c. will have been working d. had been working
60. The team training together for months before they began to compete.
a. have been b. had been c. has been d. will have been

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. He didn't answer the questions until he had read them carefully. (It was only)
2. I told him the truth when I met him. (It wasn't until)
3. I didn't realize I was mistaken until the teacher had told me. (I only)
4. As soon as I had had my dinner, I went to bed. (until)
5. He went home after finishing his work. (Having)
6. I reached the station. The train left before that. (after)
7. When he arrived, we were having dinner. (before)
8. She had read the composition twice before she answered the questions. (after)
9. The audience clapped loudly after the actor ended the monologue. (Hardly)
10. The policeman didn't arrest the robber until he had left the company. (before)
11. She took the medicine after she had had her lunch. (She didn't)
12. First I phoned the office. Then I knew the time of their arrival. (till)
13. She travelled around the world, then she settled in France. (after)
14. She found a parking area. Then she parked her car. (When)
15. She left my house. I wanted to see her again. (As soon as)
16. He phoned us after arranging everything. (until)

17. He had been working in this company for years before I joined it.
 18. I knew about the president's death when I had read the paper.
 19. I saw the movie as soon as I had finished reading the novel.
 20. He bought the factory after he had applied for a loan from the bank.

(after)
 (It wasn't)
 (Hardly)
 (No sooner)

خلاصة مهارات الكتابة

Writing Skills: Hints

مقال توضيحي An Expository Essay

- An expository essay is a type of essay where you explain a topic.
- The goal is to inform the reader, not to tell a story or give your opinion.
- The word "expository" comes from "expose," which means to show or reveal.
- **Introduction:** You introduce the topic and tell the reader what you will explain.

Linking words: first, first of all, to begin with, this will help, so that

- **Body:** Each body paragraph talks about one main idea from your topic.

You give facts, details, and examples here.

Linking words: first of all, to begin with, so that / next, after that, also, in addition, as well as / another, before, finally, at last, to make sure

- **Conclusion:** You summarize the main points and restate your topic in a new way. You don't add new information here.

Linking words: by doing this, in conclusion, overall, as a result

Exercises on Writing Skills

1. The word "expository" comes from the word "expose," which means to
 a. argue b. describe c. reveal d. create
2. The main goal of an expository essay is to
 a. explain clearly b. persuade c. describe emotions d. tell stories
2. Which paragraph of an expository essay gives facts, details, and examples?
 a. Conclusion b. Title c. Body d. Introduction
4. You shouldn't include in the conclusion of an expository essay.
 a. a final thought b. new information c. restatement of topic sentence d. a summary
5. The word "However" is a/an word.
 a. linking b. explaining c. revealing d. widening
6. The introduction of an expository essay should
 a. summarize all points b. state the topic and main idea
 c. add new information d. give the writer's opinion
7. In the body paragraphs of an expository essay, each paragraph should focus on
 a. conclusions b. introductions c. a single main idea d. random ideas
8. The conclusion of an expository essay include
 a. new facts and arguments b. the writer's personal story
 c. a restatement of main points d. a new topic

تمارين على القواعد التراكمية (قاعدة: I wish / If only)

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I sincerely wish we the problem in the exam but unfortunately we could not.
 a. have solved b. could solve c. would have solved d. could have solved

2. A: "Are you going to the theatre tomorrow?" B: "No, but I wish I"
- a. had b. did c. am d. were
3. It was silly of me not to buy that dress, I wish I it.
- a. buy b. could buy c. shall buy d. had bought
4. You are making a lot of noise. I wish you making it.
- a. stopped b. could stop c. may stop d. would stop
5. He plays the piano so well. I wish I it well, too.
- a. can play b. have played c. could play d. could have played
6. It rains a lot here. I wish I an umbrella.
- a. would have b. have c. had d. would be
7. Samy regretted buying such an old car. He wishes he a new one.
- a. would buy b. bought c. buys d. had bought
8. If only I where I left my mobile.
- a. haven't forgotten b. wouldn't forget c. hadn't forgotten d. won't forget
9. I wish I sleeping better at the moment.
- a. had b. was c. am d. have been
10. I wish my son the university next year.
- a. had joined b. will join c. would join d. joined

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. I can't give up smoking but I'd like to. (I wish) (1984)
2. Many people were out of work. The factory had closed down. (Hadn't) (1991)
3. I really regret ever starting to smoke. (I wish) (1992)
4. I'm sorry I didn't phone him. (wish) (2006)
5. My sister isn't tall enough to play basketball. (wishes)
6. I don't know how to speak Spanish well and I'm sorry for that. (If only)

General Question Bank (Unit 7) بنك الأسئلة العامة على الوحدة

A. Vocabulary

1. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. She was in a critical condition after the operation. An antonym for "critical" is
- a. decisive b. trivial c. crucial d. insignificant e. vital
2. A flexible plan will adapt to any new changes. A synonym for "flexible" is
- a. adaptable b. versatile c. rigid d. stubborn e. inflexible
3. She mistakenly sent the romantic message to the boss. A synonym for "mistakenly" is
- a. wrongly b. correctly c. deliberately d. intentionally e. accidentally
4. The doctor reassured the patient about the heart operation. A synonym for "reassure" is
- a. comforted b. worried c. alarmed d. upset e. soothed

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I know that makes perfect, so I speak English for two hours daily.
- a. active b. practice c. precise d. propose
2. The passengers the plane in a queue.
- a. broadened b. boarded c. bred d. appeared
3. I how beautifully the sky turned pink at sunset.
- a. noticed b. persuaded c. convinced d. looked
4. The project that the teacher gave us was a one that required deep thinking.
- a. challenging b. simple c. wandered d. wrapped
5. I handed my ID to the guard without hesitation.
- a. on b. down c. off d. over

6. The computer started running more efficiently after the update.
 a. discipline b. system c. court d. pitch
7. The flight is departing from B. Please, get ready.
 a. trauma b. timing c. terminal d. trophy
8. The hotel was fully for the entire holiday weekend.
 a. solved b. created c. video-called d. booked
9. The weather changed our picnic plans, but we decided to go with the
 a. frown b. flow c. foe d. flour
10. After breaking the expensive vase, she was in water with her mother.
 a. cold b. hot c. deep d. both b and c
11. Her heart after hearing the bad news.
 a. lumped b. dropped c. fell d. sank
12. The airline attendant scanned my pass and directed me to the gate.
 a. broadening b. boarding c. roaring d. condemning

B. Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The traveler realized that there a problem with his flight. (SB)
 a. had been b. were c. is d. has been
2. After the traveler his passport over, the attendant checked the system. (SB)
 a. had been handed b. has handed c. had handed d. hand
3. They video games for three hours when their mom called them for dinner. (SB)
 a. played b. were playing c. had played d. have been playing
4. He a new car before he sold the old one. (SB)
 a. buys b. was buying c. has bought d. had bought
5. The sun brightly by the time we left the house this morning. (SB)
 a. has shone b. is shining c. had shone d. has been shining
6. I in Paris for five years before I moved to Rome. (SB)
 a. lived b. was living c. has lived d. had been living
7. I was tired because I for my exams all day. (SB)
 a. had studied b. have studied c. have been studying d. had been studying
8. By the time he arrived, we all the pizza. (SB)
 a. were eating b. had been eaten c. had been eating d. had eaten
9. She was upset because she for him for an hour. (SB)
 a. has been waiting b. had waited c. had been waiting d. had been waited
10. They in that house for ten years before they sold it. (SB)
 a. had lived b. have lived c. have been living d. had been living

2. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. First, he finished his homework. Then, he slept. (till)
2. He had fallen off his bicycle and the woman hurried to help him. (No sooner)
3. She entered many shops and finally bought her new laptop. (Before)
4. I had waited for two hours in the clinic, then the doctor arrived. (after)

C. Translation

١. خصصت الحكومة مليارات الجنيهات لمبادرة "حياة كريمة" لغير القادرين لتطوير القرى الأكثر احتياجاً.

- a. The government has allocated billion of pounds to the "Decent Life" initiative for the unable to develop the more needy villages.
- b. The government has allocated billions of pounds to the "Decent Life" initiative for the unable to develop the most needy villages.

- c. The government demanded billions of pounds to the "Decent Life" initiative for the unable to develop the most ready villages.
- d. The government demanded billions of pounds to the "Decent Life" initiative for the unable to develop the most needy villages.

٢. احتياجات المستهلكين تتغير بوتيرة متسارعة، ولذا فقد أصبح النجاح في التجارة الإلكترونية حليف من يتناقم بشكل أسرع ومن يجاري جنون هذا العصر.

- a. The needs of consumers are changing at an accelerating space, so success in e-commerce has come to those who adopt faster and those who keep pace with the madness of this era.
- b. The needs of consumers are changing at an accelerating pace, so success in e-commerce has come to those who adopt faster and those who keep pace in the madness of this era.
- c. The needs of consumers are changing at an accelerating pace, so success in e-commerce has come to those who adapt faster and those who keep pace with the madness of this era.
- d. The needs of consumers are changing at an accelerating space, so success in e-commerce has come to those who adapt faster and those who keep pace in the madness of this era.
3. A Teacher acts as a guide and inspiration to people; both young and old. Teachers are charged with the responsibility of creating awareness.

أ. يعتبر المعلم بمثابة دليل الإلهام للناس؛ الصغار والكبار على حد سواء. فالمعلمون مكلفون بمسؤولية غرس الوعي.
ب. يعتبر المعلم بمثابة إلهام ودليل للناس؛ الصغار والكبار على حد سواء. فالمعلمون مكلفون بضرورة صنع الوعي.
ج. يعتبر المعلم بمثابة دليل وإلهام للناس؛ الصغار والكبار على حد سواء. فالمعلمون مكلفون بضرورة خلق الوعي.
د. يعتبر المعلم بمثابة دليل وإلهام للناس؛ الصغار والكبار على حد سواء. فالمعلمون مكلفون بمسؤولية خلق الوعي.

4. Cutting down of trees has serious consequences in different spheres. It can cause soil erosion easily and also bring a decline in rainfall on a major level.

أ. قطع الأشجار له عواقب خييمة في مناطق مختلفة. يمكن أن يعري التربة بسهولة بسبب ذلك كما يؤدي أيضاً إلى انخفاض معدل هطول الأمطار على مستوى كبير.
ب. قطع الأشجار له عواقب عديدة في مجالات مختلفة. يمكن أن يسبب تعرية التربة بسهولة كما يؤدي أيضاً إلى انخفاض معدل سقوط الأمطار التي لها مستوى كبير.
ج. قطع الأشجار له عواقب وخيمة في مجالات مختلفة. يمكن أن يسبب تعرية التربة بسهولة كما يؤدي أيضاً إلى انخفاض معدل هطول الأمطار على مستوى كبير.
د. قطع الأشجار له عواقب وخيمة في مناطق مختلفة. يمكن بسهولة أن يسبب تعرية الأرض كما يؤدي أيضاً إلى انخفاض معدل الأمطار الهائلة بمستوى كبير.

D. Reading Comprehension

1. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Scientists sort **يصنف** plants by how they make another plant like themselves. This is called reproduction **التكاثر**. Scientists have decided to sort plants into three groups. The first group of plants reproduces with spores **غبيرات**. Spores are parts of the plant that break away and travel in the wind. Each one grows into a new plant if it lands on soil that is wet and rich. Ferns and mosses **الطحالب والسرخس** are plants that make a copy of themselves with spores.

The second group are plants that reproduce with seeds **بذور**. Seeds fall from the trees. They become part of the soil and grow into new plants. Evergreens, pine trees **شجر الصنوبر** and fir trees **شجر التنوب** are plants that reproduce with seeds. The third group is the plant that reproduces by flowering **يزهر**. Before seeds can form, the pollen **حبوب لقاح** inside the flower needs to move from a part of the flower to another. The seeds form inside the flower.

Birds and insects help this by moving the pollen when they land on the flower. Some of the flowering plants grow into fruits to eat. The seeds are hidden inside the fruit. Apples, oranges, cherries, daisies, and roses are plants that have flowers.

3. According to the passage, what can some animals that live in the deep ocean do?
 a. They can go for long periods of time without eating. b. They can create their own light.
 c. They can swim with their eyes closed. d. They can eat animals larger than themselves.
4. If you explored the seashore, what would you probably feel beneath your toes?
 a. sand, ice, and snow b. ice, snow, and mud
 c. sand, small pebbles, and shells d. large rocks, clay, and chunks of dirt
5. Where do starfish, sea anemones, and clams live?
 a. at the top of the water b. at the bottom of the water
 c. near the bottom of the water d. near the top of the water
6. Why do animals that live on the rocks have special arms and legs?
 a. to protect them from the crashing waves b. to protect them from bigger fish
 c. to help them find their food d. to help them get rid of waste
7. The idiom "back and forth" means
- a. up and down b. to and fro c. now and then d. hard and nail
8. What is the main idea of the last paragraph?
 a. Adaptation of animals of the deep ocean. b. The nature of the deepest part of the ocean.
 c. Darkness at the deep part of the ocean. d. Creation of light for ocean animals.

E. Writing

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Which of the following is punctuated correctly?
 a. "Look out, there's a car behind you, Tamer" Amani yelled.
 b. "Look out! There's a car behind you, Tamer!" Amani yelled.
 c. "Look out? There's a car behind you, Tamer." Amani yelled.
 d. "Look out! There's a car behind you Tamer!" Amani yelled.
2. What shouldn't be included in a closing paragraph?
 a. Results b. A hook c. A moral d. A suggestion
3. In a/an essay, the writer arrives at a conclusion by logical reasoning.
 a. argumentative b. descriptive c. reflective d. narrative
4. (*It's obvious that life today is better than life in the past. It's greatly different from the life that our grandparents used to live.*) This could be part of a/an essay.
 a. expository b. narrative c. reflective d. comparative

2. Write about (180 – 200) words on one of the following:

- Man's inventiveness is endless.
- A distinguished woman that inspired a lot of young people in society.

3. Write a paragraph of Six lines on the following:

- Online schooling is better than traditional schooling.
- A difficult situation your friend has helped you through.

F. The Novel

- Answer the following questions:

- How does the sea play both a danger and a path to freedom? (SB)
- Do you think Edmond's escape was more about intelligence or luck? Why? (SB)
- The sea represents more than water. What does it symbolize in Edmond's journey? (SB)

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonyms	Antonyms
abundant	وفير	plentiful / ample / bountiful	scarce / limited / insufficient
confluence	التقاء	junction / merging	separation / split
maritime	بحري / ملاحى	nautical / naval	inland / terrestrial
mighty	قوي / جبار	powerful / formidable	powerless / feeble
originate	يتصلب / ينشأ	arise / emerge	end / terminate
overflow	بفيض	spill / flood / run over	drain / dry up
strategic	استراتيجى	tactical / calculated	unplanned / random
thrive	يزدهر / ينجح	flourish / prosper	decline / wither
unique	فريد	distinctive / unusual	ordinary / typical
vast	شاسع	immense / extensive	limited / tiny

Key Vocabulary

fertile	خصب	peninsula	شبه جزيرة	innovation	ابتكار
foundation	أساس / قاعدة	scribe	كاتب	Silk Road	طريق الحرير
geographical	جغرافى	strategically	استراتيجيا	terracotta	طين محروق
irrigation	الري	terrace	باحة / مطل / تراس	porcelain	يورسلين / خزف صيني
legal code	كود قانونى	ziggurat	معد في شكل برج مدرج	diary	مفكرة يومية
paradise	جنة	dynasty	أسرة ذات نفوذ / سلالة	complex	مجمع

Vocabulary & Prepositions

abundance	وفرة	confluent	متلاقى / مندمج	blessed with	منعم بـ
flood	فيضان / بفيض	reign	فترة حكم / يحكم	might	قوة / جبروت
clay tablets	أقراص الطين	astronomers	علماء فلك	region	منطقة
cultural exchange	تبادل ثقافى	chart the stars	يرسم النجوم	rise high	يرتفع عاليا
empire	امبراطورية	hanging gardens	حدائق معلقة	rise and fall	يرتفع ويسقط
emperor	امبراطور	crossroads	مفترق طرق / ملتقى	beyond	وراء ذلك / أبعد من ذلك
positioning	تموقع / تمركز	serve as	يقوم بدور	gateway for	مدخل لـ
shipping	الشحن	revolutionize	يحدث ثورة في	minor	ثانوي
eliminate	يزيل / يمحو	productive	منتج / إنتاجى	lengthy	طويل
flow	يتدفق	surrounded by	محاط بـ	lifeline	شريان حيوي
stream	مجرى مائي	store grain	يخزن الحبوب	royal family	عائلة ملكية
display	يعرض	dynastic	مرتبطة بالسلالة	revenue	عوائد
borders	حدود بين دول	passed down	يتنقل	smuggler	مهرب
package	طرد / لفة	canal fees	رسوم القناة	construct	يشيد / يبني
birthplace	مهد	territories	مناطق	invasion	الغزو

course	مسار	gunpowder	البارود	compass	البوصلة
scholars	العلماء	life-sized	في الحجم العادي	warriors	محاربون
symbol of	رمز لـ	craftsmanship	براعة	sculpture	تمثال منحوت
loud rumble	قعمعة عالية	have in common	يشارك في	sensory	حسي
swiftly	بسرعة	crooked	ملتو	tangy	منعش
scratchy	خشخشن / مخدوش	twinkle	يتلألأ	fluffy	منفوش

Idioms - Collocations - Expressions

build irrigation systems	ينشئ أنظمة ري	laid the foundation for	يضع الأساس لـ
offer remarkable advantages	يوفر مزايا هامة	provide access to	يوفر مدخلا لـ
a delight fresh olives	زيثون طازج لذيذ	are remembered for	يخلدان بـ
along the coast	بطول الساحل	is bordered by	يحده كذا ...
home economics	الاقتصاد المنزلي	long-distance trade route	طريق تجاري طويل
like a glowing pearl	مثل لؤلؤة متوهجة	Confucianism	الكونفوسوسية (ديانة صينية)
figures of speech	أساليب بلاغية	freshly baked bread	خبز طازج
make a short outline	يعمل مخططا قصيرا	highlight overall impression	يبرز انطباعا عاما

Language Notes

through / throughout	خلال (مكان أو زمان)	within	خلال (زمان)
as +	وظيفة / جملة كاملة	like + اسم / صفة	مثل
bear - bore - born	تلد	bear - bore - borne	يحمل - يتحمل
location	موقع ثابت على خريطة / مكان تصوير	position	موضع متغير / مكانة / وظيفة / منصب
attached (connected) to	موصول بـ	attached (connected) with	مرتبطة بـ
historic	تاريخي (قديم) / يمكن زيارته	historical	تاريخي (متعلق بدراسة التاريخ)
trade in	يتاجر في سعة	trade with	يتاجر مع (شخص / شركة)
find / found / founded	يكتشف / يجد	found / founded / founded	يؤسس
northern = in the north of	في شمال	northerly	شمالي (صفة)
economic	اقتصادي (شيء)	economical	مقتصد (موفر) (شخص)
be used to + مصدر	يستخدم في	be used for + N/V.ing	يستخدم في

Vocabulary Question Bank بنك أسئلة الكلمات

A. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- The workers constructed a new bridge over the river. A synonym of "construct" is
a. build b. demolish c. destroy d. create e. handle
- The river valley was abundant with fertile soil. A synonym for "abundant" is
a. ample b. limited c. insufficient d. scarce e. plentiful
- The city thrived on maritime trade. A synonym for "maritime" is
a. inland b. naval c. seafaring d. terrestrial e. land-based
- The location on the hill is a strategic one. An antonym for "strategic" is
a. unplanned b. tactical c. calculated d. planned e. random

5. Each vase had a unique pattern. A synonym for "unique" is
 a. common b. exceptional c. distinctive d. ordinary e. typical
6. After the heavy rain, the river began to overflow. A synonym for "overflow" is
 a. drain b. flood c. dry up d. empty e. spill
7. Mighty warriors defended the city. An antonym for "mighty" is
 a. powerful b. strong c. feeble d. powerless e. formidable
8. The emperor was blessed with wisdom. An antonym for "blessed" is
 a. fortunate b. favored c. lucky d. unfortunate e. cursed
9. The state works hard to preserve ancient artifacts. A synonym for "preserve" is
 a. maintain b. destroy c. conserve d. waste e. neglect
10. The river's surface was smooth and calm. An antonym for "smooth" is
 a. sleek b. rough c. uneven d. even e. soft
11. The vivid colors made the painting come alive. A synonym for "vivid" is
 a. clear b. dull c. faint d. striking e. unclear
12. Trade had a significant impact on the city. An antonym for "significant" is
 a. meaningful b. unimportant c. trivial d. notable e. important

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Governments encouraged farmers to build systems to increase crop yields.
 a. imitation b. irrigation c. intonation d. irritation
2. Coastal ports offer remarkable for trade and defense.
 a. advantages b. addictions c. adverbs d. adjectives
3. The market sold fresh olives that were tangy and flavorful.
 a. delay b. delight c. delayed d. delighted
4. Fishermen set up villages the coast to access abundant marine resources.
 a. long b. along c. a long d. length
5. The city at night looked like a pearl on the riverbank.
 a. glowing b. gowning c. growing d. going
6. Poets used of speech to make their writing more vivid and expressive.
 a. features b. aspects c. sides d. figures
7. Before writing the essay, students were asked to make a short of their ideas.
 a. online b. offline c. inner d. outline
8. The emperor the foundation for a strong central government that lasted centuries.
 a. laid b. lay c. lied d. relied
9. The canal system provided to distant cities for trade and communication.
 a. index b. access c. accessory d. impact
10. The empire is by mountains in the north and rivers in the south.
 a. breaded b. bordered c. breed d. branded
11. The Silk Road was a long-distance trade connecting Asia with Europe.
 a. ritual b. route c. right d. rate
12. Families enjoyed bread as a staple part of their daily meals.
 a. fresh bake b. fresh baked c. freshly baked d. baked freshest
13. The teacher asked students to the overall impression of the text after reading.
 a. slight b. highlight c. delight d. plight
14. The city's at a river confluence made it ideal for trade and defense.
 a. positioned b. situated c. located d. location
15. The temple was to the royal palace, symbolizing the connection of religion and state.
 a. attracted b. intended c. attached d. implied
16. The city attracted tourists due to its ancient monuments and architecture.
 a. historian b. history c. historical d. historic

17. policies encouraged trade, agriculture, and urban development.
 a. Economist b. Economical c. Economically d. Economic
18. The university was in the 12th century and became a center of learning.
 a. found b. founded c. foundation d. finding
19. Farmers on the relied on rainfall and fertile soil to sustain their crops.
 a. peninsula b. capsule c. turmoil d. versatile
20. The city was located at the confluence of two rivers, making it ideal for trade.
 a. strategically b. mistakenly c. verbally d. figuratively
21. The palace had a beautiful overlooking the bustling city below.
 a. trace b. terrace c. trick d. track
22. A can last for centuries, passing power from one ruler to another.
 a. dentist b. direction c. dynasty d. dynamic
23. The city developed at the of two major rivers, making it a hub for commerce.
 a. affluence b. confluence c. influence d. influential
24. The region's history is evident from ancient ports and shipwrecks along the coast.
 a. territorial b. maritime c. nasal d. nomadic
25. warriors defended the empire from invasions and expanded its territories.
 a. Might b. May c. Mighty d. Misty
26. Many cultural practices from ancient civilizations along river valleys.
 a. originate b. regulate c. speculate d. deduce
27. During the rainy season, the river would, depositing rich silt on nearby farmland.
 a. overdose b. overflow c. vibrate d. indicate
28. The city's location allowed it to dominate long-distance trade routes.
 a. mistaken b. dedicated c. dominated d. strategic
29. The palace's design was, combining traditional styles with innovative architecture.
 a. ordinary b. familiar c. district d. unique
30. The desert's expanse made it difficult for travelers to navigate without guidance.
 a. narrow b. shallow c. width d. vast
31. Farmers their fields each season to increase crop yield and soil fertility.
 a. sterilize b. realize c. recognize d. fertilize
32. Engineers built canals to farmland and ensure steady water supply during dry seasons.
 a. mitigate b. irrigate c. locate d. eradicate
33. The emperor established a legal to ensure justice and maintain order in the empire.
 a. core b. code c. mood d. trope
34. Artisans constantly new styles of pottery and textiles.
 a. communicate b. innovate c. coronate d. delicate
35. Artists shaped into pots, statues, and tiles.
 a. tobacco b. terracotta c. terrace d. trust
36. She kept a to record daily observations of the crops and weather patterns.
 a. daily b. dairy c. diet d. diary
37. Religious often included temples, shrines, and spaces for worship and learning.
 a. compacts b. convicts c. complexes d. commutes
38. fertile river valley provided an of crops, supporting a growing population.
 a. abundance b. abundantly c. appendix d. abundant
39. A sudden destroyed many homes but also left behind nutrient-rich sediment.
 a. food b. shortage c. flood d. factory
40. Clay were durable and allowed historians to study early civilizations.
 a. tables b. tablets c. tapes d. pills
41. Cultural enriches societies by introducing new ideas, foods, and technologies.
 a. change b. export c. exchange d. enchant

42. Proper of military units was essential for victory in battles.
 a. positioning b. positions c. positioned d. be positioned
43. Merchants relied on routes to transport silk, spices, and ceramics efficiently.
 a. shaping b. shipping c. shaped d. shipped
44. The government tried to corruption by enforcing strict laws and inspections.
 a. legitimate b. eliminate c. illuminate d. marvel
45. The river's steady provided water for irrigation and transportation.
 a. flying b. stream c. steam d. stamina
46. The palace its wealth through gardens, sculptures, and luxurious halls.
 a. districted b. distressed c. disturbed d. displayed
47. The country's are protected by natural barriers like mountains and rivers.
 a. limits b. boundaries c. edge d. borders
48. The gift included rare spices, teas, and handcrafted ceramics.
 a. package b. bracelet c. gadget d. magnet
49. The river valley is considered the of early civilization due to its fertile land.
 a. birthdate b. birthplace c. replace d. compromise
50. The river changed its over time, affecting settlements along its banks.
 a. curse b. coarse c. course d. cures
51. gathered in the city to study astronomy, philosophy, and literature.
 a. Schools b. Scholars c. Scripts d. Slides
52. The dragon on the flag is a of power and protection.
 a. simple b. complex c. symbol d. slime
53. The loud of the market indicated bustling activity and trade.
 a. ramp b. rumble c. marble d. miracle
54. Soldiers moved and defended the borders against invaders.
 a. slowly b. hesitatingly c. swiftly d. cowardly
55. The fabric felt against her skin, making it uncomfortable to wear for long periods.
 a. smooth b. soft c. sliced d. scratchy
56. The of the dynasty is remembered for innovations in art and architecture.
 a. region b. regular c. reign d. rain
57. charted the stars to predict seasons and plan agricultural activities.
 a. Astrologers b. Astronomers c. Archeologists d. Zoologists
58. Scholars the stars to create calendars and track time.
 a. charted b. chanted c. enhanced d. mended
59. Travelers marveled at the beauty of the Gardens of Babylon.
 a. Hanging b. Hung c. Hanged d. Hugged
60. The city was a for trade, connecting east and west along the Silk Road.
 a. crossword b. cross word c. crossroads d. road cross
61. The river as a source of water, transportation, and food for the settlements.
 a. serves b. detects c. inspects d. suspects
62. New irrigation techniques have helped to agriculture, increasing productivity.
 a. alleviate b. revolutionize c. specialize d. emphasize
63. The fertile soil makes the river valley highly for growing crops.
 a. unproductive b. productive c. production d. producer
64. The city is by walls and natural barriers to protect it from invaders.
 a. surrendered b. surrounded c. suspected d. suggested
65. The government established large facilities to grain for emergencies.
 a. score b. store c. smash d. sweep
66. Merchants paid canal to transport goods efficiently between cities.
 a. fees b. faces c. facets d. facts

67. Boundaries between are often disputed, requiring careful negotiation.
a. territories b. terraces c. tracts d. tractors
68. Archaeologists discovered life-..... figures in the tombs of ancient rulers.
a. size b. sizes c. sizing d. sized
69. The streets of the old town were narrow and, making navigation difficult.
a. crooked b. cooked c. sucked d. switched
70. Stars in the night sky due to the Earth's atmosphere bending their light.
a. smuggle b. wrinkle c. mingle d. twinkle
71. The region is with fertile soil and abundant water from the river.
a. passed b. pressed c. pressurized d. blessed
72. Historians study the and fall of empires to understand patterns in history.
a. raise b. rise c. arouse d. arise
73. Ports serve as a/an for cultural and economic exchange with foreign lands.
a. gateway b. alley c. delay d. slay
74. The river is a for the city, providing water, food, and transportation.
a. lifeline b. fertile c. limestone d. structure
75. Taxes and trade tariffs provide for the state to fund public works.
a. avenue b. revenue c. venture d. adventure
76. Authorities captured the before he took the artifacts abroad.
a. twinkle b. wrinkle c. smuggler d. tractor
77. Engineers work to bridges and canals to improve transportation.
a. instruct b. inspect c. construct d. consult
78. The army fortified our borders to prevent any by rival countries.
a. intention b. inspection c. invasion d. determination
79. Skilled defended the country from invasions and rebellions.
a. warriors b. scribes c. wallets d. diamonds
80. The museum displayed that depicted historical figures and deities.
a. sculpture b. structure c. scholar d. swindler

خلاصة القواعد

Language: Quick Hints

Active and Passive Voice

كيفية تكوين المبني للمجهول في الأزمنة المختلفة

الزمن (الفعل)	التكوين في المعلوم	التكوين في المجهول
١. زمن المضارع البسيط	التصريف الأول للفعل am/ is/ are + V.ing	am/ is/ are + P.P
٢. زمن المضارع المستمر	have / has + P.P	am/ is/ are + being + P.P
٣. زمن المضارع التام	have/ has + been + V.ing	have/ has + been + P.P
٤. زمن المضارع التام المستمر	التصريف الثاني للفعل was/ were + V.ing	have/ has + been + P.P
٥. زمن الماضي البسيط	had + P.P	was/ were + P.P
٦. زمن الماضي المستمر	had + been + V.ing	was/ were + being + P.P
٧. زمن الماضي التام	مصدر will + be + V.ing	had + been + P.P
٨. زمن الماضي التام المستمر	will + be + P.P	had + been + P.P
٩. زمن المستقبل البسيط	will + be + V.ing	will + be + P.P
١٠. زمن المستقبل المستمر	will have + P.P	will + be + P.P
١١. زمن المستقبل التام	المصدر + الفعل الناقص will have + P.P	will + have + been + P.P
١٢. أفعال ناقصة: مضارع/مستقبل	المصدر + الفعل الناقص have + P.P	الفعل الناقص + be + P.P
١٣. الأفعال الناقصة في الماضي	have + P.P	have + been + P.P

- The bed **is being made** at the moment. - By 2100, many new cities **will have been built**.
- Tourists **could be seen** in the pool. - The homework **should have been done** an hour ago.

عند وجود ظرف داخل جملة المجهول، يفضل أن يوضع بعد (be)، أي بين (be) والتصريف الثالث (P.P):

Smoking affects health badly .	المبنى للمعلوم
Health is badly affected by smoking.	المبنى للمجهول

يتحول الفعل (let) بمعنى (يسمح / يبدع) في المجهول إلى (allowed to/ permitted to):

He lets people deceive him.	المبنى للمعلوم
People are allowed to deceive him. / He lets himself be deceived .	المبنى للمجهول

استخدام الفعل (make) بمعنى (يجعل) داخل جملة المبني للمعلوم وجملة المبني للمجهول..

المصدر + مفعول + make + فاعل	المعنى (يجعل)	المبنى للمعلوم
المصدر + be + made + to + المفعول	المعنى (يُجعل)	المبنى للمجهول
The colonel made the soldiers fire at the castle.		المبنى للمعلوم
The soldiers were made to fire at the castle.		المبنى للمجهول

نستخدم (get) بدلا من (be) في المجهول مع الأفعال التي تشير إلى تغيير في الأحوال أو أنشطة غير مخططة:

- The murderer **got arrested** last night. - The couple **got married** later that year.

الأفعال اللازمة لا يمكن استخدامها في المبني للمجهول لأنها لا يمكن أن تتبع بمفعول:

- نحن نستطيع أن نقول: لا يمكنني أن أجد قلبي لأنه اختفى.
I can't find my pen. It **has disappeared**.
- لا يمكننا أن نقول:
I can't find my pen. It **has been disappeared**.

المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول لأفعال التبليغ (الأقوابيل والإفراضات):

كيفية تكوين المبني للمعلوم لأفعال التبليغ: جملة + (that) + الفاعل + فعل التبليغ

- People **think** (that) Mona is honest.

كيفية تكوين المبني للمجهول لأفعال التبليغ: يوجد طريقتين لذلك:

جملة + (that) + P.P + be + It

الطريقة الأولى:

- It's **thought** (that) Mona is honest.

مصدر + be + P.P + to + فاعل (مضارع - مستقبل - ماضى)

الطريقة الثانية:

مصدر + be + P.P + to + be + P.P (مضارع - مستقبل - ماضى)

- Mona **is thought** to be honest.

تركيبات المعلوم والمجهول المعقدة:

صفة المبني للمعلوم	صفة المبني للمجهول
مصدر الفعل + تركيبة لغوية	be + P.P + تركيبة لغوية
مصدر الفعل + to + تركيبة لغوية	to + be + P.P + تركيبة لغوية
V.ing. + تركيبة لغوية	being + P.P + تركيبة لغوية
P.P + تركيبة لغوية	been + P.P + تركيبة لغوية
* want you to help me.	المبنى للمعلوم
want to be helped.	المبنى للمجهول
They left without the police seeing them.	المبنى للمعلوم
They left without being seen by the police.	المبنى للمجهول

be + P.P. and (or) P.P.

لاحظ الطريقة التالية لاختصار فعلين مبنيين للمجهول

9

- The criminal **was arrested and sent** to prison.

Grammar Question Bank بنك أسئلة القواعد

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The competition because of a technical problem.
a. was cancelled b. has cancelled c. cancelled d. was cancelling
- I some more responsibility at work by the boss next month.
a. will have given b. will be given c. will give d. am giving
- All of these sports can at your local sports centre.
a. be playing b. play c. have played d. be played
- All of these reports before we can go home.
a. have to write b. have written c. have to be written d. will have written
- Decisions in a company about how work will happen there.
a. are made b. are making c. have made d. make
- A permanent job to the last person who did work experience with them.
a. later had offered b. had late offered c. was later offered d. had later offered
- The report hasn't yet.
a. been delivering b. been deliver c. delivered d. been delivered
- I a new job as an accountant.
a. have already offered b. am already offering
c. have already been offered d. have offered already
- After all my questions, I got high marks.
a. had been checked b. had checked c. are checked d. have checked
- This company to be very popular with students looking for work experience.
a. seems b. is being seemed c. is seemed d. have seemed
- Before I returned home, the email
- A lot of roads recently.
a. have paved b. had paved c. have been paved d. had been paved
- The successful candidate an internship in the new product team.
a. will have offered b. will be offered c. would offer d. will offer
- We've noticed that interns often have to quite a lot of attention and support.
a. give b. be given c. be giving d. are given
- I suppose your team is hoping to as one of the finalists for this competition?
a. choose b. be choosing c. have chosen d. be chosen
- What needs if a customer is unhappy?
a. to be doing b. to do c. to have done d. to be done
- Is dinner now?
a. been cooked b. cooking c. being cooked d. be cooked
- In 1824, the first local fire brigade in Edinburgh, Scotland.
a. was established b. had established c. was establishing d. established
- I believe that customers should
- I could to move abroad to do an internship for six months.
a. have persuaded b. have been persuading c. be persuading d. be persuaded
- I'm a permanent job at the company.
a. hoped to be offering b. hoping to be offered
c. hoped to be offered d. hoping to be offering

22. Today, brave fire fighters throughout the world.
 a. respect b. are respected c. are respecting d. have respected
23. A new vaccine against covid-19 developed recently.
 a. has had b. is c. will have d. has been
24. Fortunately, the thief before he tried to escape.
 a. had been arrested b. has arrested c. was arresting d. had arrested
25. the room being painted at the moment?
 a. Has b. Been c. Is d. Are
26. The petrol tank is damaged. It needs
 a. being replaced b. replacing c. be replaced d. replace
27. Mr. Ahmed is expected as the manager of the firm.
 a. to be elected b. to have elected c. to elect d. being elected
28. Many ways are used to energy.
 a. being produced b. producing c. be produced d. produce
29. was the film directed?
 a. By whom b. Who by c. By who d. Who
30. If, water boils.
 a. heat b. is heated c. be heated d. heated
31. The robbers left the site without
 a. seeing b. being seen c. to see d. to be seen
32. I was sorry for allowing myself for such a trick.
 a. fall b. to fall c. be fallen d. to be fallen
33. She says she is ill to avoid to the party.
 a. to be invited b. to invite c. inviting d. being invited
34. is said that he is dishonest.
 a. He b. It c. That d. This
35. She got bored of that confusing question all the time.
 a. asking b. to ask c. being asked d. to be asked
36. The victim was thought poisoned.
 a. to have b. he was c. he d. to have been
37. I myself heard rumors about me.
 a. to told b. being told c. telling d. to tell
38. You needn't us you are ill. It's clear that you really are.
 a. tell b. be told c. to tell d. to be told
39. Air conditioning a lot in summer.
 a. is used b. has used c. uses d. have been used
40. The floors at the moment. You can't enter the house.
 a. are cleaning b. are cleaned c. clean d. are being cleaned
41. The products abroad are a source of pride for us.
 a. are exported b. export c. exporting d. exported
42. A new factory built in our district.
 a. will have b. have been c. is going to be d. must
43. What to find out by doing such an experiment?
 a. are you wanted b. are you wanting c. do you want d. are you being wanted
44. The top students will prizes.
 a. award b. be awarding c. been awarded d. be awarded
45. When celebrated?
 a. will it b. it will c. it will be d. will it be
46. The project might
 a. cancel b. being cancelled c. to cancel d. be cancelled

47. I think he will to working here in a few days.
 a. used b. been used c. have used d. get used
48. London by fires several times before 1666.
 a. badly was damaging b. was bad damaged c. was badly damaging d. was badly damaged
49. It that an old woman had been killed by her grandson.
 a. has reported b. had reported c. was reported d. reported
50. He by a snake yesterday.
 a. was bitten b. had bitten c. has bitten d. was biting
51. The car repaired well; it no longer breaks down. (LM)
 a. wasn't b. must have been c. can't have been d. must have
52. What the manager said in the meeting (LM)
 a. hasn't been expected b. wasn't expecting c. hadn't expected d. hadn't been expected
53. The exercise well; it's full of mistakes. (LM)
 a. can't revise b. can't be revising c. mustn't have been revised d. can't have been revised
54. I was doing my homework while dinner by my mother. (LM)
 a. is prepared b. had been prepared c. was preparing d. was being prepared
55. The patient thoroughly before the serious operation. (LM)
 a. was examining b. had to be examined c. had examined d. had to examine
56. Having, the car became ready for the journey. (LM)
 a. repaired b. being repaired c. been repaired d. to be repaired
57. I'm hoping that this serious issue tomorrow. (LM)
 a. is resolving b. ill resolve c. was resolved d. will be resolved
58. These trees need to regularly. (LM)
 a. be watered b. water c. be watering d. have watered
59. By next September, a new secondary school in our village. (LM)
 a. will be built b. will have been built c. has been built d. will have built
60. Unfortunately, the stolen money yet. (LM)
 a. hasn't been restored b. hasn't restored c. hadn't been restored d. weren't restored

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The workers completed the bridge two weeks ago. (was)
2. I hate people keeping me waiting. (being)
3. Mum will severely punish Ola for her bad manners. (be)
4. I want to know how long you have followed me. (been)
5. The bank gave me a loan to set up my business. (I)
6. People think the officer died from cancer. (The officer)
7. Will they tell you the date of the meeting? (be)
8. We have named the child after his grandfather. (been)
9. The Ancient Egyptians built the pyramids thousands of years ago. (were)
10. People grow cotton in the Nile Delta. (is)
11. They say that the criminal shot the soldier. (The criminal)
12. He has conducted the experiments well. (been)
13. Egypt borders three countries. (are)
14. Ali was flying a kite when it started to rain. (flown)
15. The lion attacked by the goat fiercely. (The goat)
16. Nobody can deny that she is a good singer. (It)
17. People think he is a genius. (He)
18. I didn't think the party would be cancelled. (The party)
19. We are doing most of our shopping on the internet nowadays. (being)
20. I thought someone was watching me. (being)

المقال الوصفي
A Descriptive Essay

- It uses vivid language to describe a person, place, object, or experience.
- It makes readers feel like they are seeing, hearing, and feeling what you're describing.
- Think of it as painting a picture with words.
- You want to use your five senses: sight, sound, smell, taste, and touch.
- **Introduction:** Introduce the topic you will describe.
- **Body Paragraphs:** الفقرات الرئيسية
 - Describe your topic in detail using your sensory words and figures of speech.
 - Each paragraph focuses on an aspect (one for the sights, another for the sounds).
- **Conclusion:** Summarize your description and share your final thoughts or feelings.
- **Use Similes and Metaphors** (figures of speech that compare things)
 - **Simile:** uses "like" or "as." ("The moon was like a glowing pearl.")
 - **Metaphor:** states that something is something else. ("The moon was a glowing pearl.")
- **Senses:**
 - **Sight:** What does it look like? (e.g., "bright red," "tall and crooked")
 - **Sound:** What does it sound like? (e.g., "a loud rumble," "a soft whisper")
 - **Smell:** What does it smell like? (e.g., "freshly baked bread," "salty ocean air")
 - **Taste:** What does it taste like? (e.g., "sweet and tangy," "bitter and spicy")
 - **Touch:** What does it feel like? (e.g., "smooth and cold," "rough and scratchy")
- **Use Strong Adjectives and Adverbs:**
 - Instead of "The cat was big," write "The enormous, fluffy cat."
 - Instead of "He walked quickly," write "He walked swiftly."
- **Use transition words** (first, next, then, finally) to connect your idea smoothly.
- Arrange your details in a logical order (from general to specific or outside to inside).

Exercises on Writing Skills

1. The main goal of a descriptive essay is to

a. paint a picture	b. tell a story	c. give instructions	d. persuade the reader
--------------------	-----------------	----------------------	------------------------
2. You focus on when brainstorming for a descriptive essay.

a. predictions	b. dates	c. opinions	d. senses
----------------	----------	-------------	-----------
3. "The wind whispered like a naughty girl." is a

a. hyperbole	b. simile	c. fact	d. metaphor
--------------	-----------	---------	-------------
4. "The wind was a whispering naughty girl." This is a/an

a. metaphor	b. hyperbole	c. opinion	d. simile
-------------	--------------	------------	-----------
5. Which is a good way to order details in a descriptive essay?

a. Outside to inside	b. Randomly	c. Alphabetically	d. Specific to general
----------------------	-------------	-------------------	------------------------
6. The body paragraphs of a descriptive essay mainly contain

a. lists of facts	b. stories	c. detailed descriptions	d. opinions
-------------------	------------	--------------------------	-------------
7. "Salty ocean air" appeals to

a. sight	b. sound	c. smell	d. taste
----------	----------	----------	----------

8. What is the purpose of transition words like "first," "next," and "finally"?
- To connect ideas smoothly
 - To describe objects
 - To make the essay longer
 - To end the essay

تمارين على القواعد التراكمية (قاعدة: seem / mean / suppose)

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- It was supposed this morning.
 - raining
 - to raining
 - rains
 - to rain
- They were to arrive by now.
 - suppose
 - meant
 - seem
 - supposing
- This book is to be the best book of the year.
 - meaning
 - pretending
 - seem
 - supposed
- You to keep the children out of trouble.
 - are suppose
 - are mean
 - suppose
 - are meant
- When the dog barks, it that there is danger nearby.
 - supposes
 - means
 - seem
 - appear
- The book to be back in the library now.
 - appear
 - supposed
 - seems
 - means
- I cook dinner on Monday evenings.
 - have supposed to
 - am supposed to
 - suppose to
 - am supposing to
- It to snow last week.
 - hadn't supposed
 - wasn't supposed
 - didn't suppose
 - didn't have suppose
- Does your new task mean three projects?
 - manage
 - to manage
 - managing
 - manager
- I regret insulting her in public. I to do so.
 - shouldn't have
 - had better not
 - wasn't mean
 - wasn't supposed

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- You mustn't talk during the test. (supposed to) (2006)
- If you were a bird, where would you fly? (Suppose)
- You shouldn't repeat the same mistake. (supposed)
- I'm sorry; I didn't intend to insult you. (mean)
- School aims to give education. (meant)
- I think he wants to leave. (seems)

General Question Bank (Unit 8) بنك الأسئلة العام على الوحدة

A. Vocabulary

1. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- Here is the confluence of two great rivers. An antonym for "confluence" is
 - junction
 - division
 - meeting
 - split
 - merging
- Her talent is remarkable. An antonym for "remarkable" is
 - ordinary
 - common
 - extraordinary
 - outstanding
 - exceptional
- Many modern languages originate from ancient Latin. A synonym for "originate" is
 - arise
 - terminate
 - end
 - emerge
 - finish
- Plants thrive in rich soil. An antonym for "thrive" is
 - decline
 - flourish
 - succeed
 - prosper
 - wither

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Ancient farmers used systems to bring water from rivers to their fields. (SB)
 - irrigation
 - foundation
 - commission
 - intimation

2. The land near the Nile was very, so crops grew easily. (SB)
 a. fertile b. infertility c. fertility d. infertile
3. The new school was built on a strong stone (SB)
 a. foundation b. irrigation c. nomination d. coronation
4. In Mesopotamia, a was responsible for writing records on clay tablets. (SB)
 a. prescribe b. scribe c. script d. manuscript
5. In Babylon, temples called rose high into the sky. (SB)
 a. ziggurats b. minarets c. cataracts d. contracts
6. The Nile provides water and fertile land, allowing farmers to grow rich crops.
 a. redundant b. apparent c. abundant d. terrace
7. The boss's speech was so that it moved everyone to tears.
 a. tiny b. impacted c. trivial d. powerful
8. She spoke in a and confident voice during the presentation.
 a. rough b. solid c. hard d. smooth
9. Trade started to after new routes were established.
 a. thrive b. decline c. deteriorate d. fail
10. She made a/an progress in the project.
 a. significantly b. insignificance c. significance d. significant
11. The invention of paper was a great in ancient China.
 a. nomination b. innovation c. dimension d. coronation
14. Chinese porcelain was highly by European merchants.
 a. ventured b. reeled c. valued d. communicated

B. Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The new library last year. (SB)
 a. was building b. built c. builds d. was built
2. The chef a five-star meal. (SB)
 a. has been prepared b. has prepared c. was prepared d. have prepared
3. The packages by the delivery service. (SB)
 a. are being delivered b. delivered c. are delivering d. is delivered
4. They the new song on the radio. (SB)
 a. are being played b. were played c. played d. was playing
5. The concert by thousands of fans. (SB)
 a. was enjoyed b. enjoyed c. is enjoying d. was enjoying
6. The Pyramids by ancient Egyptians thousands of years ago. (SB)
 a. had built b. have been c. were built d. being built
7. Many tourists the Nile River every year. (SB)
 a. are visited b. being visited c. visit d. have been visited
8. The climate zones in Egypt by Dr. Azmi on the radio program. (SB)
 a. had explained b. have explained c. explained d. were explained
9. Mediterranean cities along the coast and get more rain. (SB)
 a. are locating b. locate c. are located d. are being locate
10. Underground water in some desert oases. (SB)
 a. is found b. is finding c. found d. finds

2. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Ships carry tons of cargo through the canal. (are)
2. This painting has been made by my sister. (My sister)
3. People admired the woman for his courage. (by)
4. Mona is writing the report at the moment. (being)

C. Translation

Translation

1. Hurricanes can become strong enough to cause severe damage, property loss, or worse.
- أ. قد تصبح البراكين قوية بشكل كاف لتسبب دمار كبير وفقدان للمستعمرات أو ما هو أسوأ من ذلك.
 ب. قد تصبح الأعاصير قوية بشكل كاف لتسبب دمار كبير وفقدان للممتلكات أو ما هو أسوأ من ذلك.
 ج. قد تصبح البراكين قوية بشكل كاف لتسبب دمار كبير وفقدان للمستعمرات أو ما هو أسوأ من ذلك.
 د. قد تصبح الأعاصير قوية بشكل كاف لتسبب دمار كبير وفقدان للمستعمرات أو ما هو أسوأ من ذلك.
2. Dreams are linked to how the brains organize memories and emotions. They may help a person make sense of what happened during their day.

- أ. ترتبط الأحلام بكيفية تنظيم المخ للذكريات والعواطف فقد تساعد الشخص على فهم ما حدث خلال النهار.
 ب. ترتبط الأحلام بكيفية تدوير المخ للذكريات والعواطف فبالفعل تساعد الشخص على فهم ما حدث خلال النهار.
 ج. ترتبط الأحلام بكيفية تبرير المخ للذكريات والعواطف فقد تساعد الشخص على فهم ما حدث خلال النهار.
 د. ترتبط الأحلام بكيفية تنظيم المخ للذكريات والعواطف فهي بالفعل تساعد الشخص على فهم ما حدث خلال النهار.
٣. على الإنسان أن يبقى نظيفاً لأن الأمر هام لطرد المخبزن بجسده من طاقات سلبية وجذب الطاقة الإيجابية.

- a. The humane has to stay clean because of the matter is important to remove all the negative energy storing in his body and attracting positive energy.
 b. The human has to stay clean because the matter is important to remove all the negative energy stored in his body and attract positive energy.
 c. The human has to stay clean because the matter is important to promote all the negative energy stores in his body and attracts positive energy.
 d. The humane has to stay clean because the matter is important to remove all the negative energy stored in his body and attract positive energy.
٤. لأجل النوم سريعاً يجب تهيئة مكان النوم بإزالة وسائل للتشتت سواء كانت ساعة صوت دقائقها عالي أو شيء ينير في الظلام.

- a. To feel a sleep quickly, the sleeping place must be prepared by removing means of distraction, weather it is a clock with a loud chime or something that lights up in the dark.
 b. To fall asleep quickly, the sleeping place must be prepared by removing means of distraction, whether is a clock with a loud chime and something that lights up in the dark.
 c. To fall asleep quickly, the sleeping place must be prepared by removing means of distraction, whether it is a clock with a loud chime or something that lights up in the dark.
 d. To fall a sleep quickly, the sleeping place must prepared by removing means of distraction, whether it is a clock with a loud chime or something that lights up in the dark.

D. Reading Comprehension

1. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

One stormy morning the princess, Henrietta, was out walking in the rain. She was wearing her favorite pale green rain jacket, green gloves, and her new green rubber boots. As she jumped in and out of puddles **بركة ماء**, one of her new rubber boots got stuck in the mud outside the castle wall. She tugged **تسحب** and tugged, but the boot just sank lower. The only thing she could do was pull her foot out and hop back to the castle wearing one boot. What a sight she was! A princess hopping on one muddy boot! Because she was used to getting her way, she shrieked **بصرخت** "My favorite boot! Who will jump into the puddle and save my favorite boot?" An ugly lizard was sleeping nearby. He heard the cries of the princess and decided to help. He dove **غطس** deep into the mud and brought up the boot. He asked the princess to kiss him and promise that she would take him with her everywhere from that moment on. However, the princess thought the lizard was the ugliest creature she had seen. She took the boot and ran away, straight for the palace.

For several days she didn't see the lizard. Then one day, he appeared, sitting on her dinner plate. She shrieked and demanded he be thrown out of the castle. Her father asked what the lizard wanted. The princess had to confess that he had saved her boot, on the condition that she would take **him** everywhere. Her father said she must honor **تحتزم** her promise. Henrietta was so angry; she threw the lizard out the window. He hit the ground and became a handsome prince. He told her that the **wicked** witch had **put a spell on** him. She was the only one who could break the spell. Henrietta and the prince were married; they lived happily ever after.

- According to the passage, which of the following is **true**?
 - Henrietta's father sent the lizard out.
 - The lizard was ugly as he loved Henrietta.
 - Henrietta broke her promise after lizard changed.
 - Green is Henrietta's favourite colour.
- Why was the princess wearing her rain jacket, gloves, and rubber boots?
 - The weather was rainy.
 - It was hot outside.
 - These were her favorite clothes.
 - There were piles of snow to walk through.
- Why was Henrietta going to have to keep the lizard?
 - The lizard was her friend.
 - Her father made her honor her promise.
 - She wanted to play with him.
 - He promised to give her money.
- A synonym for "wicked" could be.....
 - cruel
 - nice
 - sweet
 - kind
- What did the princess ask when the lizard appeared again one day?
 - To stay with her in the castle
 - To be taken near the castle
 - To be dismissed outside the castle
 - To let the lizard live with her in the castle
- When did the lizard return to his human appearance?
 - When he accompanied the princess outside.
 - When the princess threw the lizard outside.
 - When the witch changed her mind.
 - When the princess decided to marry the lizard.
- What is the moral of the text?
 - People should keep lizards at their homes.
 - Princesses must be polite and respectful.
 - People must get away from witches who are harmful.
 - It's a must that people keep their promises.
- The collocation "put a spell on" means.....
 - do a piece of magic to change someone
 - play an evil piece of music
 - fight someone to take his money
 - play a match with a friend

2. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Figures show cycling is the cheapest, most convenient **ملائم** and most environmentally desirable form of transport, but this doesn't mean much on a frosty winter morning. The real appeal of cycling is that it is so enjoyable. It has none of the difficulties and tensions of other ways of travelling so you are more cheerful after a ride, even through the rush hour.

The first thing a non-cyclist says to you is: "But isn't it terribly dangerous?" It would be foolish to deny the danger of sharing the road with motor vehicles and it must be admitted that there are an alarming number of accidents involving cyclists. However, although police records indicate that the car driver is often to blame, the answer lies with the cyclist. It is possible to ride in such a way as to reduce risks to a minimum.

If you decide to cycle, your first problem will be deciding what bike to buy. Always buy the best you can afford **يتحمل نفقات**. Aim as high as you can and you will get the benefit not only when you ride but also if you want to sell. Well-made bikes keep their value very well. Don't forget that you'll begin saving money on fares and petrol the minute you leave the shop.

Get the best frame **هيكل**; the main structure of the bicycle. Cheap brakes **فرامل**, wheels or gears **تروس** can easily be replaced by more expensive ones, but the frame sets the upper limit on any transformation. Your cycling ambitions may grow with practice. When you begin, the four miles to work may be the most you ever dream of, but after a few months a Sunday ride

into the country begins to look more desirable. The fit is vital. Handlebars **المقاود** and seat height can be **adjusted** but must get the right sized frame. Some people say if you take four inches off from your inside leg measurement you will end up with the right size of bike.

- Regarding road safety, the author thinks that
 - driving is as dangerous as cycling
 - cyclists can avoid accidents by riding with caution
 - people who say cycling is dangerous are foolish
 - cyclists are usually responsible for accidents
- People who are buying their first bicycle are advised to
 - get a bicycle that suits their current needs
 - spend as much money on a bicycle as they can
 - buy as big a bicycle as they can afford
 - buy a cheap model to begin with
- After you have been cycling for a few months, the author suggests that you will
 - want to ride only at weekends
 - find riding to work every day boring
 - find cycling in towns less dangerous
 - want to ride further than you first imaged
- The author advises readers to ensure that a bike is the right
 - price
 - size
 - colour
 - weight
- The author thinks that the main attraction of cycling is
 - the pleasure it gives people
 - its comparative safety
 - its relative comfort
 - the benefits to people's health
- You can buy a good bike if you put into consideration the following **EXCEPT**
 - the best you can afford
 - the easy to ride
 - the fit
 - the best frame
- The word "**adjusted**" means "changed to be"
 - solid
 - difficult
 - more suitable
 - harder
- Cycling helps you
 - save energy
 - save money
 - save time
 - save yourself

E. Writing

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- "Wise men love truth, whereas fools shut it." The underlined word shows
 - contrast
 - cause
 - effect
 - addition
- Slashes are used for
 - statements
 - questions
 - fractions
 - interrogations
- "With no potatoes to eat, millions of Irish people died of hunger." This shows
 - contrast
 - cause
 - result
 - addition
- We use "to conclude" in order to
 - start the first paragraph of the essay
 - convince the reader of our opinions
 - put a thesis statement in introduction
 - introduce summary of main points

2. Write about (180 – 200) words on one of the following:

- The needful skills labour market requires nowadays.
- What you would do if you won a million pounds.

3. Write a paragraph of Six lines on the following:

- The benefits of doing physical exercise.
- The good impact that social media has on our life.

F. The Novel

- Answer the following questions:

- What does Edmond do after escaping the prison that shows his new identity? (SB)
- If you took on a completely new identity, how would you use it to change your life? (SB)
- Do you agree with Edmond's plan to seek revenge, or should he forgive and move on? (SB)
Explain.

Word	Meaning	Synonyms	Antonyms
alien	فضائي	unfamiliar / exotic	familiar / native
assumption	افتراض	presumption / supposition	certainty / proof
bend	يطوي / يثنى	curve / twist / flex	straighten / stiffen / extend
claim	ادعاء	allegation / declaration	denial / rejection
compressed	مضغوط	condensed / compacted	expanded / inflated
cosmic	كوني	celestial / astronomical	earthly / terrestrial
dense	كثيف	thick / compact	sparse / light / thin
infinite	لا نهائي	boundless / limitless	finite / restricted

Key Vocabulary

boundary	حد	trapdoor	باب أفقي (مسحور)	Milky Way	درب التبانة
dimension	أحد الأبعاد	invisible	غير مرئي	astronomer	عالم فلك
opportunity	فرصة	horizon	الأفق	shadow	الظل
curiosity	الفضول	galaxy	المجرة	theory	نظرية
mystery	لغز	universe	الكون	reputation	سمعة
blackhole	الثقب الأسود	singularity	منطقة التفرد	portal / gateway	مدخل
gravity	الجاذبية	cosmos	الكون	launch	يطلق في الفضاء

Vocabulary & Prepositions

bound	مفيد	dimensional	له أبعاد	moviemakers	صناع الأفلام
mysterious	غامض	gravitational pull	قوة جاذبية	horizontal	أفقي
guardian	حارس	edge / limit	حد	eventhorizon	أفق الحدث
desire	رغبة / يرغب	represent	يمثل	measurement	قياس / مقياس
broadcast	بث (إرسال)	doorway to	مدخل لـ	according to	طبقاً لـ
fascinating	مبهر	myth	أسطورة	turn into	يتحول إلى
fascinated by	متبهر بـ	stay in orbit	يبقى في المدار	conception	فهم / استيعاب
misconception	فهم خاطيء	script	سيناريو	creator	خالق
nearby	مجاور / بالجوار	the very name	الاسم نفسه	infinite density	كثافة لا نهائية
evidence / proof	دليل	singular	فريد / استثنائي	agency	وكالة
pause	يتوقف لفترة	calculations	حسابات	feel inspired	يشعر بالبهام
atrisk	في خطر	land on	يهبط فوق	tend to	يميل إلى
fund	يمول / تمويل	quantum physics	فيزياء الكم	concepts	مفاهيم
postpone	بؤجل	specialize in	يتخصص في	theoretical	نظري
run out of	ينفذ ما لديه من	darkmatter	الظلام	fuel	الوقود / يزود بالوقود
run out	ينفذ / ينتهي	mass	كتلة	form	يتشكل / يتكون

fearsome	مخيف	supermassive	شديد الضخامة	evolve	يتطور
capture	يلتقط / يستحوذ	act like	يقوم بدور كذا..	evolution	التطور
crush	يسحق / يطن	solar system	المجموعة الشمسية	exist	يتواجد
typically	عادة	suck up	يمتص	existence	التواجد
detective	محقق	spiral	حلزوني	regarding	بخصوص / بشأن
clues	مفاتيح لقر	solve a crime	يحل جريمة	missing	مفقود
red herrings	إشارات كاذبة	guilty of	مذنب بـ	go out	ينطفئ (النور)
make no sense	بلا معنى	innocent of	بريء من	suspect	يشك في

Idioms - Collocations - Expressions

doors to the unknown	أبواب نحو المجهول	Radio Show Script	سيناريو برنامج إذاعي
give off energy	يطلق الطاقة	there is no way back	لا سبيل للعودة
launch a space telescope	يطلق تليسكوب فضائي	make unproven theories	يقدم نظريات غير مثبتة
stellar black holes	ثقوب سوداء نجمية	make assumptions about	يقدم افتراضات حول
the whole of existence	الوجود كله	bend space and time	يحني المكان والزمان
the point of no return	منطقة اللاعودة	captured a photograph of	التقط صورة لـ

Language Notes

go missing	يضل الطريق	be lost = get lost = lose the way	يضل الطريق
look up to	يحترم	look down to	يحترق
replace ... with ...	يستبدل ... بـ ...	be replaced by	مستبدل بـ
orbit (go around)	يدور حول غيره	spin - spun - spun	يدور حول نفسه
quiet	هادئ	quite	التي حد ما
abbreviation	اختصار لكلمة	acronym	الأحرف الأولى من عبارة

Vocabulary Question Bank أسئلة الكلمات

A. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- They feared the heavy rain would destroy the village. A synonym for "feared" is
a. welcomed b. worried c. loved d. trusted e. dreaded
- Don't keep your true feelings hidden behind a calm smile. An antonym for "hidden" is
a. visible b. revealed c. concealed d. secret e. unseen
- She took a chance on applying for the scholarship. A synonym for "chance" is
a. possibility b. vulnerability c. likely d. opportunity e. impossibility
- I was curious to know what was inside the box. An antonym for "curious" is
a. indifferent b. interested c. inquisitive d. apathetic e. eager
- A mysterious crime took place here last night. A synonym for "mysterious" is
a. clear b. obvious c. puzzling d. familiar e. enigmatic
- I'm sorry to say that your assumption is wrong. A synonym of "assumption" is
a. fact b. belief c. supposition d. certainty e. proof
- Space is so infinite. A synonym for "infinite" is
a. limited b. restricted c. finite d. boundless e. limitless
- Scientists prove theories through experiments. An antonym for "prove" is
a. demonstrate b. verify c. refute d. contradict e. confirm
- Scientists searched for alien life in distant galaxies. A synonym for "alien" is
a. familiar b. native c. unfamiliar d. exotic e. ordinary

10. The scientist made a claim about a new discovery. A synonym for "claim" is
- a. denial b. rejection c. disproof d. allegation e. assumption
11. Scientists study cosmic radiation to understand the universe. An antonym for "cosmic" is ...
- a. terrestrial b. universal c. astronomical d. earthly e. celestial
12. The forest was dense, making it hard to walk through. A synonym for "dense" is
- a. sparse b. light c. thin d. compact e. thick

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Telescopes open doors to the by showing what lies beyond our galaxy.
- a. famous b. infamous c. popular d. unknown
2. Stars give energy in the form of light and heat.
- a. away b. off c. down d. into
3. The agency plans to a space telescope to study distant planets.
- a. lunch b. kick c. launch d. cluster
4. black holes form from the collapse of massive stars.
- a. Stellar b. Spectacle c. Swine d. Smeller
5. Astronomers attempt to study the of existence through observations of the cosmos.
- a. hole b. hall c. whale d. whole
6. Crossing the event horizon of a black hole is the point of no
- a. turn b. attune c. avatar d. return
7. The team wrote a radio show about recent discoveries in astronomy.
- a. scribe b. strict c. context d. script
8. Scientists should be careful not to make theories without sufficient evidence.
- a. proved b. proven c. proof d. unproven
9. It's unwise to assumptions about alien life without studying the data carefully.
- a. take b. do c. spend d. make
10. According to Einstein, massive objects like black holes can space and time.
- a. bled b. blend c. bend d. spend
11. The telescope a photograph of a supernova in a distant galaxy.
- a. captivated b. seized c. caricatured d. captured
12. His notebook went during the field trip.
- a. missed b. losing c. lost d. missing
13. The Moon the Earth once every 27 days, creating tidal effects.
- a. spins b. rotate c. revolve d. orbits
14. NASA is the for the National Aeronautics and Space Administration.
- a. chrome b. chorus c. crane d. acronym
15. Scientists discovered a strange structure on a distant planet that no one could explain.
- a. alien b. allied c. a line d. lifeline
16. You shouldn't that everyone agrees with your opinion without asking them first.
- a. resume b. assume c. consume d. consult
17. Some people that black holes can bend space and time in unimaginable ways.
- a. scheme b. claim c. cease d. case
18. radiation from distant galaxies reaches Earth constantly, though we don't feel it.
- a. Cosmetic b. Costume c. Custom d. Cosmic
19. The fog was so that it was difficult to see the road ahead.
- a. slight b. light c. sick d. dense
20. The universe seems, stretching beyond what humans can imagine.
- a. finite b. infinite c. definite d. limited
21. The scientist explained how time could be considered a fourth
- a. dimension b. mention c. demerit d. deplorable

22. The lecture provided a/an to ask questions directly to leading astronomers.
 a. opportunity b. clarity c. clarification d. fragility
23. drives scientists to explore new frontiers, from the depths of the ocean to outer space.
 a. Cease b. Curiosity c. Inquisitive d. Serious
24. The disappearance of the spaceship remains a that no one has solved.
 a. misty b. mysterious c. mystery d. logic
25. Scientists study black to understand the extreme conditions of space.
 a. wholes b. halls c. whales d. holes
26. keeps planets in orbit around stars and governs the motion of galaxies.
 a. Cavity b. Savage c. Gravity d. Growth
27. Our solar system is located in the Way galaxy, which contains billions of stars.
 a. Misty b. Mighty c. Meeting d. Milky
28. The used a powerful telescope to observe distant galaxies.
 a. astrologer b. astronomer c. asteroid d. stream
29. The moon cast a on the Earth during the solar eclipse.
 a. window b. universe c. shadow d. slide
30. The scientist earned a for making groundbreaking discoveries in physics.
 a. regulation b. refutation c. reputation d. domination
31. Some science fiction movies depict a that allows instant travel across the universe.
 a. porter b. portal c. brutal d. brochure
32. Dark matter is, but scientists can detect its effects on galaxies.
 a. visual b. visible c. invisible d. visualized
33. On distant planets, the can appear very different from what we see on Earth.
 a. horrible b. horizon c. reason d. hierarchy
34. Each contains millions or even billions of stars, along with gas and dust.
 a. galaxy b. wax c. garment d. global
35. The is vast, containing countless galaxies, stars, and planets.
 a. university b. universe c. universal d. verse
36. A occurs at the center of a black hole where density becomes infinite.
 a. singular b. plural c. plurality d. singularity
37. Astronomers explore the using advanced telescopes and space probes.
 a. cosmos b. cosmic c. cosmetic d. costume
38. Light is by the gravitational pull of a black hole and cannot escape.
 a. sound b. ground c. bound d. blend
39. The signals from deep space puzzled scientists for decades.
 a. mysterious b. obvious c. clear d. apparent
40. She acted as a for the children during the trip.
 a. guardian b. grade c. garden d. gradual
41. The for knowledge drives humans to study the universe.
 a. design b. mission c. task d. desire
42. The agency will the launch live on television and online.
 a. forecast b. forehead c. broadcast d. broaden
43. The documentary about space was to watch. We all loved it.
 a. dull b. uninteresting c. fascinating d. defeating
44. Children are often by images of the cosmos and planets.
 a. fabricated b. fascinated c. fabulous d. vibrated
45. The teacher corrected the about the Moon's phases during the lesson.
 a. conception b. perception c. concept d. misconception
46. Astronomers gathered to support the existence of a supermassive black hole.
 a. prove b. evident c. proven d. evidence

47. She took a moment to and admire the stunning view of the galaxy.
 a. please b. pause c. boss d. applause
48. Planets too close to a black hole are at of being destroyed by its gravity.
 a. risk b. mast c. waste d. wink
49. They raised enough to continue their research on dark matter.
 a. funds b. finds c. frauds d. frowns
50. The launch had to be because of bad weather conditions.
 a. prospected b. postponed c. postcard d. praised
51. We almost ran fuel before reaching the space station.
 a. out b. out of c. down d. down on
52. The storm was, with strong winds and heavy rain.
 a. fear b. fearsome c. handsome d. wisdom
53. The boxer delivered a powerful punch that could his opponent.
 a. crush b. cash c. scratch d. verify
54. Students study before exams to get good grades.
 a. typically b. type c. typical d. territorial
55. The used clues to solve the mysterious disappearance of the child.
 a. director b. manager c. detective d. detergent
56. In mysteries, red distract the detective from the real solution.
 a. herrings b. hearings c. herds d. hoards
57. There is a that aliens have visited Earth in the past.
 a. math b. myth c. mice d. malice
58. The mission aimed to on Mars and collect soil samples.
 a. lend b. land c. load d. reload
59. physics explains the behavior of particles at the smallest scales.
 a. Quantity b. Quantum c. Quack d. Quick
60. The professor in theoretical physics and cosmology.
 a. sterilizes b. realizes c. recognizes d. specializes
61. The vacuum cleaner up all the dust from the floor quickly.
 a. sucked b. soaked c. thickened d. shrunk
62. Anything crossing the horizon of a black hole cannot escape.
 a. incident b. accident c. happening d. event

Language: Quick Hints

خلاصة القواعد

Verb patterns with the gerund and the infinitive

١. الأفعال التي تتبع بـ (مصدر + to):

- *decide, encourage, seem, try, want, arrange, agree, hope, expect, plan, offer, learn.*
 - We **decided to work** on it together. - The book **seems to be back** in the library now.

٢. الأفعال التي تتبع بـ (V.ing):

- *avoid, enjoy, finish, miss, recommend, admit, deny, practise, risk, consider, suggest*
 - You should **avoid looking** at your phone in bed. - I **enjoy watching** films in English.

٣. أفعال تتبع بـ (مصدر + to) أو (V.ing) دون تغيير بالمعنى: *continue / hate / like / start*

- We will **continue to look (looking)** for the photos until we find them.

٤. أفعال تتبع بـ (مصدر + to) أو (V.ing) مع تغيير بالمعنى: *stop/remember/forget/regret/try*

- When I run, I need to **stop to take** a break every 15 minutes. (يتوقف لكي يفعل كذا)

- Let's **stop thinking** of ideas now and start making a plan. (يتوقف عن فعل كذا)
 - Please **remember to bring** you digital camera tomorrow. (يتذكر أن يفعل كذا)
 - I **remember meeting** this man last year at the wedding reception. (يتذكر أنه فعل كذا)
 - He **forgot to take** the medicine so he became seriously ill. (ينسى أن يفعل كذا)
 - She **forgot taking** the medicine so she took it again unnecessarily. (ينسى أنه فعل كذا)
 - I **regret wasting** all my money; now I have no money to buy a T-shirt. (يندم على فعل كذا)
 - We **regret to inform** you that you have not been accepted. (يأسف لأنه سيفعل كذا)
 - **Try taking** this medicine for your headache. It's very good. (يجرب وسوف يرى النتيجة)
 - I'm **trying to learn** Chinese, but it's very difficult. (يحاول فعل كذا)
 like / prefer / love + V.ing (في العموم) - like / prefer / love + to مصدر (في موقف خاص)
 would ('d) like (love / prefer) + to + مصدر (موقف خاص) - would ('d) rather + مصدر
 - I like **to do / doing** exercise every day. - I'd love **to go** for a swim this evening.
 - I'd rather **have** a cup of tea, please. - I'd rather you **didn't use** my calculator.

9 أفعال تتبع بـ (مصدر + to) أو (V.ing) اعتماداً على بناء الجملة (ينطبق هذا على الأفعال السبعة التالية)

- يحرم - يمنع
 suggest يقترح advise ينصح forbid يحرم
 allow / permit يسمح recommend يوصي encourage يشجع
 - إذا جاء بعد هذه الأفعال مفعول به، تتبع بـ (مصدر + to). / إذا لم يأتي بعدها مفعول به فإنها تتبع بـ (V.ing).
 - إذا جاءت تلك الأفعال في صيغة المبني للمجهول فإنها تتبع بـ (مصدر + to).
 - They don't **allow** parking. / They won't **allow you** to park. / **You aren't allowed** to park.

10 صيغ خاصة بالأفعال (suggest / recommend / insist):

- فاعل + suggest / recommend / insist on + V.ing.
 مصدر الفعل + (should) + فاعل آخر + فاعل + suggest / recommend / insist that + فاعل
 مصدر الفعل + to + مفعول + for + suggest + فاعل
 - He **suggested going** (that we go / should go) to Turkey. - He **suggested for us to go** to

11 مجموعة من التعبيرات تتبع بـ (V.ing):

- I can't help / I can't stop / I can't resist مشغول لا أقاوم (أحب) be busy مشغول
 I can't stand / I can't bear من المدهش لا أتحمّل (أكره) Fancy (Imagine) من المدهش
 what (how) about من الممتع ماذا عن It's fun من الممتع
 It's no use / It's no help أشتهي I feel like لا فائدة من
 - I **can't stand** eating this. - **It's no good** wasting time. - I **can't help** eating sweets.

12 مجموعة من التعبيرات التي تنتهي بـ (to) لكنها تتبع بـ (V.ing):

- يساهم في / يعتاد على contribute to / take to بسبب - بفضل
 admit / own up (to) يتطلع إلى look forward to يعترف بـ
 am / is / are + used to بالاضافة لـ / يعترض in addition to / object to معتاد على
 - He has **admitted** (to) breaking the window. - She **is used to** watching TV at night.

بنك أسئلة القواعد Grammar Question Bank

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Scientists hope evidence of life on Mars.
 a. to finding b. find c. to find

d. finding

(SB)

سأى نيوفريند

123

2. I suggest more about quantum physics. (SB)
 a. read b. reading c. to read d. to reading
3. The astronaut refused on the mission. (SB)
 a. to comment b. commenting c. comment d. to commenting
4. We practice the telescope every night. (SB)
 a. to use b. using c. used d. to using
5. They decided the spacewalk due to weather. (SB)
 a. postponing b. to postpone c. to postponing d. postpone
6. Do you mind this theory again? (SB)
 a. explaining b. explain c. to explain d. to explaining
7. Leila stopped to the radio. She quit that activity. (SB)
 a. to listen b. listened c. listening d. listens
8. I can't imagine on another planet. (SB)
 a. to live b. to be lived c. being lived d. living
9. You must repeating these silly mistakes or you will get low marks. (LM)
 a. arrange b. deny c. avoid d. enjoy
10. The criminal was in disguise to avoid by the police. (LM)
 a. arresting b. being arrested c. arrest d. be arrested
11. I was made the composition again, as it was full of mistakes. (LM)
 a. to revise b. revise c. revising d. to revising
12. She needn't the things that are unnecessary. (LM)
 a. buys b. to buy c. buy d. to buying
13. Heba: Let's go to the library. This means that Heba to the library. (LM)
 a. suggests going b. lets us go c. allows us to go d. refuses to go
14. I got him to change his mind. This means that I change his mind. (LM)
 a. forced him to b. let him c. persuaded him to d. hoped he would
15. You must using your mobile for a long time; it's harmful. (LM)
 a. continue b. stop c. enjoy d. encourage
16. I her to use my dictionary. (LM)
 a. made b. let c. allowed d. refused
17. The burglar admitted the lady's jewellery. (LM)
 a. that he had stolen b. that he has stolen c. to steal d. by stealing
18. I shouldn't have annoyed my brother. This means that I that. (LM)
 a. hoped to do b. regret doing c. regret to do d. was pleased to do
19. I am sorry; I forgot your book. I am going to return it tomorrow. (LM)
 a. to bringing b. bringing c. to bring d. bring
20. When I train, I follow the coach's advice; I ... a break every 15 minutes to get rest. (LM)
 a. refuse to take b. avoid taking c. stop to take d. stop taking
21. I eating late at night since it makes me feel heavy in the morning. (LM)
 a. forbid b. dislike c. enjoy d. hope
22. I him to attend my sister's wedding. (LM)
 a. decide b. hope c. made d. expect
23. I prefer reading TV. (LM)
 a. to watching b. than watch c. to watch d. more than watch
24. My mother asked me to stop bread because we needed it for lunch. (LM)
 a. buy b. to buying c. buying d. to buy
25. I promise you overcome this problem. (LM)
 a. I would help b. I will be helped c. to help d. help
26. Because of bad weather, Egypt Air regrets its flight to London. (LM)
 a. to cancel b. canceling c. cancel d. to canceling

27. She intended a new dress for her birthday party. (LM)
 a. will buy b. would buy c. to buy d. buy
28. We stopped the virtual meeting that everyone's microphones were turned on.
 a. check b. checked c. to check d. to checking
29. We stopped that everyone's microphones were turned on as they always were.
 a. checking b. check c. checked d. to check
30. Should we risk AI if it is going to cause so many problems?
 a. being used b. using c. to use d. to be used
31. I would consider English to a very high level.
 a. to study b. study c. studying d. to studying
32. When studying, you should remember a break every twenty-five minutes.
 a. to take b. to be taken c. being taken d. taking
33. You seem on video calls every evening!
 a. being b. been c. to be d. be
34. What's the most important future trend we to know about?
 a. recommend b. enjoy c. suggest d. need
35. That to be logical.
 a. enjoys b. avoids c. seems d. keeps
36. They enjoy more decisions on their own.
 a. to make b. make c. making d. made
37. We decided on the project together.
 a. working b. work c. to work d. to working
38. I prefer playing games watching TV.
 a. to b. than c. for d. on
39. I remember this man last year at the wedding reception.
 a. to meet b. to be met c. being met d. meeting
40. I regret all my money; now I have no money to buy this T-shirt.
 a. to waste b. to be wasted c. wasting d. being wasted
41. We regret you that you have not been accepted for this job.
 a. to be informed b. informing c. being informed d. to inform
42. Try this medicine for your headache. It's very good.
 a. to take b. take c. taking d. taken
43. I'm trying Chinese, but it's very difficult.
 a. learning b. learn c. learned d. to learn
44. I'm looking forward to more on this project.
 a. did b. I do c. do d. doing
45. I'd like something on this for our project.
 a. doing b. be do c. to do d. do
46. I really want one of these festivals.
 a. to be seen b. seen c. to see d. seeing
47. I've arranged to the theatre with my family.
 a. gone b. be gone c. to going d. to go
48. He admitted that mistake.
 a. making b. make c. be made d. to make
49. It's no good time.
 a. wasting b. to waste c. waste d. wasted
50. I can't help sweets.
 a. eat b. eating c. to eat d. eats
51. I am used to the holidays in Sharm.
 a. spend b. spent c. spending d. spends

52. My brother is learning the oud.
 a. playing b. to playing c. play d. to play
53. My parents suggested that to the theatre.
 a. to go b. we go c. went d. going
54. Before you go to London, you should practice English.
 a. speak b. to speak c. spoke d. speaking
55. He hopes a prize for his school work.
 a. winning b. win c. to win d. be won
56. She offered me to the station in her car.
 a. taking b. to take c. taken d. took
57. I can't afford this car. It's too expensive.
 a. buy b. to buying c. to buy d. bought
58. The manager made all the staff over time to finish early.
 a. working b. to work c. work d. worked
59. The ministry has delayed the economic conference.
 a. to hold b. to holding c. hold d. holding
60. - "Would you like to join us?" - "No, thank you. I'd rather here."
 a. stay b. to stay c. staying d. stayed

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Astronomers say they will capture better images of distant galaxies. (hope)
2. She expects to get a job soon. (will)
3. He said he meant to break the rules. (admitted)
4. I don't like working late at night. (can't stand)
5. I always write about politics. (enjoy)
6. I'd like you to visit me tomorrow. (Do you mind)
7. She finds it strange to summarize every paragraph. (not used to)
8. I wish I hadn't started smoking. (regret)
9. Mom said she would beat me if I didn't come early. (threatened)
10. I want to thank you because you lent me the money. (appreciate)
11. I think I will finish my task later this evening. (expect)
12. I love reading more than watching TV. (prefer)
13. I don't think paying that price will be a good idea. (It's no good)
14. She said to me she was sorry that she didn't phone me. (apologized)
15. He said that he didn't break anything. (denied)
16. He said he would help us with the mission. (promised)
17. He thought it's a good idea to stay home tonight. (suggested)
18. I'd like to have a turkey. (feel like)
19. I'd prefer you to come back tomorrow. (rather)
20. She suggested making a plan B. (suggested we)

خلاصة مهارات الكتابة

Writing Skills: Hints

A Mystery Story القصة البوليسية

- A mystery story is a short tale about a puzzle or crime that needs to be solved—like a missing object, a secret message, or a strange event.
- The main character (the detective) follows clues to find the answer.
- This is the person who solves the mystery. It could be: A student - A pet - A robot - Or even a talking cat!

- Give your detective a name and a special skill (like noticing small details).
- Clues help solve the mystery (e.g., a muddy footprint, a note).
- Red Herrings are fake clues that confuse the detective (a suspect who looks guilty but didn't do it).
- At the end, the detective solves the mystery; he puts the clues together and reveals the truth. Make sure the answer makes sense and fits the clues!

- Tips for Mystery Writers نصائح لكتاب القصص البوليسية

- Keep the reader guessing! - Don't tell the answer too soon.
- Make sure the clues lead to the solution. - Have fun!

Exercises on Writing Skills

- The author should keep the reader guessing to make the story
 - longer
 - suspenseful
 - factual
 - usual
- The purpose of including clues in a mystery is to
 - make the story longer
 - help the reader solve the mystery
 - confuse the author
 - describe the weather
- The solution of a mystery is the part in which the detective
 - make a list of suspects
 - discovers the first clue
 - reveals the truth
 - uses red herrings
- What is the most important thing to remember when creating a mystery?
 - The detective is the most popular.
 - The clues lead to a solution that makes sense.
 - Many big words are used.
 - The villain should always be a stranger.
- The main goal of a mystery story is to
 - tell a romantic tale
 - explain a historical event
 - describe a beautiful setting
 - present a puzzle or crime
- The solution of the mystery should
 - remain a secret
 - accuse everyone
 - make no sense
 - fit the clues
- A "red herring" in a mystery story is a type of clue.
 - final
 - easy
 - false
 - bright
- The answer shouldn't be told too soon because it
 - keeps us sleepy
 - isn't important
 - ruins the suspense
 - becomes long

تمارين على القواعد التراكمية (قاعدة: أزمنة المستقبل)

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I to the theatre until I meet my friends. (Longman)
 - didn't go
 - haven't gone
 - won't go
 - hadn't gone
- I hope the exam difficult. (Longman)
 - isn't being
 - isn't going to be
 - won't have been
 - won't be
- I think it hot tomorrow. (Longman)
 - is going to be
 - is being
 - will be
 - will have been
- My little grandchild three next Friday. (Longman)
 - will be
 - will have been
 - is going to be
 - would be
- In the future, solar heating in homes and industry. (2005)
 - is used
 - will be used
 - are used
 - would be used
- She to London next Monday. Everything is arranged. (Sudan – 2018)
 - is flying
 - will fly
 - flies
 - is going to fly
- I to the book fair to buy the books I need. This is my intention. (LM)
 - will have gone
 - am going to go
 - am going
 - will go

8. By my 50th birthday, I in my current profession for over 20 years. (2012)
 a. will have been b. will be c. will being d. will have
9. I'll have finished doing my homework 8 o'clock p.m tomorrow. (Sudan-2013)
 a. on b. at c. for d. by
10. While Mona is doing her homework tomorrow, mum lunch.
 a. will preparing b. will be preparing c. be preparing d. preparing
- B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:**
1. Investors will have to reclaim two million feddans in the area. (be) (1983)
 2. I'll send you the report as soon as I have finished it. (till) (1986)
 3. You won't leave until we arrive. (when) (2005)
 4. She will finish her work at 5 p.m tomorrow. (by 5 p.m)
 5. Tomorrow I will read the new novel. (from morning to afternoon)
 6. She intends to buy a new car. (going)

General Question Bank (Unit 9) بنك الأسئلة العام على الوحدة

A. Vocabulary

1. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. Finally we were able to solve the mystery. An antonym for "mystery" is
 a. solution b. puzzle c. enigma d. riddle e. clarity
2. The child was curious and asked many things. An antonym for "curious" is
 a. eager b. apathetic c. inquisitive d. indifferent e. interested
3. The air here is highly compressed. An antonym for "compressed" is
 a. expanded b. condensed c. compacted d. squeezed e. inflated
2. Don't bend the metal rod too far. An antonym for "bend" is
 a. stiffen b. twist c. flex d. straighten e. curve

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. She felt to know what was inside the mysterious box. She insisted on knowing.
 a. indifferent b. uninterested c. curious d. notorious
2. The giant wall forms the between the two gardens.
 a. bend b. boundary c. broaden d. rivalry
3. This sculpture looks lifelike.
 a. traditional b. dimensional c. crucial d. critical
4. His inquisitiveness led him to abandoned buildings.
 a. expand b. export c. explore d. expose
5. The car got stuck in a on the road.
 a. hell b. whole c. hall d. hole
6. The moon's effect causes tides in the oceans.
 a. gravitational b. graphic c. groove d. griped
7. It's a common that healthy food is always expensive.
 a. assumption b. acceleration c. amusement d. attachment
8. The universe is full of billions of galaxies, each countless stars and planets.
 a. commenting b. including c. consisting d. revolving
9. He has a/an sense of humor that makes everyone laugh.
 a. common b. ordinary c. exception d. singular
10. The long novel was into a short summary for students.
 a. contradicted b. compressed c. communicated d. commuted
11. You should your efforts toward finishing the project on time.
 a. blend b. spend c. brand d. bend
12. According to Einstein's of relativity, time and space are interconnected.
 a. theory b. theme c. thumb d. throne

B. Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I remember my alarm last night. I recall doing it. (SB)
a. had set b. to be set c. setting d. to set
- Please, don't forget your alarm tonight. (SB)
a. set b. setting c. to set d. to be set
- The scientist stopped at midnight; he became tired. (SB)
a. working b. works c. to work d. being worked
- The researcher tends late when studying black holes. (SB)
a. work b. working c. to work d. works
- While working, Leila stopped to the radio. (SB)
a. listening b. listened c. to listen d. listen
- Students should try difficult concepts. They should make an effort. (SB)
a. understand b. understanding c. understood d. to understand
- Scientists refuse without evidence. (SB)
a. to guess b. guessed c. to guessing d. guess
- Many people enjoy black holes as portals. (SB)
a. to imagine b. imagining c. to imagining d. imagine
- Astronomers hope new discoveries soon. (SB)
a. revealing b. to reveal c. to revealing d. reveal
- Experts avoid unproven theories. (SB)
a. to make b. making c. to making d. make

2. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- He said he wouldn't lend me any money. (refused)
- He said he was happy that I passed the exam. (congratulated)
- Scientists will analyze the telescope data. (have decided)
- I am happy to wait for you till you come back. (don't mind)

C. Translation

- The campaign aims at rescuing the monuments due to their historical and archaeological value and also to restore their role in the community.

أ. تهدف الحملة إلى إنقاذ الآثار بغرض قيمتها التاريخية والأثرية وأيضاً لتدوير دورها في المجتمع.
ب. تهدف الحملة إلى إنقاذ الآثار بغرض قيمتها التاريخية والجيولوجية وأيضاً لاستعادة دورها في المجتمع.
ج. تهدف الحملة إلى إنقاذ الآثار بسبب قيمتها التاريخية والجيولوجية وأيضاً لاستعادة مكانها في المجتمع.
د. تهدف الحملة إلى إنقاذ الآثار بسبب قيمتها التاريخية والأثرية وأيضاً لاستعادة دورها في المجتمع.

- Every religion teaches its followers to be polite, compassionate and thoughtful.
أ. كل دين يعلم أتباعه أن يكونوا مهذبين ورحماء وعطوفين. ب. كل دين يعلم أصدقائه أن يكونوا مهذبين ومتعاونين وعطوفين.
ج. كل دين يعلم أتباعه ليكونوا مهذبين ومتعاونين وعطوفين. د. كل دين يعلم باتباعه أن يكون للناس مهذبين ورحماء وعطوفين.
- يعد مشروع محطات الطاقة الشمسية نواة جديدة لتوليد الطاقة الكهربائية من الشمس ودعم الشبكة القومية.
a. The solar power structure project is a new nucleus for generating electric power from the sun and supporting the national grid.
b. The solar power plants project is a new nucleus for generating electric power from the sun and supporting the national grid.
c. The solar power plants project is a new nucleus for generating electric power from the sun and supporting the national grid.
d. The solar power planets project is a new nucleus for generating electric power from the sun and supporting the national grid.
- يعمل العلماء على تطوير تقنيات تحرير الحمض النووي ليعيدوا إحياء الأنواع المنقرضة من الحيوانات.
a. Scientists are developing DNA editing technologies to revive distinct species of animals.
b. Scientists are developing DNA editing technologies to revive extinct species of animals.

- c. Scientists are developing DNA valuing technologies to relive extinct spices of animals.
 d. Scientists are developing DNA valuing technologies to invite distinct species of animals.

D. Reading Comprehension

1. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Most of what you own will one day be thrown out. Think about your clothes, the TV, and the stove. They will tear **يمزق** or break down **يبلى**. Or you may just want to get new, better things. But where do things go when you throw them out? The bad news is that most of it goes to a landfill **مقلب نفايات** which is a big hole in the ground. It may have a concrete or plastic liner **بطانة**. This liner keeps chemicals from seeping into **يتسرب** the groundwater around the landfill.

Trash trucks filled with all the things that people throw out go to the landfill. They dump their loads into the hole. Bulldozers cover everything with soil. But there is a better way. And since we are running out of landfill space, more people are doing it. It is recycling that lets things be used again instead of wasting them. Give away an old TV or stove. They can be fixed so that someone else can use them. Clothes can be sent to people who need them. Most glass, paper, plastic, and metal is recyclable. When people recycle things, it helps the environment. It saves space in landfills. Paper takes up more space in landfills than any other thing!

Some people have recycle bins. They put their paper, metal, glass, and plastic into the bin. A special truck takes these things to a processing center **مركز معالجة**. Other people must drive to a recycling center and drop off their things. Paper is **shredded** and then mixed with water and wood pulp **عجينة** to make new paper. Glass, metal, and plastics are melted down. Then they are poured into molds **قوالب** to form new things.

- Which of the following cannot be recycled?
 - dirty paper
 - dirty banana
 - plastic bag
 - soda can
- What happens to glass jars that you throw out instead of recycle?
 - People dig send them to a recycling center.
 - They get reused as food containers.
 - They take up space in a landfill.
 - They slowly rot and turn back into soil.
- What is the most important reason to recycle paper?
 - It saves trees from being cut down.
 - It will keep us from running out of paper.
 - It keeps the cost of paper low.
 - A lot of people are doing it.
- Which of the following is true?
 - Some people drive their things to a recycling center.
 - We have a lot of space for landfills.
 - Glass takes up more space in landfills.
 - Anything is recyclable.
- The underlined word "shredded" means
 - turn into white
 - turn into black
 - cut to size
 - cut into pieces
- A good title for this passage could be
 - Recycling
 - Pollution
 - Trash
 - Landmines
- What moral do we learn from the passage?
 - Glass is recyclable.
 - We can always help the environment.
 - We have to help the needy.
 - Clothes can be used again.
- What is the liner used for?
 - To protect the underground water
 - To make chemicals leak under the ground
 - To stop chemicals from eating
 - To spoil the underground water

2. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

A blog **المدونة** is a page on the Internet. The term "blog" refers to a web log. People used web logs to list links to various websites. They shared them with others. In other words, they kept logs of places they visited. These web logs have links on them. The term "link" is short for "hyperlink." It's a way to connect a webpage to another. When you click on a link, a new page will open.

Over time, people began to use blogs to write personal comments and reflections **تأملات**. Blogs became a form of online journaling. Blogs provide a place for readers to write what they

think. Ideally, others will read the blog and comment on what they have read. This will result in an ongoing conversation. Many teachers now use blogs with their students. Some blogs just have news and information. These blogs do not usually lend themselves to comments.

People also use blogs to list other blogs they like or their favorite websites. Often a blog will focus on a particular topic or issue **قضية**. Blogs may contain links to other websites, pictures, lists or videos. On the Internet, the blog **displays** the most recent entries first. Blogs allow some people to communicate with each other on different topics. This allows people to create their own publishing space with information, links, and ideas they may want to share.

- A hyperlink connects
 - games
 - computers
 - webpages
 - mice
- Which type of blog usually gets fewer comments from readers?
 - Information blogs
 - Personal blogs
 - Cooking blogs
 - Unknown blogs
- Why would someone want to create a blog?
 - To try to use the telephone less
 - Because the Internet won't work without it
 - Because the teacher said to
 - To communicate with others online
- People used web logs to
 - make new web sites
 - make the blogs work steadily
 - hack into new systems
 - list links to different websites
- Why did people use blogs?
 - to provide a place for readers
 - to write personal comments and reflections
 - to make discoveries
 - to stop conversations among adults
- How can we achieve continuous conversations on blogs?
 - By writing and reading comments on blogs
 - By encouraging chat on the blogs
 - By encouraging people to stop writing
 - By making people speak a lot
- The underlined word "**displays**" means
 - parade
 - despair
 - frustrate
 - ignite
- Blogs allow people to communicate with each other on topic(s).
 - a single
 - various
 - trivial
 - unpopular

E. Writing

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- With which of the following can we finish a formal email?
 - Bye
 - Thanks
 - See you soon
 - LOL
- In a formal email, use
 - complete sentences
 - proper grammar
 - colloquial words
 - both a and b
- You can use a/an..... in an informal email only.
 - preposition
 - sentence
 - word
 - emoji
- Adding your name in the email is the
 - signature
 - address
 - greeting
 - header

2. Write about (180 - 200) words on one of the following:

- The advantages of learning a second language.
- The dangers of internet addiction.

3. Write a paragraph of Six lines on the following:

- A mystery story.
- Useful tips on good study habits.

F. The Novel

- Answer the following questions:

- Why does Edmond return to his city in disguise instead of showing himself openly? (SB)
- Do you think Edmond's revenge is justified after so many years? Why or why not? (SB)
- If someone betrayed you deeply, would you choose forgiveness or revenge? Explain your reasoning. (SB)

Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonyms	Antonyms
compliment	مجاملة / يمدح	praise / flattery	criticism / insult
genuine	صديق	sincere / authentic	fake / insincere
hospitable	مضيف	welcoming / cordial	inhospitable / unwelcoming
individualistic	مستقل / فردي	self-reliant / autonomous	conformist / dependent
patronize	يدعم / يرفع	favor / condescend	criticize / offend
politeness	الأدب / التهذب	courtesy / civility	rudeness / discourtesy
spontaneous	عفوي / تلقائي	impulsive / instinctive	deliberate / calculated
thoughtful	مراع للمشاعر / لطيف	attentive / mindful	thoughtless / inconsiderate
unhesitatingly	بلا تردد	promptly / decisively	reluctantly / uncertainly
verbally	شفهيا	orally / spoken	in writing / nonverbally

Key Vocabulary

hospitality	كرم الضيافة	backpacking	سفر بحقيبة ظهر	shelter	مأوى
gesture	إيماءة / يشير (يدل)	generosity	الكرم	collectivist	مؤيد للجماعية

Vocabulary & Prepositions

diary	يوميات / مذكرات	hesitating	متردد	feel natural	يبدو طبيعيا
honour	الشرف / التكريم	expressions	تعبيرات	detailed	مفصل / تفصيلي
connection	الترايط	acts of service	خدمات	non-verbally	غير شفهيا
volunteer	يتطوع / متطوع	acts of charity	أعمال الخير	daily tasks	مهام يومية
behave	يتصرف	no matter	لا يهم	highly valued	تقدر للغاية
behaviour	تصرف / سلوك	a sign of	علامة على	personally	شخصيا
well-mannered	حسن السلوك	bow	ينحني	unforgettable	لا يُنسى
foreigner	شخص أجنبي	immediately	مباشرة / في الحال	break down	تتعطل (سيارة)
send away	يطرد	at a high price	بسر عالي	elderly	عجوز
incredibly	بشكل مذهل	helpless	بلا عون	unexpectedly	بشكل غير متوقع
wonderfully	بشكل عجيب	on a budget	بميزانية قليلة	insist on / persist in	يصر على
historic city	مدينة تاريخية	grateful for	ممتن لشيء	key parts of	أجزاء هامة من
spontaneity	العفوية	grateful to	ممتن لشخص	core part of	جزء أساسي من
patron (n)	راعي / داعم	felt lost	شعر بالضياح	touched (moved) by	متأثر بـ
for free	مجانا	wherever	أينما	touching (moving)	مؤثر
omit	يحذف	whenever	وَقَتَمَا	linked to	مرتبطة بـ
entry	مدخل	pay for	يدفع ثمن / يدفع بدلا من	incomplete	ناقص
extend gesture	يقدم إيماءات	well-fed	يأكل جيدا	based on	معتمد على

Idioms - Collocations - Expressions

Middle Eastern cultures	ثقافات الشرق الأوسط	carry deep meaning about	يحمل معنى عميقاً حول
a positive remark about	تعليق إيجابي حول	in a friendly way	بطريقة ودودة
give a ride home to	يوصل ... بالسيارة	genuinely heartfelt	صانقة من القلب
a one-on-one act	فعل واحد لواحد (مباشر)	make (earn) money	يكسب مالا
smiled the whole time	ابتسم طوال الوقت	go to great lengths to	بيذل جهداً أكبر

Language Notes

respectable / respected	يحترمه الناس	respectful	محترم (يحترم الناس)
way (method) to + N/inf.	طريق (طريقة) لـ	way (method) of + V.ing / اسم	طريقة لـ
think of	يفكر في	think about	يعتقد عن (رأى)
couple	اثان / زوج من شينان يفصلان	pair	زوج من شينان لا يفصلان
tasty	حلو المذاق / لذيذ الطعم	tasteful	حسن الذوق
similar (to)	متشابه / مشابه (جزئياً)	the same (as)	متماثل (مثل) كلياً
later	فيما بعد	the latter	الأخير بين اثنين
hear of / about	يسمع عن	hear from	يتلقى أخبار من شخص
proud of + V.ing / اسم	فخور بـ	proud to + مصدر / that + جملة	فخور أن

Vocabulary Question Bank أسئلة الكلمات

A. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- The customer offered a compliment about the meal. An antonym for "compliment" is
a. praise b. criticism c. insult d. admiration e. flattery
- His apology sounded genuine, so I accepted it. A synonym for "genuine" is
a. sincere b. fake c. insincere d. false e. authentic
- He placed great value on hard work and honesty. A synonym for "value" is
a. worth b. insignificance c. worthlessness d. significance e. disregard
- The shop assistant was very friendly and helpful. A synonym for "friendly" is
a. sociable b. hostile c. rude d. cold e. amiable
- She is hospitable and welcomes guests warmly. A synonym for "hospitable" is
a. friendly b. welcoming c. unwelcoming d. inhospitable e. cold
- He unhesitatingly shared his meal with the child. An antonym for "unhesitatingly" is
a. immediately b. decisively c. promptly d. hesitantly e. reluctantly
- Many locals patronize the small café. An antonym for "patronize" is
a. ignore b. neglect c. condescend d. favour e. support
- Their laughter was spontaneous and true. A synonym for "spontaneous" is
a. deliberate b. calculated c. planned d. unplanned e. impulsive
- She wasn't aware of the risks before making the investment. An antonym for "aware" is ..
a. conscious b. mindful c. oblivious d. alert e. ignorant
- These two cars are remarkably similar in colour. An antonym for "similar" is
a. different b. contrasting c. alike d. comparable e. resembling
- Individualistic societies encourage personal goals. An antonym for "individualistic" is
a. independent b. dependent c. self-reliant d. autonomous e. collectivist
- He patronized our business and enlarged it. A synonym for "patronize" is
a. support b. favour c. offend d. neglect e. ignore

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- She made a positive about the student's project, which encouraged him to work harder.
a. mark b. remarkable c. marque d. remark
- The teacher decided to give a home to the student who missed the bus.
a. riddle b. ride c. ready d. dime
- Coaching a young athlete often requires a act of guidance and support.
a. one-on-one b. one-by-one c. one-in-one d. one to one
- Traditional songs often deep meaning about a community's history.
a. take b. save c. carry d. rescue
- The officer explained the rules to make travelers feel comfortable.
a. in a friendly way b. friendly c. friendliness d. unfriendly
- His apology was heartfelt, and everyone could sense his sincerity.
a. untruly b. savagely c. genuinely d. wrongly
- Many artists struggle to money through their work despite their talent.
a. win b. earn c. make d. both b and c
- Parents often go to great to ensure their children feel supported.
a. lengths b. strengths c. weaknesses d. shortens
- She the chef on the delicious meal he prepared.
a. compacted b. connected c. surrendered d. complimented
- The smile she gave was completely and full of warmth.
a. giant b. genius c. garment d. genuine
- The villagers were incredibly and welcomed the travelers into their homes.
a. hostile b. hesitant c. hospitable d. hierarchical
- His impressed the interview panel and helped him secure the job.
a. impoliteness b. politely c. impolitely d. politeness
- She gave a speech that moved the entire audience.
a. spontaneous b. spontaneously c. spontaneity d. sponsored
- He bought a/an gift that showed he understood her interests well.
a. thoughtless b. thoughtful c. insulating d. insulting
- The firefighter entered the burning building to save the child.
a. unhesitating b. hesitant c. hesitation d. unhesitatingly
- He toward the map to show the correct route.
a. gathered b. gestured c. groaned d. grinned
- The organization homeless families during the winter storm.
a. shivered b. shuttered c. sheltered d. shrugged
- In societies, individuals often prioritize group needs over personal desires.
a. individualistic b. collectivist c. singular d. uploaded
- She spent the summer through Europe on a tight budget.
a. backpacking b. pocketing c. breaking d. separating
- The villagers' left a deep and lovely impression on the travelers.
a. generosity b. insult c. humiliation d. terror
- It was a/an to receive the award from the university.
a. donor b. doer c. honour d. horror
- Internet is essential for students studying online.
a. convention b. tradition c. connection d. custom
- She decided to at the children's hospital to help them during her vacation.
a. volunteer b. steer c. eradicate d. estimate
- The teacher praised the student's good in class.
a. murmur b. manure c. behaviour d. savior

25. She raised her children to be and considerate.
 a. ill-mannered b. murdered c. well-mannered d. good behaviour
26. The mountain view was beautiful at sunrise.
 a. credible b. incredibility c. credibility d. incredibly
27. The event was organized with food and music.
 a. wonder b. wonderfully c. wondered d. wonderful
28. Archaeologists discovered new ruins beneath the city.
 a. historian b. historical c. history d. historic
29. His made every trip exciting and unpredictable.
 a. spontaneity b. spontaneous c. spontaneously d. unspontaneous
30. The museum's donated funds for a new exhibit.
 a. portal b. patron c. pirate d. port
31. The guide offered to show them around the village free.
 a. in b. on c. with d. for
32. You may unnecessary details from your essay.
 a. add b. omit c. emit d. demerit
33. Her diary showed how emotional the day had been.
 a. introvert b. entry c. entrance d. eternal
34. They a gesture of friendship by sharing a meal.
 a. expanded b. attended c. extended d. intended
35. He knocked on the door after for a moment.
 a. situating b. positioning c. locating d. hesitating
36. In some cultures, of service are viewed as true expressions of love.
 a. sides b. aspects c. spectacles d. acts
37. The festival encouraged acts of toward the needy.
 a. charity b. safety c. gravity d. cavity
38. No the weather, he always goes for a morning walk.
 a. whether b. matter c. important d. significant
39. Offering tea is a/an of hospitality in many cultures.
 a. signal b. article c. sign d. assignment
40. In Japan, people to show respect.
 a. blow b. bow c. borrow d. empower
41. Students often travel on a to save money.
 a. wallet b. budget c. bracelet d. gadget
42. She was for the help she received during her trip.
 a. graceful b. grateful c. delight d. spitted
43. She felt when she arrived in the new country.
 a. missed b. lost c. least d. breast
44. he goes, people admire his kindness.
 a. Whoever b. Whenever c. Whichever d. Wherever
45. The animals on the farm looked healthy and
 a. fed good b. good food c. well-fed d. fed in good
46. Speaking in public didn't feel to her.
 a. neutral b. natural c. nature d. nurture
47. The report included a/an explanation of the results.
 a. detail b. details c. detailed d. in detail
48. The coach communicated through hand signals.
 a. verbally b. orally c. figuratively d. non-verbally
49. Cooperation is highly in group projects.
 a. veiled b. revealed c. valued d. volunteered

50. Cars often break on long road trips.
a. away b. out c. down d. off
51. She on paying the bill despite their protests.
a. resisted b. persisted c. insisted d. consisted
52. Honesty is a part of leadership.
a. chorus b. core c. sheer d. care
53. She was deeply by the children's handmade gifts. She wept.
a. tracked b. trimmed c. trifled d. touched
54. The president's speech brought many people to tears.
a. touched b. touching c. tricked d. trickery
55. Diet is strongly to overall health.
a. twinkled b. wrinkled c. mangled d. linked
56. The decision was on years of research.
a. depend b. based c. witnessed d. blessed
57. Students should be toward their teachers.
a. respectable b. respective c. respected d. respectful
58. The traveled through Europe on their honeymoon.
a. double b. pair c. couple d. twice
59. She studied history and biology, but preferred the
a. later b. letter c. litter d. latter
60. She felt proud be representing her school at the competition.
a. in b. of c. with d. to

خلاصة القواعد

Language: Quick Hints

Relative Clauses عبارات الوصل

١. جمل وصل أساسية تعطينا معلومات رئيسية لا يمكن الاستغناء عنها، ولا يمكن وضع تلك الجمل بين فاصلتين.

- The man **that** Ahmed met at the airport was from England.

٢. جمل وصل غير أساسية تعطينا معلومات غير هامة يمكن الاستغناء عنها، ويتم وضع تلك الجمل بين فاصلتين.

- لا يُستخدم ضمير الوصل **that** في هذا النوع من الجمل.

- Mr. Wong, **who** has just arrived in Egypt, works for an important Chinese factory.

1. **For people** للعائل:

فعل + فاعل عائل + **who / that**

- The person **who / that** does most of the cooking in my family is my mother.

فاعل + **whom/who/that** + مفعول عائل - This is the child **whom/who/that** I helped yesterday.

- عند وجود حرف جر مع المفعول العائل (يتم وضعه بطريقتين):

..... **whom** + حرف الجر + مفعول عائل / حرف الجر + **whom / who / that** + مفعول عائل

- Is this the boy **whom / who / that** you go with? = Is this the boy **with whom** you go?

2. **For things, animals and ideas** (غير العائل) للأشياء والحيوانات والأفكار (غير العائل):

- I work in a firm **which/ that** makes cars.

- The car **which/ that** I sold was better than this.

- Mona was ill, **which** made her unable to walk.

فعل + **which / that** + فاعل غير عائل
فاعل آخر + **which / that** + مفعول غير عائل
فعل / فاعل آخر + **which** + الفكرة

حرف الجر + **which / that** + مفعول غير عائل
..... **which** + حرف الجر + مفعول غير عائل

- عند وجود حرف جر مع المفعول غير العائل (يتم وضعه بطريقتين كما يلي):

- Is this the book **which / that** you were looking for? = Is this the book **for which**

- التعبيرات التالية لا تسبق سوى (whom) أو (which):

all of / some of / many of / none of / each of / much of / one of / three of / half of

- She asked me many questions, **none of which** I answered.

مقارنة بين (who / whom / which) و that

1. يُفضل استخدام (that) مع: all / any / every / few / many / no / none / some / little / much

- **All that** we need is peace. - **Everything that** you ordered has been delivered.

- لكن إذا جاء حرف الجر (of) بعد أي من الكلمات السابقة نستخدم (whom/ which) وليس (that):

- She bought four books, **all of which** are interesting. - That was **all that** he wanted.

2. لا نستخدم حرف جر قبل (that):

- Is that the book **that** you were looking for?

3. For possession للملكية

مملوك + whose + مالك (عقل / غير عقل)

- Christie, whose books were translated into many languages, was a famous writer.

4. For places مع الأماكن

هناك حالتين لاستخدام ضمير وصل مع الأماكن:

أ. عند وجود نشاط تم في المكان:

فاعل آخر + where + المكان

فاعل آخر + in / at / to which + المكان

in / at / to ... فاعل آخر + which / that + المكان

- This is the city **where** I was born.

- This is the city **in which** I was born.

- This is the city **which / that** I was born **in**.

ب. عند عدم وجود نشاط (المكان كغير عقل):

- This is the house **which / that** my father bought.

5. For times مع الأزمان (الفترة الزمنية)

هناك حالتين لاستخدام ضمير وصل مع الزمان:

أ. عند وجود نشاط تم في الزمان:

فاعل آخر + when / that + الزمان

فاعل آخر + in / at / on which + الزمان

in / at / on ... فاعل آخر + which + الزمان

- Summer is the season **when (in which)** I go there.

- Summer is the season **which / that** I go there **in**.

ب. عند عدم وجود نشاط (الزمان كغير عقل):

- Spring is the season **which / that** I love most of all.

6. what = the thing which / that

- We didn't know **what** happened. - Don't tell **what** he said.

حذف ضمير الوصل:

- نستطيع حذف ضمير الوصل الذي يعود على مفعول (who/ whom/ which/ that) دون أن نعوض عنه:

- The car **which** he bought is a wonderful one. The car.. he bought is a wonderful one.

- نستطيع حذف ضمير الوصل الذي يعود على فاعل بشرط أن نعوض عنه كالتالي:

فعل في المعلوم + who / which / that + فاعل (الذي يفعل) = فاعل + V.ing
فعل في المجهول + who / which / that + فاعل (الذي يفعل) = فاعل + P.P. (be + P.P.)

- The boy **sitting (who was sitting)** in the last row made a lot of noise.

- Paper **made (which is made)** from recycled materials is very cheap.

Grammar Question Bank بنك أسئلة القواعد

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Unfortunately, it was only a one-year guarantee came with the fridge. (LM)

a. what

b. that

c. where

d. who

2. Do you know the manager with I work? (LM)
 a. who's b. that c. whom d. whose
3. The accountant we employed last month is really efficient. (LM)
 a. what b. which c. whose d. no relative pronoun
4. The person acts are irresponsible is usually unreliable. (LM)
 a. whom b. who c. whose d. which
5. I read the book (LM)
 a. which you lent it to me b. you lent me c. what you lent me d. you lent it to me
6. She forgot to bring back her friend's camera, she had to apologise. (LM)
 a. which b. at which c. for which d. that
7. He showed me all he had brought from the book fair. (LM)
 a. what b. where c. which d. that
8. I don't know this strange man is coming from. (LM)
 a. who's b. who c. where d. that
9. Do you know your uncle is coming back from Algeria? (LM)
 a. where b. when c. who d. whose
10. Siwi is the language in parts of the south of the country. (LM)
 a. spoken b. which is speaking c. speaking d. which spoken
11. you say is unbelievable: the sun is not a planet! (LM)
 a. Which b. What c. That d. Who
12. Our civilisation, is the oldest in the world, is our source of pride. (LM)
 a. where b. what c. that d. which
13. I don't know making this noise, but all of you must keep quiet. (LM)
 a. whose b. who's c. that d. who
14. The TV I bought last month has started to give a very low sound. (LM)
 a. who b. that c. what d. when
15. I don't know the name of the factory in he works. (LM)
 a. what b. which c. where d. who
16. The man helped me was very kind. (SB)
 a. whom b. whose c. who d. which
17. Cultures value community often show more hospitality. (SB)
 a. where b. whom c. which d. who
18. The family invited me for dinner was incredibly kind. (SB)
 a. whom b. that is c. who d. whose
19. Istanbul, is Turkey's largest city, is famous for its hospitality. (SB)
 a. what b. that c. whose d. which
20. The moment I arrived, they offered me tea and food. (SB)
 a. whom b. which c. where d. when
21. The guest house we stayed had a very friendly owner. (SB)
 a. where b. which c. which in d. in where
22. The woman daughter speaks English helped translate for us. (SB)
 a. who's b. whom c. whose d. whom is
23. The man the black suit is my uncle. (SB)
 a. whom b. who c. in d. whose
24. The paramedics helped the man injured. (SB)
 a. who was b. who c. who had d. whom
25. Three boys, names I don't know, were sent out of school for bad behaviour. (SB)
 a. whom b. these c. their d. whose
26. I haven't opened the parcel yet. (SB)
 a. you sent it b. it was sent c. which sent d. you sent
27. The crime last night was a terrible one. (SB)
 a. it was discovered b. was discovered c. which discovered d. discovered

28. A woman very long hair came and asked to meet the manager.
 a. whose b. whom c. with d. who
29. The conference we attended was fruitful.
 a. at which b. in which c. where d. which
30. This is the company I have worked for since I graduated.
 a. where b. whom c. which d. whose
31. The party we were invited was not interesting.
 a. which b. to which c. in which d. at which
32. Do you know for reason he married her?
 a. why b. which c. whom d. whose
33. She always borrows her books from the local library in the middle of town.
 a. no word b. when c. which d. where
34. Please, repeat you have said again.
 a. whose b. that c. what d. which
35. This is a terrible mistake I think you should apologize.
 a. on which b. about which c. for which d. to which
36. The man next door to me is a politician.
 a. who living b. lives c. who live d. living
37. The man wearing the white shirt is my uncle.
 a. no word b. whom c. who d. that
38. She used to go to meetings she learned to read and write at.
 a. which b. at which c. for which d. when
39. In fact, I agree with saying.
 a. what are you b. that are you c. that you are d. what you are
40. Yesterday, I played a long game of tennis with my friend, made me very tired.
 a. who b. when c. whose d. which
41. The coach, won the cup, was very pleased.
 a. who plays b. whom plays c. whose plays d. whose players
42. I don't know speak with about the loan.
 a. whom should I b. who should I c. I should d. whom I should
43. He left for Luxor, the city he lives in.
 a. where b. when c. in which d. no pronoun
44. I want to know her.
 a. why he married b. what he married c. why did he marry d. what did he marry
45. The house is really comfortable.
 a. which he bought b. that he bought it c. where he bought d. where he bought in
46. Luxor, is famous for historical sites.
 a. where I live in b. I live c. which I live d. where I live
47. The woman at the back is very angry.
 a. sits b. who sit c. who sitting d. sitting
48. Can you name the actress plays Cleopatra?
 a. which b. whom c. who d. this
49. This is all I wanted to tell you about them.
 a. this b. which c. whom d. that
50. Shikabala, known as "AlAbatshi", is a wonderful player.
 a. whom b. whose c. who d. no word
51. Friday is the day I meet my friends on.
 a. when b. which c. whose d. where
52. Sara made a suggestion Nasr objected. (2025 - Exp.)
 a. which b. to which c. that d. on which
53. Trees in rainforests can reach a height more than 30 metres. (2025 - Exp.)
 a. grows b. grown c. are grown d. grew

54. My father always donates for charities and poor people, is kind of him. (2025 – Exp.)
 a. which b. that c. who d. whom
55. My mum admired the car (2025 – Exp.)
 a. I bought b. that I bought it c. which I bought for d. I bought it
56. The children who live there speak Siwi. The pronoun "who" here refers to a/an
 a. an object b. a thing c. a place d. a subject
57. The furniture factory is the place my friend works at.
 a. who b. where c. which d. whose
58. do you go to school with?
 a. That b. When c. Whom d. Whose
59. The hotel the company built is fantastic.
 a. where b. in which c. whose d. which
60. 1973 is the year our great army defeated the Israelis in.
 a. when b. which c. in which d. in that

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. I told my mother about my success before anyone else. (that)
2. Mr. Ali works for an important Chinese factory. He's just arrived in Egypt. (who)
3. Ahmed's wife was a famous American poet. Her name was Sylvia. (whose)
4. My cousin has bought a house in Port Said. He is 30 this weekend. (who)
5. The hotel is very modern and it is also expensive. (which)
6. We were staying in this hotel. (where)
7. I spend my summer holiday in Alex. (where)
8. The Olympic Games were held in the USA in 1998. (when)
9. Saad lives in Sinai. He travels to Cairo every day. (who)
10. The books written by Naguib Mahfouz are amusing. (which)
11. He went to Alex last summer. He spent a holiday there. (where)
12. The captain of the team himself scored the goal. (It was)
13. The Hawk in the Rain was Ted Hughes's first book. It was published in 1957. (which)
14. My pen-friends never visited Egypt. They are coming to Cairo this weekend. (who)
15. Hassan's uncle travels all over the world. His home is in Alexandria. (whose)
16. 2015 was very hot. My brother started university then. (when)
17. Mostafa Fathy is the best player in Egypt. He scores fantastic goals. (who)
18. That's the boy. His dog bit me last Friday. (whose)
19. We have our meetings on Mondays. (Mondays)
20. That is the fat man. I told you about him yesterday. (whom)

ملخص مهارات الكتابة

Writing Skills: Hints

كتابة اليوميات

- A diary (a personal record of the daily life, thoughts and feelings) includes:
- Date & Day → Monday, 29th September 2025. - Greeting → "Dear Diary"
 - Introduction → a short opening line (clear sentence) about what you're writing about.
 - * Today, I felt because * My favorite part of the day was
 - * I laughed when * I learned something new: * I wish I could
 - Body → Main events, feelings.
 - Conclusion → End with a closing thought, wish or reflection.
 - Describe the events of the day in order.
 - End your writing with positive lines.

Exercises on Writing Skills

- The main purpose of a diary is to
 - record your experiences
 - publish your secrets
 - write imaginary stories
 - list the scores of your team
- A diary is primarily a
 - public newspaper article.
 - personal record of daily life.
 - fictional story.
 - formal letter to a friend.
- What is the first thing you should write at the top of a diary entry?
 - Only your name.
 - The weather forecast.
 - The day and the full date.
 - A drawing of your day.
- Which of the following is an example of a good opening sentence for a diary entry?
 - The sky is blue.
 - Today was an absolutely amazing day!
 - I like sushi.
 - Tomorrow is Monday.
- A good way to end a diary entry is to end with
 - full address
 - a list of things you hate
 - a question the reader must answer
 - a positive thought or a wish
- The "conclusion" of a diary entry includes
 - a reflection
 - a new story
 - a list of people
 - the time you woke up
- The main part of a diary entry, where you describe events and feelings, is called
 - body
 - greeting
 - conclusion
 - introduction
- The phrase "I felt very excited" is most likely a part of the in a diary.
 - conclusion
 - greeting
 - date
 - body

تفارين على القواعد التراكمية (لأعادة: العائات في الماضي / used to / would)

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I in a small village, but I moved to live in Alexandria when I joined university. (LM)
 - am living
 - used to live
 - would live
 - will live
- I up early on Fridays, but now I like to get up early every day. (LM)
 - got
 - won't get
 - use to get
 - didn't use to get
- He would always go to the cinema on Thursdays. He to it on Thursdays. (LM)
 - is used to going
 - used to go
 - always goes
 - never went
- My father to work when he was young, but nowadays he uses his car. (LM)
 - would always walk
 - didn't use to walk
 - is used to walking
 - always walks
- football when he was a child? (LM)
 - Does he play
 - Would he played
 - Is he used to playing
 - Did he use to play
- He no longer smokes as he (LM)
 - would be do
 - used to do
 - is used to doing
 - never used to do
- She in the village, but she moved to Cairo last year. (LM)
 - would live
 - used to live
 - is used to living
 - will live
- Did you practise the piano?
 - use to
 - would be
 - would
 - used to
- When I was young, my father tell me stories before I went to bed.
 - did
 - would
 - used to
 - all of them
- When I was in France, I always meet interesting people.
 - would be
 - would
 - was used to
 - used to

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- She usually gets up late in the morning. (is used to) (2004)
- Sandra used to go to school on foot when she was a pupil. (usually)
- I'm in the habit of drinking tea after lunch. (used)

4. A keyboard is used to type words on the computer.
 5. I usually went sightseeing when I was in Luxor.
 6. Samy used to be fat.

(used for)
 (would)
 (no longer)

General Question Bank (Unit 10) بنك الأسئلة العام على الوحدة

A. Vocabulary

1. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. She values individualistic behavior over cooperation. A synonym for "individualistic" is
 a. collectivist b. self-reliant c. autonomous d. dependent e. conformist
2. The students were very respectful during the ceremony. An antonym for "respectful" is
 a. courteous b. disrespectful c. rude d. polite e. considerate
3. Buying a small gift is a thoughtful way to show care. A synonym for "thoughtful" is
 a. considerate b. careless c. inconsiderate d. mindful e. thoughtless
4. His spontaneous jokes always make everyone laugh. A synonym for "spontaneous" is
 a. impulsive b. instinctive c. planned d. deliberate e. calculated

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Many local residents the small shops to help support the community.
 a. patronize b. estimate c. sterilize d. communize
2. The hikers found a in the woods to escape the storm.
 a. shutter b. shelter c. shadow d. shine
3. He felt when he arrived in the unfamiliar city.
 a. missed b. miss c. lost d. defeater
4. His fashion choices are very, and he never copies trends
 a. collectivist b. group c. massive d. individualistic
5. Western cultures often emphasize over collective responsibility.
 a. individualism b. patronization c. commission d. involvement
6. She was fully of the challenges ahead.
 a. ware b. a ware c. aware d. warrant
7. It's important to express your feelings, not just in writing.
 a. visually b. invisibly c. verbally d. casually
8. The family's made me feel at home instantly.
 a. hospitality b. hospitable c. hostility d. hostile
9. I was by her dedication to helping the poor.
 a. moving b. moved c. removing d. removed
10. He made a kind by helping the elderly woman cross the street.
 a. reassure b. flatter c. gesture d. mature
11. She gave me a/an on my new haircut. I was happy with it.
 a. compliment b. insult c. criticism d. wisdom
12. He declined the invitation to the party.
 a. impolite b. polite c. bilateral d. politely

B. Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Luxor, monuments are famous, attracts tourists from all over the world. (LM)
 a. what b. which c. that d. whose
2. My uncle works for the company has developed a vaccine against COVID-19. (LM)
 a. which b. what c. where d. whose
3. Mr Kareem, lives in Luxor, assures tourists will experience hospitality. (LM)
 a. who b. that c. whom d. which

4. These famous sonnets are poems by Shakespeare on a variety of themes. (LM)
 a. were written b. written c. which written d. writing
5. In the past, Britain had a great empire the sun never set on. (LM)
 a. what b. where c. which d. whose
6. Cleopatra was the last of the Ptolemies ruled Egypt for 300 years. (LM)
 a. whose b. whom c. which d. who
7. Al Azhar Park, we used to go, is currently being renovated. (LM)
 a. where b. that c. which d. who
8. Mr Amin, retired, enjoys spending a lot of time with his grandchildren. (LM)
 a. whom b. that c. who's d. whose
9. My neighbour's baby, I am caring for, is currently in the hospital. (LM)
 a. whose b. that c. who's d. whom
10. This is the interesting novel I wanted to lend you. (LM)
 a. what b. that c. where d. who

2. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Maria works for a supermarket. It buys vegetables from France. (The supermarket)
2. President Nasser died in 1970. (when)
3. My sister studied in France. She got her PhD from France. (where)
4. The woman screaming there has lost her child. (who)

C. Translation

1. The reopening of beaches comes as a relief for many beachgoers who regard the Mediterranean city of Alexandria as one of their favourite resort destinations.

- أ. يأتي افتتاح الشواطئ بمثابة مصدر راحة لكثير من مصيفين الشواطئ الذين ينقرون إلى مدينة الإسكندرية على البحر الأبيض المتوسط كواحدة من جناتهم المصيفية المفضلة.
- ب. تأتي إعادة فتح الشواطئ بمثابة مصدر استجمام لكثير من مرتادي الشواطئ الذين يعتبرون مدينة الإسكندرية على البحر الأبيض المتوسط واحدة من جناتهم المصيفية المفضلة.
- ج. تعود الشواطئ المفتوحة جديدا بمثابة مصدر ارتياح لكثير من مرتادي الشواطئ الذين يعتبرون مدينة الإسكندرية على البحر الأبيض المتوسط واحدة من وجهاتهم المصيفية المفضلة.
- د. تأتي إعادة فتح الشواطئ بمثابة مصدر ارتياح لكثير من مرتادي الشواطئ الذين يعتبرون مدينة الإسكندرية على البحر الأبيض المتوسط واحدة من وجهاتهم المصيفية المفضلة.

2. The World Health Organisation estimates that "close to one billion people are living with a mental disorder, three million people die every year from the harmful use of alcohol, and one person dies every 40 seconds by suicide".

- أ. تحدد منظمة الصحة العالمية أن "ما يتجاوز من مليار شخص يعيشون باضطراب عقلي، يموت ثلاثة ملايين شخص كل عام من الاستخدام الضار للكحول، ويموت شخص واحد كل أربعين ثانية بالانتحار".
- ب. تحدد منظمة الصحة العالمية أن "ما يتجاوز من مليار شخص يعيشون باضطراب عقلي، يموت ثلاثة ملايين شخص كل عام من استخدام الكحول بضرر، ويموت شخص واحد كل أربعين ثانية بالانتحار".
- ج. تقدر منظمة الصحة العالمية أن "ما يقرب من مليار شخص يعيشون باضطراب عقلي، يموت ثلاثة ملايين شخص كل عام من الاستخدام الضار للكحول، ويموت شخص واحد كل أربعين ثانية بالانتحار".
- د. تقدر منظمة العالم الصحي أن "ما يقرب من مليار شخص يعيشون باضطراب ذهني، يموت ثلاثة ملايين شخص كل عام من الاستخدام المنضمر للكحول، ويموت شخص واحد كل أربعين ثانية بالانتحار".
3. استكملت مصر بناء المتحف المصري الكبير ليصبح أكبر متاحف العالم من حيث القطع الأثرية التي يحتويها ومساحته.

- a. Egypt completed the instruction of the Grand Egyptian Museum with that it will become the worlds' largest museum in frame of the artifacts it contains and its area.
- b. Egypt completed the construction of the Grand Egyptian Museum so that it will become the world's largest museum in terms of the artifacts it contains and its area.
- c. Egypt completed the construction of the Grand Egyptian Museum so in that it will become the world's largest museum in frame of the artificial it contains and its era.
- d. Egypt completed the construction of the Grand Egyptian Museum so that it will become the world's largest museum in terms of the artificial it contains and it's area.

٤ نقص الحديد يؤدي إلى فقر الدم وضعف الذاكرة وعدم القدرة على التركيز.

- Iron efficiency leads to anemia, poor memory and the disability to concentrate.
- Iron deficiency leads to anemia, poor memory and the disability to commemorate.
- Iron deficiency leads to anemia, poor memory and the inability to concentrate.
- Iron efficiency leads to anemia, poor memory and the inability to commemorate.

D. Reading Comprehension

1. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Rainforests are very warm, wet forests. Rain falls for days and even months. Rainforests have millions of different types of plants and animals. They live in the four different zones مناطق of the rainforest. The first zone is called the emergent zone المنطفة الناشئة. This is high above the rainforest. Here, giant trees stretch higher than the average height of any of the other plants. Many birds and insects live here. The second zone is the canopy المظلة. This is the leafy area of the tops of the trees. Most of the animals in the rainforest live here. You can find monkeys, parrots, and frogs up here. You can also find butterflies, snakes, and sloths حيوان الكسلان. A sloth is a very slow-moving animal that hangs upside down from the trees.

The understory is the third zone. It is made up of mostly young trees and shrubs شجيرات. It is dark and cool. It is under the leaves, but not on the ground. The forest floor is the final zone of the rainforest. The largest animals, such as jaguars and even elephants usually live here. The forest floor is also home to millions and millions of insects!

- In which zone would you most likely find a large animal, such as a jaguar?
 - emergent zone
 - canopy
 - understory
 - forest floor
- As to the passage, how many types of plants and animals live in the rainforest?
 - trillions
 - millions
 - gazillions
 - thousands
- Which is the highest zone in the rainforest?
 - forest floor
 - emergent
 - canopy
 - understory
- In this passage, *zone* probably means
 - time zone
 - area under water
 - part or section
 - area where no animals live
- The best title for this passage can be
 - Tropical rainforests
 - Kinds of deserts
 - The canopy
 - High Trees
- The is made up of mostly young trees and shrubs.
 - emergent zone
 - canopy
 - understory
 - forest floor
- Where is the emergent zone in the rainforests?
 - In the leafy area of the tops of the trees.
 - High above the rainforest.
 - Where there are mostly young trees and shrubs.
 - In the final zone of the rainforest.
- The underlined word "here" indicates to
 - the emergent zone
 - the canopy
 - the birds
 - the plants

2. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

In 2001, Matt Nagle was a 25-year-old football star. Then one night he had a bad accident that resulted in his spinal cord الحبل الشوكي being cut. Matt was paralyzed مشلول from the neck down. He could not do anything alone. He couldn't even breathe by himself. Doctors kept working to make better equipment for people like Matt to stay alive. Science labs kept doing research to try and find answers. They were trying to make machines to help paralyzed patients. A company who does research on brains was searching for ways to use brain waves. They chose Matt as the first person to try a new technology. They wanted to do an experiment that used machines to carry out instructions from inside the brain.

In June 2004, the doctors implanted a chip شريحة into Matt's brain. This chip could run machines with his thoughts. Matt could send simple messages to a computer with this chip. He could change channels on the TV, play computer games and turn lights on and off. All of these things he could do just by thinking about them. Matt worked for months to move the messages

from his brain to the computer. It was very hard. The technology was difficult. The doctors were worried the chip might injure Matt's body or hurt his brain and thinking. Matt wanted to fight to get better. He kept fighting to make things better for other people like himself.

- "Implanted a chip into Matt's brain" means
 - planted a flower in his brain
 - placed a computer chip into his brain
 - added cookies to his brain
 - placed tortilla chips in his brain
- What did the doctors worry would happen when they put the chip into Matt's brain?
 - There would be damage to his mind and to his body.
 - He would get cancer.
 - He would start singing and dancing.
 - He would start swimming and golfing.
- What can Matt use his mind to do?
 - type letters, dial the phone, and play cards
 - run, jump, and dance
 - turn lights on and off and play computer games
 - play football
- From reading this passage, we can guess that Matt was a person who
 - didn't like to do hard things.
 - was a show off.
 - never gave up.
 - yelled a lot.
- What is the best *title* for this passage?
 - Brain machine
 - Brain drain
 - Brain Power
 - Brain disability
- The underlined word "*paralyzed*" has the same meaning as
 - cultured
 - smart
 - disabled
 - stingy
- What is the chip used for?
 - It could run machines with his thoughts
 - It could create new thoughts
 - It could receive instructions from brain
 - It could delete the terrible thoughts
- Doctors tried to make better equipment for the disabled
 - to improve their lives
 - to help them stay alone
 - to receive more information
 - not to go to schools

E. Writing

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We use "*However*" in a paragraph or an essay to express
 - summary
 - contrast
 - addition
 - introduction
- When you write a/an essay, you mention the pros and cons of something.
 - narrative
 - opinion
 - future
 - curative
- Use a to show a separation of ideas within the structure of a sentence.
 - full stop
 - comma
 - period
 - question mark
- The following sentence "In the end, the value of a non-smoking nation is not in pounds, but the good health of the people is the true value for us all." is always used as ... sentence.
 - a concluding
 - a topic
 - an example
 - a detail

2. Write about (180 – 200) words on one of the following:

- Gender equality المساواة بين الجنسين
- The best decision you have made in your life.

3. Write a paragraph of Six lines on the following:

- A diary entry about an exciting event that happened to you yesterday.
- A diary entry about a very embarrassing situation you experienced last night.

F. The Novel

- Answer the following questions:

- How does Edmond's new wealth give him power that he never had before? (SB)
- Do you agree that using deception can sometimes be justified if the goal is justice? Why or why not? (SB)
- If you suddenly gained great wealth and influence, what would be the first change you would make in your society? (SB)

Word	Meaning	Synonyms	Antonyms
appreciate	يقدر	value / recognize	underestimate / disregard
cheerful	مبهج	joyful / lively	gloomy / miserable
discipline	نظام / انضباط	self-control / order	chaos / disorder
fade	يبهت / يضعف	diminish / vanish	intensify / appear
flow	يتدفق / ينساب	stream / run / pour	block / stagnate
imagery	تصوير / رمزية	symbolism / visualization	vagueness / obscurity
isolating	عازل / منعزل	lonely / secluding / remote	inclusive / connecting
magical	سحري	enchanting / mystical	mundane / dull
optional	اختياري	voluntary / elective	mandatory / compulsory
rejection	رفض / إنكار	denial / dismissal	acceptance / approval

Key Vocabulary

dialog	الحوار الفني	struggle	الكفاح	style	أسلوب
morals	عظات / دروس أخلاقية	prose	النثر	rhythm	الإيقاع
fiction	أدب خيالي	wisdom	الحكمة	daffodil	الترنجس
non-fiction	أدب غير قصصي	escape	مهرب (للترفيه)	breeze	نسيم / نسمة
cultural roots	جذور ثقافية	feedback	تعليق / تغذية راجعة	tone	نغمة / نبرة
literature	الأدب	theme	موضوع / محور	memory	ذكرى

Vocabulary & Prepositions

image	بصور / صورة	fictional	خيالي	poem	قصيدة
wander lonely	يتجول وحيدا	non-fictional	واقعي	plays	مسرحيات
disciplined	منضبط / منظم	isolation	العزلة	enjoy most	يستمتع به كثيرا
seek (sought) to	يسعى إلى	entertainment	التسلية	rhyme with	يتناغم مع
drama	دراما / مسرح / صراع	argue a point	يجادل في أمر	characters	شخصيات فنية
audiences	المتفرجون	think deeply	يفكر بعمق	personality	طباع الشخصية
folktales	الحكايات الشعبية	capture emotions	بأسر مشاعر	on stage	على المسرح
reflect	يعكس	in a new light	من منظور جديد	purpose	غرض
quest	رحلة بحث (سعي)	unlike	على عكس	author	مؤلف
ancestors	الأجداد	cut off	منبوذ	voices	أصوات الشخصيات
loneliness	الوحدة	refusal	رفض	inspiration	إلهام
talented	موهوب	publish	ينشر كتابا	get free from	يتحرر من
origin	الأصل	make sense of	يفهم / يستوعب	view (opinion)	رأي
cope with	يسائر / يجاري	believe in	يؤمن بـ	draft	مسودة كتابية
rhyme scheme	مخطط قافية	appreciative of	مقدر لـ	playwright	كاتب مسرحي

context	السباق	classics	الأعمال الكلاسيكية	piece of literature	عمل أدبي
intensify	يكثف	classical works	أعمال تقليدية	absolute	مطلق
slightly	بدرجة طفيفة	celebrity	الشهرة / أحد المشاهير	rhetorical	بلاغي
scene	مشهد	feel peaceful	يهذا	visual language	لغة بصرية
excerpt from	مقتطف من	clearly / vividly	بوضوح	main feature	سمة رئيسية
spirit	الروح	philosophical	فلسفي	logic	المنطق
sway	يتمايل	flutter	يرفرف	long lines	أبيات طويلة

Idioms - Collocations - Expressions

come in many forms	يأتي بأشكال عدة	offer a window into	يفتح نافذة إلى
bring you into another world	تدخلك عالماً آخر	works of fiction	أعمال خيالية
bring stories to life	يجعل القصص حقيقية	explore inner thoughts	يستكشف أفكار داخلية
natural speech patterns	أنماط كلام طبيعية	passed from to	تنتقل من ... إلى
attend writing classes	يتكلم في نروس كتابة	gain wisdom	يكتسب الحكمة
caught my eye	لفتت انتباهي	worlds far beyond my own	بعيدة عن عالمي
around the corner	قاب قوسين أو أدنى	touch the heart	تؤثر في المشاعر
a host of golden daffodils	حشد من نرجس ذهبي	historical references	مراجع تاريخية

Language Notes

compared to (with)	بالمقارنة مع	comparable to (with)	يمكن مقارنته مع
..... or	نغمة / نبرة	tune	أخنية
conversation	بجانب	besides + V.ing / N	بالإضافة إلى
depend (rely/count) on	سواء ... أم	whether or not	سواء أم لا
hero	حوار مسموع	dialogue / dialog	محادثة مكتوبة / حوار فني
biography	يعتمد على	be based on	معتمد على / قائم على
	بطل أسطوري أو تاريخي أو شعبي	champion	بطل رياضي في مسابقة
	سيرة ذاتية لشخص عن آخر	autobiography	سيرة لشخص عن نفسه

Vocabulary Question Bank بنك أسئلة الكلمات

A. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- Fiction helps writers express ideas and emotions. A synonym for "fiction" is
a. non-fiction b. fact c. novel d. reality e. narrative
- Imagery uses vivid language to help readers visualize scenes. A synonym of "imagery" is ...
a. abstraction b. visualization c. symbolism d. vagueness e. obscurity
- Greed is the root of all evil. A synonym for "root" is
a. surface b. outcome c. tip d. origin e. source
- Climbing the steep mountain was a struggle. An antonym for "struggle" is
a. comfort b. challenge c. ease d. fight e. effort
- Reading is my favorite way to escape from stress. A synonym for "escape" is
a. refuge b. get away c. confront d. captivate e. entrap
- An isolating language keeps words unchanged. An antonym for "isolating" is
a. lonely b. connecting c. social d. remote e. cut off

7. Wearing a hat is optional during the school trip. A synonym for "optional" is
- a. voluntary b. mandatory c. compulsory d. required e. elective
8. She felt cheerful after hearing the good news. An antonym for "cheerful" is
- a. lively b. gloomy c. joyful d. miserable e. happy
9. He enjoys listening to classical music in the evenings. An antonym for "classical" is
- a. modern b. contemporary c. timeless d. traditional e. ancient
10. Using bright colors can enhance the appearance of a room. A synonym for "enhance" is
- a. boost b. diminish c. weaken d. reduce e. strengthen
11. His memory of the event started to fade after many years. An antonym for "fade" is
- a. vanish b. weaken c. strengthen d. diminish e. intensify
12. She appreciated the beauty of nature during walks. A synonym for "appreciate" is
- a. value b. ignore c. disregard d. underestimate e. recognize

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Stories come in many, such as novels, short stories, poetry, and plays.
- a. forms b. firms c. frames d. fumes
2. Skilled actors can bring stories to on stage.
- a. right b. life c. alive d. death
3. Writing dialogue with natural speech helps characters sound realistic.
- a. patrons b. practices c. patterns d. pirates
4. Many aspiring authors writing classes to improve their skills.
- a. pretend b. intend c. extend d. attend
5. The colorful mural on the building immediately my eye as I walked through the streets.
- a. caught b. brought c. carpentered d. exiled
6. Success may be just around the, if you continue working hard and stay persistent.
- a. park b. side c. corner d. aspect
7. The poem describes a of golden daffodils swaying gently in the breeze.
- a. herd b. host c. school d. class
8. Historical novels offer a ... into the past, showing how people lived, thought and interacted.
- a. window b. balcony c. surface d. staircase
9. of fiction allow readers to explore imaginary worlds.
- a. Professions b. Jobs c. Works d. Careers
10. Diaries help writers inner thoughts and reflect on emotions and decisions.
- a. explode b. invent c. explore d. innovate
11. Traditions were from elders to children, preserving knowledge for generations.
- a. bossed b. pressed c. blessed d. passed
12. Traveling and experiencing different cultures helps individuals wisdom.
- a. win b. beat c. gain d. earn
13. Science fiction books introduced me to worlds far my own.
- a. inside b. aside c. beside d. beyond
14. The movie's story of friendship and sacrifice the heart of every viewer in the theater.
- a. turned b. sank c. tracked d. touched
15. The novel included historical that helped us know the cultural context of the time.
- a. references b. regulations c. differences d. revolutions
16. is essential for writers who wish to complete long projects.
- a. Negligence b. Illiteracy c. Perfect d. Discipline
17. Memories of childhood may over time, but their impact remains in our hearts.
- a. fake b. false c. freak d. fade
18. Good writing has a smooth that guides readers naturally from one idea to the next.
- a. frown b. flow c. foam d. fright

19. Working from home is sometimes, especially if there is little contact with colleagues.
 a. insulating b. installing c. isolating d. insulting
20. Watching the northern lights was a experience I will never forget.
 a. magical b. trivial c. territorial d. verbal
21. Attendance at the lecture is, but students who come often learn more.
 a. impulsive b. compulsory c. optional d. imperative
22. Writers often face before finally having their work published.
 a. acceptance b. rejection c. agreement d. admittance
23. Folktales often contain that teach children about honesty and kindness.
 a. morals b. murals c. morels d. manures
24. She enjoys reading because it allows her to imagine lives different from her own.
 a. non-fiction b. fiction c. reality d. realism
25. books provide factual information, helping readers understand history and science.
 a. Fiction b. Fictional c. Non-fiction d. Reality
26. Folk music reflects the cultural of a community, preserving traditions over generations.
 a. rates b. routes c. rights d. roots
27. Many characters in novels with internal conflicts that teach important life lessons.
 a. thrive b. strike c. struggle d. smuggle
28. The author's is elegant, flowing smoothly to capture the reader's imagination.
 a. prose b. praise c. pride d. bride
29. Reading allows people to from daily stress and enter a world of imagination.
 a. estimate b. escape c. appreciate d. mitigate
30. Authors often rely on from editors to refine their manuscripts before publication.
 a. feedback b. fraction c. frying d. attachment
31. Each writer develops a unique that reflects their approach to storytelling.
 a. steel b. style c. stole d. stool
32. Poetry often depends on to create musicality and emphasize key ideas.
 a. rhythm b. roaring c. rearing d. refuting
33. A single in the garden brightened the entire landscape with its vibrant yellow petals.
 a. daffodil b. division c. direction d. doorway
34. The of the essay was serious but encouraging, inspiring readers to think critically.
 a. ton b. tune c. attain d. prone
35. The poet the storm vividly, allowing readers to feel the chaos and intensity.
 a. damaged b. managed c. imaged d. merged
36. Sometimes people lonely in cities, observing the world while feeling disconnected.
 a. wonder b. inquire c. acquire d. wander
37. A writer sets aside time every day to practice and refine their work.
 a. discipline b. system c. disciplined d. systematic
38. The researcher to discover new ways to treat diseases.
 a. sought b. sobbed c. sank d. drowned
39. on stage allows audiences to experience intense emotions and conflicts.
 a. Dilemma b. Drama c. Dream d. Doom
40. The performer captivated with a combination of humor, emotion, and skill.
 a. organs b. audiences c. diagnoses d. demerits
41. teach morals and cultural traditions while entertaining listeners.
 a. Folktales b. Fabrics c. Fractions d. Frictions
42. Poetry often personal experiences and emotions in a profound way.
 a. inflates b. reflects c. flutes d. flutters
43. Education can be seen as a lifelong for knowledge and understanding.
 a. cast b. quest c. quack d. aqua

44. She is a pianist who has performed in many international competitions.
 a. tolerate b. talented c. tackled d. tangled
45. The of the ancient artifact was traced back to a forgotten civilization.
 a. originate b. original c. origin d. originality
46. People must learn to with stress to maintain mental well-being.
 a. scope b. escape c. cope d. crop
47. The poem's rhyme adds musicality and makes it easier to remember.
 a. scheme b. shame c. skim d. wave
48. Understanding the historical of a story helps readers interpret it correctly.
 a. compact b. contact c. comfort d. context
49. Tension in a story is often through conflict and suspense.
 a. alleviated b. relieved c. weakened d. intensified
50. The opening of the movie immediately captured the audience's attention.
 a. skin b. scene c. screen d. sin
51. We read an from the novel that highlighted the main character's struggle.
 a. excerpt b. except c. accept d. expect
52. Team helps players work together and achieve common goals.
 a. spiral b. spin c. spirit d. spiritual
53. Trees gently in the wind, creating a calming atmosphere.
 a. mighty b. sway c. pray d. prey
54. The book is, providing accurate information about ancient civilizations.
 a. fictional b. fiction c. non-fictional d. imagined
55. during long research trips can be mentally challenging for scientists.
 a. Insulation b. Installment c. Insult d. Isolation
56. Movies, music, and games provide that can help people relax and enjoy free time.
 a. attachment b. entertainment c. entrapment d. commission
57. In debates, students learn how to clearly a point using evidence and reasoning.
 a. urge b. argue c. merge d. emerge
58. Poets use imagery and metaphors to emotions in a way that resonates with readers.
 a. capture b. culture c. nature d. nourish
59. Historical analysis allows us to view past events in a new, understanding them better.
 a. light b. viewer c. pointless d. ways
60. During the storm, the village was from the main road for several hours.
 a. cut off b. cut down c. cut out d. cut up
61. She worked for years to her first novel and finally saw it in bookstores.
 a. spread b. publish c. come out d. scatter
62. People often try to make of difficult situations by talking to friends.
 a. smell b. taste c. sight d. sense
63. He was of the guidance his mentor provided throughout the project.
 a. allowance b. appreciative c. directed d. ambiguous
64. The actor became a after starring in a hit movie.
 a. celebrated b. celebrative c. celebration d. celebrity
65. The author described the scene, making it easy for readers to imagine every detail.
 a. vividly b. ambiguously c. unclearly d. vaguely
66. Leaves in the wind, creating a gentle, soothing sound.
 a. filter b. flutter c. slicer d. fatter
67. In poetry, words that with "light" include "night" and "bright."
 a. rhyme b. crime c. upright d. style
68. Poetry often relies on language to create vivid images in the reader's mind.
 a. visible b. nasal c. visual d. vibrated

صفات المقارنة والتفضيل Comparative and Superlative adjectives

١. الدرجة الأولى (التساوي وعدم التساوي في صفة ما).

فاعل آخر + as + صفة (قصيرة / طويلة) + as + be + فاعل

فاعل آخر + as + اسم (a / an) + صفة (قصيرة / طويلة) + as + be + فاعل

- Mona is as tall (beautiful) as her mother (is). - Ali is as good a player as his brother.

فاعل آخر + as + صفة (قصيرة / طويلة) + as + be not + فاعل

فاعل آخر + as + اسم + the same + as + be not (not have) + فاعل

- Mona isn't (doesn't have) the same weight as her mother.

٢. الدرجة الثانية (المقارنة) Comparative

فاعل آخر + er + than + صفة قصيرة + be + فاعل

فاعل آخر + than + صفة طويلة + more / less + be + فاعل (أكثر من / أقل من)

- Ali is stronger than his friends. - Mona is more intelligent than Soha.

٣. الدرجة الثالثة (التفضيل) Superlative

فاعل + est + صفة قصيرة + the + be + فاعل

فاعل + the most / the least + صفة طويلة + be + فاعل (الأكثر / الأقل)

- Ali is the strongest student in class. - She is the most intelligent of her classmates.

ملاحظات هامة

١. يمكن استخدام (less / least) في المقارنة والتفضيل مع كلاً من الصفات القصيرة والصفات الطويلة

- Of all the team players, Ali is the least tall (skillful).

٢. يمكن وضع مجموعة من ظروف الدرجة قبل صيغ المقارنة (ليبيان درجة الاختلاف في المقارنة)

much / a lot / a little / a bit / far / slightly / even

- Travelling by plane is **much** more comfortable than travelling by ship.

٣. التعبير عن الزيادة المتوازنة (Parallel Increase):

فعل + فاعل + صفة مقارنة + the + فعل + فاعل + صفة مقارنة + The

- The harder you study, the more (higher) marks you will get.

٤. يمكن في المقارنة أن نستخدم (صيغة المقارنة + the) (عندما يكون عدد عناصر المقارنة اثنان)

- Of these two cars, the red one is the more expensive.

٥. الصفات الشاذة في المقارنة والتفضيل: صفات لا تتبع الطريقة المعتادة في تكوين صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل

- Mona is better at science than I'm. - This man is the worst criminal of all the gang.

٦. نستخدم (older / oldest) في المقارنة والتفضيل و (elder / eldest) لترتيب أفراد الأسرة الواحدة

- She is older than me. - My elder brother loves swimming.

٧. استخدام (just as as) بمعنى (تماماً مثل):

- Ali is just as naughty as he was 5 years ago. نستخدم الظروف (by far / easily / one of / some of) قبل صفات وظروف التفضيل:

- Ahmed is by far the most punctual of his classmates.

بنك أسئلة القواعد Grammar Question Bank

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The harder you practice, the you become. (2023 – 2nd session)
a. fitter b. fittest c. least fit d. fit
- You've made lots of mistakes. Please, work next time. (2025 – Experimental)
a. most carefully b. most careful c. more carefully d. more careful
- The journey took I expected, so I got very tired. (2023-1st session)
a. longer than b. as long c. so longer d. longest

4. You play tennis better than I do.
 a. many b. a lot of c. more d. much
5. You write English worse
 a. than me do b. than me done c. than I do d. than do I
6. My sister is asking for money than I have.
 a. enough b. much more c. very much d. much
7. Rania can swim her friend Radwa does.
 a. more good as b. more good than c. as well as d. better as
8. The number of the injuries caused by the first train accident was the second one.
 a. more greatly than b. the greatest c. the most greatly d. greater than
9. The older you get, the cautious you become.
 a. more b. most of c. much d. much most
10. My memory is not years ago.
 a. as good as it b. as goo it was c. as good as it was d. as good as it had
11. I love all my family, but I love my father of all.
 a. more b. mostly c. most d. much
12. Hazim is a bit grumpy, but he is even when his team lose.
 a. grumpiest b. as grumpy c. much grumpy d. grumpier
13. Dalia is cheerful in her new job than in the last one.
 a. most b. much c. much more d. the most
14. Lamia is good-natured in class. She never gets angry!
 a. the most b. the more c. more d. much more
15. My son is getting
 a. older b. older than c. the older d. oldest
16. The meal was too salty, it was meal I've had at that restaurant.
 a. worse than b. the worst c. worst d. the worse
17. This reporter brought news today.
 a. fewer than b. less than c. the fewest d. the least
18. She ran than other runners so she won the race.
 a. as quicker b. as quickly c. as quick d. more quickly
19. Who is, Mona or Soha?
 a. taller b. as tall c. the tallest d. taller than
20. Aya and Yomna are the same
 a. age b. old c. young d. high
21. A train isn't as fast as a plane. A plane is
 a. much faster b. a lot faster than c. faster than d. a lot of faster
22. Cars are twice as as they were a few years ago.
 a. most expensive b. expensive c. more expensive d. less expensive
23. Could you open the window, please? It's getting in this room.
 a. the hottest b. hotter c. as hot d. hotter than
24. Going by plane is more expensive than going by bus.
 a. a lot b. lots c. many d. a lot of
25. I'm very clever at cooking, but my mother is cook I've ever known.
 a. cleverer b. clever c. less clever d. the cleverest
26. Samy speaks French than he writes it.
 a. fewer b. worse c. fewest d. worst
27. Ali is as as Sami. They are the same height.
 a. tall b. high c. heavy d. long
28. The more effort you make, the marks you will get.
 a. highest b. higher c. least d. less

29. Which do you think is city in the world?
 a. exciting b. more exciting c. most exciting d. the most exciting
30. A woolen suit is not as as the clothing climbers use today.
 a. heavy b. heavier c. less heavy d. heaviest
31. Ali and Ahmed are smart, but Maged is
 a. the smarter b. the smartest c. smartest d. smarter
32. You did a job on your homework assignment this time. Keep up the good work, Ali.
 a. worst b. better c. worse d. best
33. Everest is the world's mountain.
 a. high b. higher c. highest d. the highest
34. Europe isn't as large Asia.
 a. than b. as c. to d. so
35. Of the two sisters, Nada is the
 a. tallest b. taller c. tall d. both a and b
36. In my opinion, the maths exam is easier than this exam.
 a. more b. most c. less d. much
37. Nahed is tall, but her brother is taller.
 a. more b. much c. very d. a lot of
38. The test was than yesterday's one.
 a. much easy b. less easy c. more easily d. more easier
39. My bag is than yours.
 a. heavy b. more heavier c. less heavier d. less heavy
40. This island is beautiful than that one.
 a. fewer more b. many more c. fewer d. much more
41. The car was more expensive than I expected.
 a. many b. most c. much d. the
42. She bought dress she could find in the shop.
 a. the most expensive b. expensive c. less expensive d. more expensive
43. Laptops are becoming more and popular today.
 a. more b. many c. most d. much
44. Ali is student in class.
 a. good b. better c. best d. the best
45. Dr. Yacoub is surgeon in Egypt.
 a. the most famous b. the more famous c. famous d. most famous
46. My brother is younger than
 a. I am b. mine c. I d. my
47. This is exciting film I've ever seen.
 a. most b. much c. more d. the most
48. That's place I've ever visited.
 a. worse b. bad c. worst d. the worst
49. We don't have as money as you think.
 a. many b. much c. more d. most
50. Basketball is than football.
 a. less interesting b. more interested c. less interested d. as interesting
51. My friend is than me.
 a. eldest b. older c. oldest d. elder
52. Going by bus is than going by plane.
 a. more cheaper b. as cheap c. a lot cheaper d. cheapest
53. Ali isn't his brother.
 a. as tall as b. more tall c. as tall d. taller

54. Mona didn't read as novels as her sister did.
 a. more b. many c. the most d. most
55. The you work, the more money you gain. Be sure of that.
 a. less b. least c. most d. more
56. I've never had fantastic trip.
 a. as b. most c. more d. such a
57. Salwa is seven years than her brother.
 a. older b. elder c. as old d. old
58. Your son looks much today than yesterday.
 a. more good b. best c. good d. better
59. He isn't generous as his kind father.
 a. more b. such c. like d. as
60. I'm going to Alexandria by bus. It's going by train.
 a. cheap as b. as cheap c. cheapest d. cheaper

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Sarah is the most intelligent student in the class. (smarter than) (SB)
2. This is the most interesting story I've ever read. (never) (SB)
3. Amir is the strongest boy in class. (as strong as)
4. Samy is the fastest player in the team. (faster than)
5. The Nile is longer than the Amazon. (long)
6. Kuwait is hotter than Egypt. (colder)
7. Paris is more beautiful than Rome. (so)
8. Samir is as tall as Walid. (same)
9. Tamer is stronger than Sami. (so)
10. Walaa is the best tennis player here. (No)
11. I've never seen a more fantastic film than "The Godfather". (ever)
12. This dish is the most delicious one I've ever eaten. (never)
13. Salwa is the same age as Ola. (old)
14. Ali bought more books than Salim. (as)
15. Ola drank more juice than Samia. (as)
16. Tennis isn't as exciting as football. (much)
17. Paris is the most beautiful city in the world. (as)
18. Mariam is the same beauty as her mother. (as)
19. No one in the family is as wise as my grandfather. (wisest)
20. I have got five books and Ali has got four books. (than)

خلاصة مهارات الكتابة

Writing Skills: Hints

My First Poem قصيدتي الأولى

- A poem is a type of writing that expresses feelings and ideas through images and rhythm. القصيدة هي نوع من الكتابة التي تعبر عن المشاعر والأفكار من خلال الصور والإيقاع.

- Structure of a Poem بناء القصيدة (How to write a simple poem)

1. Choose a topic (nature, friendship, dreams, school, family).
2. Think of feelings and images (What do you see? Hear? Feel?).
3. Use adjectives and comparisons (bright, quiet, as tall as a tree).
4. Keep lines short (poems don't need full sentences).
5. Rhyme like (cat/hat, sing/wing) — but rhyme is not always necessary.

Exercises on Writing Skills

- The main purpose of a poem is to
a. tell a complex story
b. state clear facts
c. express feelings
d. provide instructions for processes
- Poems don't need
a. words
b. sentences
c. short words
d. full sentences
- In a poem it's advisable to make the lines
a. long
b. short
c. hidden
d. lengthy
- Rhyme in poetry is
a. the most important element.
b. optional.
c. required for a good poem.
d. very difficult to use.
- Similes and metaphors are called
a. transitions
b. linkers
c. words
d. literary devices
- The phrase "lonely as a cloud" is an example of a/an
a. rhyme
b. comparison
c. image
d. feeling
- Which of these is an example of a rhyme pair?
a. lake / tree
b. bright / root
c. beat / meet
d. cloud / flight
- "A cloud drifting" is a/an
a. image
b. poem
c. contrast
d. rhyme

تمارين على القواعد التراكمية (قاعدة: Quantifiers)

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Didn't you buy any flour? - No, I bought to make cakes. (Longman)
a. any
b. no
c. some
d. many
- We'll have to take a taxi. We don't have time. (Azhar - 2012)
a. much
b. some
c. a lot
d. many
- How of Egypt's electricity is produced from the High Dam? (Sudan - 2014)
a. many
b. much
c. often
d. long
- There's action in this film. I really love it.
a. many
b. a lot of
c. an
d. several
- of the players feels worried before the start of the match. (2024)
a. All
b. Each
c. Every
d. Many
- my two brothers likes swimming. (2025 - Experimental)
a. Every of
b. Neither of
c. None
d. Either
- of the criminals could escape; the police arrested most of them. (Longman)
a. None
b. All
c. Few
d. Many
- In exams, student is given a question paper. (Longman)
a. every
b. all
c. a few
d. each of
- Take care! The little child carried a glass bottle in hand. (Longman)
a. neither
b. all
c. every
d. each
- I have read of your ideas and I like them all. (Longman)
a. none
b. some
c. any
d. much

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- We don't have much time left. (little)
- She doesn't have any money. (hardly)
- I prepared few files. (many)
- He has little time, does he? (a little)
- All children have been given prizes. (Each)
- I found two books, but neither of them can help. (both)

A. Vocabulary

1. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- The teacher praised the class for their discipline. An antonym for "discipline" is
a. chaos b. order c. disorder d. self-control e. training
- People often seek the wisdom of elders in the community. A synonym for "wisdom" is
a. foolishness b. naivety c. insight d. ignorance e. prudence
- The forest looked magical under the moonlight. A synonym for "magical" is
a. ordinary b. mystical c. enchanting d. mundane e. dull
- Traffic flows more smoothly after the new road was built. An antonym for "flow" is
a. block b. stop c. stream d. run e. pour

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- His job application was because he didn't meet the qualifications.
a. injected b. infected c. detained d. rejected
- The novel uses strong visual to describe the city at night.
a. imagery b. mutuality c. fragility d. casualty
- The play's made the characters feel real and relatable.
a. conservation b. conversation c. dialog d. diagram
- The story of the boy who cried wolf is meant to convey a about honesty.
a. mural b. morel c. mineral d. moral
- Harry Potter is a character created by J.K. Rowling.
a. fractional b. fictional c. functional d. real
- Teachers share with their students to help them make better decisions.
a. wisdom b. venom c. variety d. fabulous
- Love is a common in many poems and novels.
a. theme b. same c. slime d. throne
- I really the effort you put into organizing this event.
a. regulate b. appreciate c. allocate d. interrupt
- The children laughed and played together in the sunny playground.
a. hopeless b. careful c. cheerful d. speechless
- A cool was blowing from the sea, making the hot day pleasant.
a. bias b. breathe c. breeze d. breath
- Hamlet* is a famous of literature written by Shakespeare.
a. slice b. speck c. piece d. from
- Friendship is a theme that children can understand everywhere.
a. local b. universal c. rural d. communist

B. Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Ahmed is the student in the class. (SB)
a. more tall b. taller c. tall d. tallest
- My car is than yours. (SB)
a. fast b. as fast c. fastest d. faster
- This exam was than the last one. (SB)
a. better b. best c. good d. most good
- This movie is exciting than the one we saw yesterday. (SB)
a. most b. many c. more d. much
- Of all the shops, this one is the (SB)
a. cheaper b. cheapest c. cheap d. as cheap

6. My house is than yours. (SB)
 a. biggest b. bigger c. the biggest d. the bigger
7. This street is the in the city. (SB)
 a. busier b. busy c. busiest d. more busy
8. Sara is at English than Hala. (SB)
 a. better b. good c. best d. as good
9. Summer is than winter. (SB)
 a. hot b. hottest c. hotter d. more hotter
10. Mount Everest is mountain in the world. (SB)
 a. highest b. higher c. the higher d. the highest

2. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. That meal was bad, but this one is worse. (the worst) (SB)
 2. Egypt has the most beautiful tourist sites. (than) (SB)
 3. No river in the world is longer than the Nile. (the longest) (SB)
 4. Nada isn't so tall as Noha. (taller) (SB)

C. Translation

١. يهدف مشروع العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة إلى تخفيف العبء عن القاهرة التي تعاني التكدس السكاني بما له من آثار سلبية على الخدمات والبنية الآدمية.

- a. The New Administrative Capital project aims to reduce the burden on Cairo, which suffers from overcrowding, with its negative effects on services and infrastructure.
 b. The New Administer Capital project aiming to reduce the burden on Cairo, which suffers from overcrowding, with its negative affects on services and infrastructure.
 c. The New Administrative Capital project aims to reduce the broaden on Cairo, which suffers from overcrowding, with it's negative effects on services and below structure.
 d. The New Administrative Capital project aims to reduce the ritual on Cairo, which suffers from overcrowding, with its negative effects on services and ultra structure.

٢. مبادرة حياة كريمة تضمن الشفافية، تعزيز الحماية الاجتماعية للفئات المحتاجة، وقيام كل شريك بدوره وفق منهجية العمل.

- a. The Decent Life initial includes accuracy, strengthening sociable protection for need groups, and all partner playing their role in accordance with the work methodology.
 b. The Decent Life initiative includes accuracy, strengthening social protection for needy groups, and all partner playing there role in accordance with the work methodology.
 c. The Accent Life initiative includes transparency, strengthening sociable protection for needy groups, and each partner play their role in according with the work methodology.
 d. The Decent Life initiative includes transparency, strengthening social protection for needy groups, and each partner playing their role in accordance with the work methodology.

3. Ancient Egypt was an agricultural country in which most people worked in the fields because of the abundance of water and the soil that was as rich in nutrients back then as it is today.

- أ. كانت مصر القديمة دولة زراعية يعمل فيها معظم الناس في المجالات بسبب تحديث المياه والتربة التي كانت غنية بالعناصر الغذائية في ذلك الوقت كما هي اليوم.
 ب. كانت مصر القديمة دولة زراعية يعمل فيها معظم الناس في الحقول بسبب تحديث المياه والتربة التي كانت غنية بالعناصر الغذائية في ذلك الوقت أكثر مما هي عليه اليوم.
 ج. كانت مصر القديمة دولة زراعية يعمل فيها معظم الناس في المجالات بسبب وفرة المياه والتربة التي كانت غنية بالعناصر الغذائية في ذلك الوقت أكثر مما هي عليه اليوم.
 د. كانت مصر القديمة دولة زراعية يعمل فيها معظم الناس في الحقول بسبب وفرة المياه والتربة التي كانت غنية بالعناصر الغذائية في ذلك الوقت كما هي اليوم.

4. Education is a weapon for the people by which they can live a high-quality life. Furthermore, education makes people easy to govern but at the same time it makes them impossible to be enslaved.

- أ. التعليم سلاح للناس يستطيعون من خلاله أن يعيشوا حياة جيدة الصنع. علاوة على ذلك، فإن التعليم يجعل حكم الناس أمراً سهلاً ولكنه في الوقت نفسه يجعل من المستحيل تعديدهم.
- ب. التعليم سلاح للناس يستطيعون من خلاله أن يعيشوا حياة عالية الجودة. علاوة على ذلك، فإن التعليم يجعل حكم الناس أمراً سهلاً ولكنه في الوقت نفسه يجعل من المستحيل استبعادهم.
- ج. التعليم سلاح للناس يستطيعون من خلاله أن يعيشوا حياة جيدة الصنع. علاوة على ذلك، فإن التعليم يجعل شرع الناس أمراً سهلاً ولكنه في الوقت نفسه يجعل من المستحيل استبعادهم.
- د. التعليم سلاح للناس يستطيعون من خلاله أن يعيشوا حياة عالية الجودة. علاوة على ذلك، فإن التعليم يجعل شرع الناس أمراً سهلاً ولكنه في الوقت نفسه يجعل من المستحيل تعديدهم.

D. Reading Comprehension

1. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

The first movies were made using black and white cameras. The film for the pictures were cut up and made into long strips شرطه. They were played on a movie projector in a theater. Today, people can see movies almost anywhere; on computers, on iPods or even on cell phones. The world of movies is changing very fast. Some filmmakers want to use digital photography for making movies. Digital photography is easier and cheaper, takes fewer people and less space. However, they do not turn out as clear as the original way of filming.

A man named Robert Rodriguez says digital form is the new way to make movies. He says it is the way to keep movie theaters alive. He does not want them to become extinct. Robert writes movies and shoots them. He directs them and puts them together. He even does the special effects. Robert does them all in digital format. He does this in his home in Texas. He can make most movies for half of the money it would usually cost. He wants to make movies that can only be seen in theaters. His idea is to make movies, for less money, only to be shown in theaters. He feels this will help preserve the original way to watch a movie.

- What makes Robert unusual and remarkable?
 - He is trying to save the movie theaters.
 - He is the only filmmaker who lives in Texas.
 - He is making movies.
 - He only wants to make movies to be shown on TV.
- Which of these is NOT something positive about digital movies?
 - They need fewer people.
 - They cost less than making movies the old way.
 - They can be made using a small space.
 - They are not as clear as the other kind.
- Where can't people watch movies today?
 - on the moon
 - on a cell phone
 - on an iPod
 - on a television
- To make movies digitally you would probably use a
 - typewriter
 - computer
 - magnifying glass
 - book
- A good title for the passage is
 - saving movies
 - saving energy
 - saving theatres
 - saving life
- The underlined word "this" refers to Robert Rodriguez's
 - movies
 - making digital movies
 - movie theatres
 - doing everything in digital format
- The underlined word "original" is the synonym of the word
 - earliest
 - abnormal
 - recently
 - normal
- Robert Rodriguez does his digital work
 - at night
 - at home
 - very badly
 - in an unusual way

2. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Many scientists today are trying to create new machines that help ease patients' pain and make doctors' and nurses' jobs easier. One machine that is helping patients is called a video remote interpreter, or VRI مترجم فيديو عن بعد. It helps people who are deaf. It connects to people outside the hospital that can help the deaf person communicate with the doctors and nurses.

Another machine is being made for people with bad burns. This machine will be set up next to the hospital bed. It will be close to, but not touching, the patient. This is important, as people with burns are often in a lot of pain. It hurts them even more to have the burns touched.

Usually doctors need to take a sample عينة of the burn. They need to get a part of the skin from the burn. They do this so they can test for infection. Getting the sample is painful for the patient. This machine will be able to test a burn for infection by using the air around the burn. It won't touch the patient's skin. Scientists are working every day to invent new technology for hospitals. They want to help people who are sick and also help all people stay healthy.

- VRI is a/an which stands for Video Remote Interpreter.
a. letters b. acronym c. antonym d. automation
- Which word could be a synonym for "sample"?
a. skin b. piece c. arm d. leg
- Why did the scientists try to make a machine that can work near the burn patient?
a. so it can hum for the sick person b. so it can make a new noise
c. so it can read the air and check for infections d. so it can watch the patient
- A VRI is used for patients who
a. are blind b. are burned c. are in a lot of pain d. can't hear
- It is important for the patient not to be touched if he has a burn so as not to feel
a. wetness b. heat c. pain d. shock
- The VRI helps the patient to
a. take a sample of his disease b. communicate with the doctor
c. go outside the hospital freely d. stay inside the hospital calmly
- Doctors take a sample of the burn so they can test for
a. perfection b. infection c. impression d. detection
- Choose an appropriate title for the passage.
a. Patient technology b. Hospital technology c. Doctor technology d. Nurse technology

E. Writing

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Which of the following can we use to conclude a formal email?
a. Love b. See you later c. Bye d. Yours sincerely
- Select the best supporting detail for: "Reading class is really interesting."
a. We learn nothing from the things we read. b. It's my least favorite class.
c. Our teacher gives us no new ways to look at things. d. We do engaging dramatic readings.
- A/An essay is a collection of one's thoughts and experiences.
a. descriptive b. argumentative c. narrative d. reflective
- In an essay about (*How to improve our schools*); what is the best topic sentence?
a. Finally, developing our schools is the key to getting well-educated citizens.
b. In a school, there should be a suitable playground to practise sports.
c. Improving our schools is a national duty to achieve progress in education.
d. Teachers and students should have the skills of using computers.

2. Write about (180 – 200) words on one of the following:

- Your role model in life.
- The role of artificial intelligence in modern life.

3. Write a paragraph of Six lines on the following:

- An introduction of an essay about "The role of youth in society"
- A conclusion of an essay about "The importance of doing sports"

F. The Novel

- Answer the following questions:

- What do Edmond's secret arrangements show about his personality? (SB)
- How is the difference between justice and revenge shown in the story? (SB)
- Is it possible for revenge to ever truly bring peace to someone's heart? (SB)

Word	Meaning	Synonyms	Antonyms
diverse	متنوع	varied / mixed	uniform / identical
drift	يتنقل بلا خطة / انحراف	wander / roam / float	stay / remain / anchor
ethical	أخلاقي	moral / principled / righteous	immoral / unethical
independence	الاستقلال	autonomy / self-reliance	subjugation / reliance
inspiring	ملهم	motivating / uplifting	discouraging / demotivating
jealous	غيور	envious / resentful	content / satisfied
passion for	شغف / وبع	enthusiasm / devotion	indifference / apathy
practical	عملي	realistic / functional	theoretical / impractical
rewarding	مرضي / مجزي	fulfilling / satisfying	disappointing / unfulfilling
scroll	يتنقل / يتصفح	browse / surf / navigate	ignore / overlook / skip

Key Vocabulary

reputation	سمعة	land a job	يحصل على وظيفة	independent	مستقل
cultural awareness	وعي ثقافي	rehearsal	بروفة	challenging	صعب
career	مهنة / حياة عملية	applicant	متقدم لوظيفة	philosophical	فلسفي
counselor	مستشار	psychology	علم النفس	hieroglyphics	الهيروغليفية
apprenticeship	فترة تدريب	clothing	الملابس (مفرد)	costumes	زي تنكري

Vocabulary & Prepositions

terrified / scared	مرعوب	aware of	واع لـ / مدرك لـ	dependent	معتمد على غيره
rehearse	يتمرن / يراجع	apprentice	صبي / يتدرب	terrifying	مرعب
apply for	يتقدم إلى مكان	match	يناسب / يلائم	lifestyle	أسلوب حياة
apply to	يتقدم لشخص	rank	يصنف	strengths	نقاط القوة
piece of clothing	قطعة ملابس	rankings	تصنيفات / ترتيبات	weaknesses	نقاط الضعف
benefit	يفيد / فائدة	sports facilities	مرافق رياضية	trusted	موثوق به
benefit from	يستفيد من	financial planning	تخطيط مالي	gain skills	يكتسب مهارات
guide	يوجه / يرشد	professional path	مسار مهني	temporary	مؤقت
guidance	توجيه / إرشاد	tailoring	التفصيل	permanent	دائم
poster	ملصق دعائي	production	عرض مسرحي	full-time job	وظيفة بدوام كامل
make a waistcoat	يصنع صدرية	fall apart	يتفكك / ينقطع	part-time job	وظيفة بدوام جزئي
graduation	التخرج	ballets	عروض باليه	iron clothes	يكوي الملابس
operas	عروض الأوبرا	guarantee	يضمن / يؤمن	intern	متدرب
manage time	يدير الوقت	speech	خطبة / خطاب	motivating	محفز
fixed	ثابت	ethics	الأخلاق	practically	بشكل عملي

passionate about	شغوف بـ	versus (vs.)	في مقابل / ضد	join a society	ينضم لجمعية
pretty new	جديد جدا	wrapped up	مقيد / مربوط	straight after	مباشرة بعد
mummies	موميوات	click	يتوافق / ينسجم	solid team	فريق متماسك
mummify	يحنط	dressed like	لابسا كـ ...	legacy	إرث / ميراث

Idioms - Collocations - Expressions

match personal interests	يناسب الاهتمامات	make a decision (choice)	يتخذ قرار / يختار
experience living in	يجرب العيش في	a master craftsman	حرفي ماهر
land a costume apprenticeship	يتدرب على أزياء	a first class degree	شهادة من الدرجة الأولى
win the place	يفوز بالوظيفة	drift between jobs	يتنقل في وظائف
isn't guaranteed a job	لا يضمن وظيفة	do an apprenticeship	يحصل على تدريب
build friendships	يبنى الصداقات	do an internship	يحصل على تدريب
build skills	يطور مهارات	it sounds a bit unusual	يبدو غريبا قليلا
do a degree in	يحصل على شهادة في	not much to do with it	لا يتعلق بأشياء كثيرة
get along really well	تنسجم جيدا	it's the total opposite	إنه العكس تماما

Language Notes

clothes	الملابس (جمع)	clothing	الملابس (مفرد)
graduate (qualify) as + وظيفة	يتخرج كـ	graduate with + شهادة	يحصل على شهادة
a graduate of	خريج كذا ...	graduate in + مجال	يتخرج في مجال (كالتطب)
give / run / provide a course	يعطي دورة	take / do a course	يحصل على دورة دراسية
athletic	صفة بمعنى (رياضي)	athletics	العاب القوى (مفرد)
equipment	آلات كهربائية أو إلكترونية	tools	آلات يدوية
gadget	آلة صغيرة	instrument	آلة موسيقية أو طبية
win / get / receive	يتسلم جائزة	be awarded	يتم منحه جائزة
CV/Curriculum Vitae	سيرة للتوظيف	autobiography	سيرة ذاتية لشخص عن نفسه

Vocabulary Question Bank بنك أسئلة الكلمات

A. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- He drifted from one job to another after graduation. A synonym for "drifted" is
a. wandered b. remained c. stayed d. anchored e. roamed
- Her story was truly inspiring to everyone. An antonym for "inspiring" is
a. motivating b. uplifting c. demotivating d. discouraging e. encouraging
- He is a trusted friend who always keeps your secrets. An antonym for "trusted" is
a. reliable b. doubtful c. dependable d. untrustworthy e. faithful
- The campaign raised awareness about recycling. An antonym for "awareness" is
a. consciousness b. neglect c. unawareness d. ignorance e. mindfulness
- Gaining independence is important for adults. An antonym for "independence" is
a. freedom b. autonomy c. dependence d. self-reliance e. reliance
- He followed a particular method to solve the problem. An antonym for "particular" is
a. distinctive b. special c. specific d. general e. common

7. He played a major role in completing the project on time. An antonym for "major" is
- a. trivial b. insignificant c. significant d. primary e. important
8. Learning practical skills like cooking is useful. A synonym for "practical" is
- a. realistic b. impractical c. theoretical d. functional e. unrealistic
9. I like to scroll through my social media in my free time. An antonym for "scroll" is
- a. navigate b. skip c. overlook d. surf e. browse
10. He became jealous of his brother's new bike. A synonym for "jealous" is
- a. envious b. satisfied c. pleased d. resentful e. content
11. He spoke about his work with great passion. An antonym for "passion" is
- a. love b. devotion c. indifference d. apathy e. enthusiasm
12. The university offers a diverse range of courses. An antonym for "diverse" is
- a. varied b. identical c. different d. mixed e. uniform

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Choosing a university course that personal interests increases motivation.
- a. mentions b. matches c. branches d. witnesses
2. To living in another city helps young adults develop independence and confidence.
- a. experiment b. expert c. expertise d. experience
3. She worked hard to a costume apprenticeship at a famous theatre company.
- a. lend b. hand c. lent d. land
4. After a tough selection process, she was thrilled to win the at the prestigious academy.
- a. piece b. place c. slice d. region
5. Completing a degree in the arts isn't a job, but it opens many opportunities.
- a. guaranteed b. graded c. guarded d. regarded
6. Joining societies at university helps students friendships that last a lifetime.
- a. erect b. construct c. eradicate d. build
7. Volunteering abroad helps young people skills such as problem-solving.
- a. develop b. build c. do d. both a and b
8. She decided to a degree in psychology because she wanted to help people.
- a. give b. run c. go d. do
9. He gets his colleagues because he is friendly and cooperative.
- a. long well with b. well long with c. along well with d. well along
10. Choosing which university to attend requires careful thought before you a decision.
- a. make b. do c. take d. both a and c
11. He trained under a craftsman to learn traditional tailoring techniques.
- a. monster b. master c. minister d. misted
12. She graduated with a first degree, reflecting her hard work and dedication.
- a. class b. school c. classroom d. classic
13. Some graduates between jobs before finding a career that suits their skills.
- a. shave b. drift c. drive d. dive
14. Many students an apprenticeship to gain practical skills and work experience.
- a. make b. form c. go d. do
15. Students often do an to gain experience in their chosen career field.
- a. internship b. apprentice c. apprenticed d. intern
16. The idea of working in a costume workshop sounds unusual to most people.
- a. bitter b. a bit c. bit d. bits
17. His current job has not much with his university degree in literature.
- a. done b. doing c. doer d. to do
18. You might expect office work to be boring, but it's the opposite for her.
- a. total b. tutor c. brutal d. plural

19. She enjoys a range of hobbies, from painting to rock climbing.
 a. diversion b. diversely c. diversity d. diverse
20. Scientists must follow guidelines in research to protect participants.
 a. ethical b. unethical c. mystical d. magical
21. Moving away for college gives students a sense of
 a. dependence b. dependent c. independence d. independent
22. The teacher's speech was and motivated the students to work harder.
 a. inspired b. inspire c. inspiringly d. inspiring
23. Sometimes athletes become of each other's success, which can affect teamwork.
 a. jealous b. contented c. satisfied d. satisfactory
24. He has a for photography, capturing beautiful landscapes around the world.
 a. passionate b. compassionate c. passion d. pressure
25. Learning skills in workshops is essential for many careers.
 a. practice b. practise c. practically d. practical
26. The university has a strong for producing skilled graduates.
 a. contamination b. reputation c. regulation d. law
27. Traveling abroad increases cultural and understanding of different traditions.
 a. awareness b. brutality c. cruelty d. savagery
28. She plans to start her in fashion design after graduation.
 a. career b. biography c. curriculum d. CV
29. The school helped students choose the right university courses.
 a. surrender b. counselor c. imposter d. plaster
30. She studies to understand how people think and behave.
 a. biology b. archeology c. zoology d. psychology
31. The fashion designer showcased new in the runway show.
 a. cluster b. scatter c. clothing d. systematic
32. He enjoys debates about the meaning of life and existence.
 a. philosopher b. philosophical c. philosophy d. philosophically
33. Designing requires creativity and attention to detail.
 a. costumes b. customs c. habits d. clothe
34. Many children feel during thunderstorms or loud noises.
 a. scaring b. terrifying c. horrifying d. scared
35. Musicians daily to prepare for concerts and competitions.
 a. immerse b. inverse c. rehearse d. preserve
36. Students for scholarships to help fund their education.
 a. reply b. imply c. apply d. comply
37. He bought a new of clothing for the formal event.
 a. core b. key c. piece d. slice
38. Regular exercise has many health for the body and mind.
 a. benefit b. benefits from c. benefits d. beneficial
39. Online tutorials can students through complex software programs.
 a. grade b. guard c. regard d. guide
40. Career helps students make informed choices about their future.
 a. guidance b. graduation c. attendance d. regarding
41. day was filled with excitement, pride, and celebrations.
 a. Graduate b. Gradual c. Grade d. Graduation
42. Students must learn to time effectively to balance studies and hobbies.
 a. merge b. manage c. emerge d. demerge
43. The timetable for the courses is and cannot be changed.
 a. fixed b. flexible c. fractional d. bilingual

44. She is about music and spends hours practicing daily.
 a. passion b. passionately c. passionate d. enthusiast
45. She bought a new backpack for her first day at university.
 a. bride b. pretty c. pity d. pile
46. Ancient Egyptians would bodies to preserve them for the afterlife.
 a. modify b. mortify c. mummify d. malice
47. Tourists must be of local customs to avoid misunderstandings.
 a. weary b. aware c. a ware d. ward
48. The learned traditional carpentry techniques from a skilled craftsman.
 a. apprentice b. engineering c. employer d. employable
49. Soldiers are promoted according to based on experience and performance.
 a. wrinkle b. rank c. wrath d. ring
50. The campus offers excellent sports, including gyms, swimming pools, and courts.
 a. faculties b. facilities c. fragments d. schedules
51. Choosing a professional early can help focus education and career decisions.
 a. bath b. path c. both d. pass
52. The old book began to fall after years of use.
 a. part b. apart c. a part d. parts
53. In the debate, freedom of speech national security was discussed.
 a. verbal b. versus c. vice d. virtue
54. She up in a warm blanket on the cold winter evening.
 a. wrapped b. ribbed c. raped d. trapped
55. They immediately and became close friends during their first week at university.
 a. kicked b. locked c. blocked d. clicked
56. The actors were like historical figures from the 18th century.
 a. put on b. worn c. dressed d. clocked
57. Young children are on adults for care and guidance.
 a. dependent b. independent c. dependence d. independence
58. The storm outside made the night feel for the campers.
 a. terrified b. terrifying c. horrified d. scared
59. A healthy includes exercise, balanced diet, and sufficient rest.
 a. limestone b. lifeline c. lifestyle d. finalize
60. Identifying your helps in choosing the right career path.
 a. strong b. strengthen c. strongly d. strengths
61. She is a advisor who helps students make important decisions.
 a. trustless b. untrustworthy c. worthless d. trusted
62. Many students take jobs during summer breaks to earn money.
 a. full-time b. permanent c. temporary d. everlasting
63. She worked as an at the museum, assisting with exhibitions.
 a. eternal b. internal c. inner d. intern
64. The author left a literary that inspires generations of writers.
 a. legacy b. mythical c. lethargy d. apathy

خلاصة القواعد

Language: Quick Hints

Question Tags الأسئلة المذيبة

ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد منفي، جملة مثبتة

- Joseph likes swimming, doesn't he? - Yes, he does.

ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد مثبتة، جملة منفية

- You can't swim well, can you? - No, I can't.

- كلمات شبه النفي يكون سؤالها المذيل مثبت

hardly	no one	barely	none
rarely	nowhere	little	nothing
scarcely	no body	few	never
seldom	no	no longer	neither

- **Neither** of them **did** well in the test, **did they**? - I went **nowhere** last night, **did I**?
- I **seldom** meet my friends now, **do I**? - Earthquakes happen so **rarely** here, **do they**?

Special Cases حالات خاصة

The main Sentence	The Question Tag form
I'm / I'm not	aren't I (am I not) / am I
needn't / daren't	need / dare
used to / used not	didn't / used
positive imperative	will you / won't you / should you / would you
negative imperative	will you
let's / let's not (اقترح)	shall we
let us / me / her	will you / won't you
somebody / someone / everybody / everyone	they + فعل مساعد
anybody / anyone / nobody / no one / none of (جمع)	it + فعل مساعد
something / everything / nothing / anything	it / they
this (that) / these (those)	mustn't (needn't) / must
must / mustn't	affirmative / negative
few (little) / a few (a little)	had
'd + P.P / better	would
'd + rather / inf.	has
's + P.P (Active voice)	is
's + P.P (Passive voice)	

- عندما تحتوي الجملة على أكثر من عبارة فإننا نسل سؤالاً ملحقاً عن العبارة التي تحتاج معلوماتها إلى تأكيد

- I **believe** that your son **has passed** his driving test, **hasn't he**?
- I **don't think** they **ignored** us, **did they**?

- عندما نود أن نسل عن رأي المستمع نقوم بتغيير الضمير (I) إلى (You):

- I'd say that the new system is successful, **wouldn't you**?

Grammar Question Bank بنك أسئلة القواعد

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- You are coming to the party, you? (SB)
a. are you b. aren't you c. do you d. don't you
- He swim well, can he? (SB)
a. can b. can't c. could d. couldn't
- We were late yesterday, we? (SB)
a. didn't b. did c. was d. weren't

4. She doesn't like pizza, she? (SB)
 a. does b. do c. doesn't d. never
5. I am on time, I? (SB)
 a. am b. are c. aren't d. amn't
6. He went to Cairo, he? (SB)
 a. didn't b. weren't c. did d. were
7. Everyone likes their parents,? (SB)
 a. doesn't he b. doesn't she c. don't they d. don't he
8. You don't like coffee,? (SB)
 a. do you b. don't you c. aren't you d. did you
9. They will come to the party,? (SB)
 a. won't they b. will they c. don't they d. didn't they
10. He went to Luxor last summer,? (SB)
 a. didn't he b. doesn't he c. isn't he d. won't he
11. I'm your best friend,? (SB)
 a. didn't I b. aren't I c. don't I d. isn't I
12. Let's play together,? (SB)
 a. don't we b. do we c. shall we d. should we
13. They don't play football,? (SB)
 a. do they b. don't they c. do we d. don't them
14. You don't think she is ill,? (LM)
 a. do you b. isn't she c. is she d. you do
15. Sorrowfully, no one does their task well,? (LM)
 a. do they b. don't they c. does he d. doesn't he
16. He silly mistakes, does he? (LM)
 a. never made b. has c. never makes d. makes
17. She is very punctual; she rarely comes late,? (LM)
 a. is she b. she doesn't c. doesn't she d. does she
18. She could hardly carry out the difficult task,? (LM)
 a. could she b. she could c. couldn't she d. she couldn't
19. No one has invited her to the wedding party,? (LM)
 a. have they b. has he c. hasn't he d. haven't they
20. He used to play football,? d. hadn't he
 a. didn't he b. used he c. doesn't he
21. You needn't come early,? d. will you
 a. need you b. needn't you c. don't you
22. Nothing was said,? d. was it
 a. didn't it b. were they c. wasn't it
23. Everyone can swim here,? d. can't they
 a. can they b. won't they c. isn't it
24. Hardly had he arrived,? d. did he not
 a. did he b. hadn't he c. had he
25. I shouldn't have said that,? d. do I
 a. shouldn't I b. should I c. did I
26. They rarely go out at night,? d. do they
 a. don't they b. didn't they c. did they
27. She has to work late,? d. need she
 a. hasn't she b. doesn't she c. needn't she
28. I wish I were rich,? d. weren't I
 a. do I b. don't I c. isn't it

29. There's little you can do,?
 a. can't you b. can you c. is there d. isn't there
30. Few students understood the question,?
 a. do they b. have they c. did they d. didn't they
31. She seldom makes mistakes,?
 a. does she b. doesn't she c. did she d. didn't she
32. He never listens to advice,?
 a. does he b. do they c. don't they d. doesn't he
33. Let's not argue,?
 a. do we b. will we c. won't we d. don't we
34. Somebody has taken your bag,?
 a. haven't they b. has he c. hasn't he d. have they
35. She'd finished her work before you arrived,?
 a. hadn't she b. didn't she c. wasn't she d. hasn't she
36. He's been to London,?
 a. hasn't he b. isn't he c. didn't he d. wasn't he
37. You've met her before,?
 a. did you b. have you c. haven't you d. didn't you
38. Few people liked the film,?
 a. did they b. have they c. haven't they d. didn't they
39. The children must go now,?
 a. mustn't they b. need they c. don't they d. haven't they
40. Hardly anyone knew the answer,?
 a. have they b. haven't they c. did they d. didn't they
41. You'd better study,?
 a. don't you b. wouldn't you c. didn't you d. hadn't you
42. He let you borrow his car,?
 a. didn't he b. did he c. doesn't he d. does he
43. They ought to be here by now,?
 a. won't they b. don't they c. oughtn't they d. won't they
44. He had never been abroad before,?
 a. did he b. was he c. had he d. hadn't he
45. Nothing could stop him,?
 a. could he b. could it c. couldn't he d. couldn't it
46. She'd never been so happy,?
 a. hadn't she b. wouldn't she c. had she d. would she
47. Nobody remembered his birthday,?
 a. hadn't they b. had they c. did they d. didn't they
48. Something's wrong here,?
 a. hasn't it b. isn't it c. has it d. is it
49. Few of them understood,?
 a. did they b. didn't they c. do they d. don't they
50. He'd rather stay at home,?
 a. hadn't he b. had he c. would he d. wouldn't he

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. She hasn't finished her work, has she? (still)
 2. He doesn't play the piano, does he? (never)
 3. They didn't win the match, did they? (lost)
 4. She wasn't kind to him, was she? (rude)

- | | |
|--|--------------|
| 5. You haven't eaten yet, have you? | (already) |
| 6. They aren't poor, are they? | (rich) |
| 7. You didn't forget my birthday, did you? | (remembered) |
| 8. She wasn't honest with me, was she? | (lied) |
| 9. He doesn't go to school by car, does he? | (walks) |
| 10. You won't tell anyone, will you? | (secret) |
| 11. They don't go out much, do they? | (stay) |
| 12. He was late to school, wasn't he? | (early) |
| 13. She didn't recognize him, did she? | (forgot) |
| 14. He isn't busy, is he? | (free) |
| 15. You liked the film, didn't you? | (exciting) |
| 16. They weren't here yesterday, were they? | (absent) |
| 17. You like hot weather, don't you? | (cold) |
| 18. He was angry, wasn't he? | (calm) |
| 19. Nobody has come to the party, have they? | (Everybody) |
| 20. You didn't finish your meal, did you? | (hungry) |

خلاصة مهارات الكتابة

Writing Skills: Hints

كتابة سيرة ذاتية Writing a Biography

- A biography is a piece of writing about someone's life, written by another person.
- **It usually answers:**
 - Who? (basic information: name, birth, death if relevant)
 - When and where? (date and place of birth, childhood, education)
 - What? (important events, achievements, difficulties)
 - Why are they important? (their influence, legacy)

كيف تبدأ كتابة سيرة ذاتية How to Start Writing a Biography

1. Who is your favorite famous person (singer, writer, scientist, athlete...)?
2. What do you know about their life?
3. Why do people write biographies?

بناء السيرة الذاتية Structure of a Biography

1. Introduction – Who is the person? Why are they important?
 2. Early life – Birth, family, childhood, education.
 3. Major achievements – Career, discoveries, awards, contributions.
 4. Later life – Old age, retirement, death (if applicable).
 5. Conclusion – Summary of why this person is remembered.
- **Tip:** Use past tense verbs (was, were, studied, worked, wrote).
 - **Use linking words:** first, then, later, finally, because, however, although.
 - **Use dates and time expressions:** in 1995, at the age of 20, during his career.
 - **Use third person:** He/She/They.

Exercises on Writing Skills

1. Which section should come first in a biography?

a. Conclusion	b. Current life	c. Achievements	d. Introduction
---------------	-----------------	-----------------	-----------------
2. The "Early Life" section of a biography typically includes the following EXCEPT ...

a. Career and awards	b. Education
c. Birth and family	d. Childhood experiences

3. What is the main focus of the "Major Achievements" section?
 a. Background b. Career c. Birth d. Retirement
4. The "Conclusion" of a biography should primarily
 a. summarize why a person is remembered b. introduce the person's background
 c. describe the person's childhood d. list the person's researches
5. A biography is different from an autobiography because a biography is
 a. written by another person b. always longer
 c. written by the person it is about d. always about a writer
6. What kind of information is typically found in the "Later Life" section?
 a. Birth and early education. b. The peak of their career and major awards.
 c. Retirement, old age, or death if applicable. d. A summary of their entire legacy.
7. Which of these is the best example of a third-person sentence for a biography?
 a. I think he was a brilliant inventor. b. You can see his inventions in the museum.
 c. He was a brilliant writer. d. We remember him as a brilliant inventor.
8. A good biography is one that
 a. answers many questions about a person's life. b. is written entirely in the present tense.
 c. focuses only on the positive events in a person's life. d. is written by a family member.

تمارين على القواعد التراكمية (قاعدة: Modal Verbs)

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Why don't you go to the theatre with us? This shows (a/an) (LM)
 a. inquiry b. blame c. regret d. suggestion
2. At an airport, I show my passport. (LM)
 a. can't b. don't have to c. have to d. shouldn't
3. Ali isn't late for school; he hurry. (LM)
 a. mustn't b. don't have to c. needn't d. has to
4. When we were children, we didn't have e-mails so we write letters. (2013)
 a. must b. had to c. have to d. has to
5. Writing this report is not important. You bother yourself. (2020)
 a. oughtn't b. mustn't c. needn't d. can't
6. The school bus broke down, so the pupils walk to school. (1990)
 a. must b. ought to c. had to d. should
7. If you don't like the tea, you drink it. I'll bring you orange juice. (1997)
 a. must b. should c. have to d. needn't
8. Is it for us to make the plan first?
 a. necessity b. a must c. have to d. must
9. You wash your hands before eating to get rid of germs.
 a. need b. must c. might d. could
10. You for the meal; it was free and you should have saved your money.
 a. needn't have paid b. needn't pay c. didn't need pay d. didn't have to pay

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. He can drive my car. (possible) (1981)
2. It is not necessary to answer all the questions. (You) (1981)
3. Maximum speed limit 50 kph. (You mustn't) (1985)
4. It is not necessary for you to attend the Board meeting. (don't have to) (2002)
5. Is it necessary for her to send the CV? (have to)
6. It was advisable that you saved the answers once every ten minutes. (should)

A. Vocabulary

1. Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- This solution is just temporary until we find a better one. A synonym for "temporary" is ...
a. short-term b. brief c. permanent d. lasting e. enduring
- Her success story is truly inspiring to young students. A synonym for "inspiring" is
a. motivating b. discouraging c. encouraging d. uninspiring e. demotivating
- The children were fascinated by the magician's tricks. A synonym for "fascinated" is
a. captivated b. uninterested c. indifferent d. bored e. intrigued
- He wants to make ethical choices in his daily life. A synonym for "ethical" is
a. moral b. dishonest c. immoral d. mortal e. principled

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Winter should be warm and comfortable, especially in cold countries. (SB)
a. rehearsal b. applicants c. apprenticeship d. clothing
- Mariam was when she heard strange noises outside her window at midnight. (SB)
a. terrified b. rehearsal c. clothing d. inspiring
- Before becoming a skilled carpenter, Ahmed completed a two-year with a master craftsman. (SB)
a. inspiring b. apprenticeship c. clothing d. terrified
- The company received over 300 for the new job position. (SB)
a. applicants b. apprenticeship c. inspiring d. rehearsal
- The teacher's speech about hard work and success was truly to the students. (SB)
a. terrified b. inspiring c. applicants d. clothing
- The actors met every evening for before the big performance. (SB)
a. apprenticeship b. clothing c. rehearsal d. applicants
- She loves being and wants to make her own decisions.
a. deprived b. dependent c. independent d. reliant
- Learning a new language can be at first but it becomes easier later.
a. enhancing b. challenging c. changing d. changeable
- Teaching young children was a truly experience.
a. awarding b. rewarding c. awarded d. rewarded
- She spent the evening on her phone without realizing how much time had passed.
a. rolling b. ruling c. scrolling d. shivering
- The project is finished; we just need to add a few details.
a. practical b. practicing c. practice d. practically
- Good help create trust between people.
a. domestics b. cosmetics c. lyrics d. ethics

B. Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Everyone knows the answer,? (SB)
a. do they b. don't they c. do he d. doesn't he
- Let's go out,? (SB)
a. will we b. do we c. don't we d. shall we
- Clean your room, you? (SB)
a. will b. won't c. shall d. both a and b
- Don't go, you? (SB)
a. shall b. do c. will d. have
- Students at university need to be independent,? (SB)
a. need they b. do they c. don't they d. haven't they

6. Professors don't always know students' names,? (SB)
 a. do they b. shall they c. don't they d. aren't they
7. University life can be exciting,? (SB)
 a. can it b. can they c. can't it d. can't they
8. At school, classes are smaller,? (SB)
 a. do they b. aren't they c. don't they d. are they
9. The change from school to university is rewarding,? (SB)
 a. isn't it b. is it c. are they d. aren't they
10. She's a doctor,? (SB)
 a. is she b. isn't she c. doesn't she d. wasn't she

2. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. You're Egyptian, aren't you? (come) (SB)
 2. This movie is great, isn't it? (boring) (SB)
 3. He can swim, can't he? (swimmer) (SB)
 4. You like football, don't you? (interested) (SB)

C. Translation

١. وسائل الإعلام تنمي الخيال وتحفز الناس على التفاعل مع المعرفة.

- a. The media develop imagination and motivates people to interact in knowledge.
 b. The media develop imagination and dominate people to interact by knowledge.
 c. The media develops imagination and dominate people to interact with knowledge.
 d. The media develop imagination and motivate people to interact with knowledge.

٢. تعتمد ثقافة أي مجتمع بالأساس على تعليم أفرادها ووعيتهم.

- a. Any society culture depends primarily in the education and awareness of its members.
 b. The culture of some society depends primary in the education and awareness of its members.
 c. The culture of any society is depended primary on education and aware of its members.
 d. The culture of any society depends primarily on the education and awareness of its members.
3. The economic model that determines the price of anything is known as supply and demand. It is a term that promotes a competitive market.

- أ. يُعرف النموذج الاقتصادي الذي يحدد سعر أي شيء باسم العرض والطلب. إنه مصطلح يروج لسوق تنافسي.
 ب. يُعرف الدليل الاقتصادي الذي يختار سعر أي شيء باسم العرض والطلب. إنه مصطلح يمهّد لسوق تنافسي.
 ج. يُعرف النموذج الاقتصادي الذي يختار سعر أي شيء باسم الدفع والطلب. إنه مصطلح يمهّد لسوق تنافسي.
 د. يُعرف الدليل الاقتصادي الذي يحدد سعر أي شيء باسم الدفع والطلب. إنه مصطلح يروج لسوق تخصصي.

4. The digestive system is responsible digestion which allows the body to receive the nutrients and the energy from the food that is eaten.

- أ. الجهاز الهضمي مسؤول عن التذوق الذي يسمح للجسم بتلقي الفوائد الغذائية والطاقة من الطعام الذي يؤكل.
 ب. الجهاز الهضمي مسؤول عن الهضم الذي يسمح للجسم بدمج العناصر الغذائية والطاقة من الطعام الذي يؤكل.
 ج. الجهاز الهضمي مسؤول عن الهضم الذي يسمح للجسم بتلقي العناصر الغذائية والطاقة من الطعام الذي يؤكل.
 د. الجهاز الهضمي مسؤول عن الهضم الذي يسمح للجسم بتلقي الفوائد الغذائية والطاقة من الطعام الذي يؤكل.

D. Reading Comprehension

1. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Basketball fans agree that Michael Jordan, the superstar of the NBA, has the longest hang time on the court. "Hang time" وقت التعليق is the length of time a player can stay off the floor and up in the air. Jordan also has one of the longest lists of awards. He was named College Player of the Year and Rookie of the Year and later became a two-time Olympic Gold Medalist for the U.S., top scorer for 7 seasons, and the Most Valuable Player 3 different times.

Michael played guard for the Chicago Bulls. His average score per game was at least 28 points. The average attendance حضور at his games doubled. Fans couldn't wait to see Michael

glide and hang. Even when the Bulls were on the road, attendance in other cities increased when Michael was in town. Michael soon became an **idol** for teenagers and a star for adults. Basketball was not always easy for Michael. He was so slow and weak in high school that he barely made the team. He continued developing his skills and played at the University of North Carolina during college. Soon he became known for his fast feet and overall speed.

Michael's personality seems to match his skills. He always seems happy and friendly. His patience with reporters and children is endless. Everyone admires the man who led the Bulls in scoring, rebounding, assists, free-throw percentages, and steals. Even though Michael has retired from basketball courts, fans still appreciate him as he makes appearances at children's hospitals, hosts fundraisers جمع تبرعات for charity, or just shakes hands with the fans.

Michael promises to keep up with his television appearances and moviegoers hope he may star in another motion picture. Whether or not Michael will be seen again on the big screen, Jordan will always be remembered as one of basketball's greatest players.

- Michael Jordan is mainly known for his
 a. assists and rebounds b. high school career c. hang time on the court d. delicate childhood
- How many points did Michael average each game?
 a. At most 28 point b. Only 13 points c. Only 33 points d. At least 28 points
- It is easy to tell Michael was popular with the fans because
 a. attendance at his games doubled b. he can "hang" in the air
 c. he is pleasant to reporters d. he can attend fundraisers for charity
- Why do you think fans call Michael Jordan a superstar?
 a. He has impressive accomplishments. b. He signs every autograph and poses for pictures.
 c. He is seen in many television commercials. d. He can keep himself away from others.
- Michael became known for his overall speed when
 a. he was at high school b. he played at the University of North Carolina
 c. he taught himself new techniques d. a coach began to teach him
- How do we know that Michael is a friendly character?
 a. He scores a lot of points on courts. b. He is patient with children and reporters.
 c. He participates in a lot of TV shows. d. He doesn't help the poor people.
- The underlined word "idol" has the same meaning as
 a. hero b. statue c. sphinx d. mad
- Why do fans still appreciate Michael?
 a. He shakes hands with the fans in the street b. He reads stories for his fans
 c. He visits sick children at hospitals d. Both a and c

2. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

An aerosol can رعاء معننى consists of a metal container with a concave base قاعدة مقعرة. The base is shaped like this to withstand يتحمل the high pressure of the substances inside the can. In the top of the can is a plastic nozzle فوهة, connected to a valve صمام and a plunger مكبس. A narrow tube passes from these almost to the bottom of the can. The can contains the substance to be sprayed together with a liquid known as a propellant دافع. The propellant is unusual because it turns into a gas when it is released. When the nozzle is pressed, the pressure of this gas forces the content of the can (paint or polish) through the hole in the nozzle. It is this that creates the spray.

In recent years scientists have become worried that some propellants used in aerosol cans may be polluting our world. They believe some of the most commonly used propellants; substances known as chlorinated fluorocarbons (CFC), may be damaging the ozone layer in the upper atmosphere. The thin layer protects us from the harmful ultraviolet اشعة فوق بنفسجية in sunlight. If the ozone layer is badly damaged, it could make humans more prone to skin

cancer. Scientists have developed safer propellants, and some countries have banned the use of CFCs. Aerosol cans that contain safe propellants often have "Ozone Friendly" written on them.

Aerosol cans are made of either aluminum or steel, both of which are high-value metals that can be infinitely recycled into new metal products. The recycling process involves safely puncturing **يقطب** the can, but if thrown in the garbage, the can could explode when crushed in a landfill. That's why we have to be careful with aerosol cans while getting rid of them.

- According to the passage, what should be done with an aerosol can after usage?
 - It should be thrown into the sea.
 - It should be thrown into the garbage.
 - It should be cut into pieces.
 - It should be recycled.
- The propellant turns into a gas when it is
 - heated
 - cooled
 - unusual
 - released
- What is special about the propellant?
 - Its withstanding pressure.
 - Its turning into gas.
 - Its turning into liquid.
 - Its containing paint.
- Why does the can base have a certain shape?
 - Because this looks more beautiful.
 - To have it placed on tables well.
 - So that it can resist the pressure.
 - To turn the propellant into gas.
- What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?
 - the gas
 - the can
 - the aerosol
 - the propellant
- What do you think the underlined word "prone" means?
 - imposed
 - restricted
 - supposed
 - exposed
- "That's why we have to be careful with aerosol cans" What is the writer's tone?
 - cheerful
 - optimistic
 - serious
 - meaningful
- "Ozone Friendly" means something which the Ozone layer.
 - doesn't damage
 - doesn't like
 - includes
 - develops

E. Writing

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Which of the following is correctly structured?
 - "Look out behind you!" she yelled.
 - "look out behind you!" she yelled.
 - "Look out behind you?" she yelled.
 - "Look out behind you!" she yelled,
- We use an apostrophe with an s ('s) to show who something.
 - does
 - owns
 - says
 - writes
- If you are writing an opinion essay, you divide the opinions into two groups:
 - Up and Down
 - To and Fro
 - For and Against
 - Prefix and Suffix
- The past simple, past continuous and past perfect tenses are tenses.
 - descriptive
 - narrative
 - expository
 - future

2. Write about (180 – 200) words on one of the following:

- A narrative essay about "a trip your class made two weeks ago."
- The demerits of leaving home without having breakfast.

3. Write a paragraph of Six lines on the following:

- A biography about Naguib Mahfouz.
- A biography about Mohammed Salah.

F. The Novel

- Answer the following questions:

- What choice does Edmond make at the end of the story: more revenge or peace? Why? (SB)
- How does the theme of forgiveness change the meaning of the story compared to pure revenge? (SB)
- Do you agree that forgiveness is stronger than revenge? Why or why not? (SB)

A: Revision on (Vocabulary - Expressions - Idioms)

Group (A)

burden	عبء	affection	عاطفة	accusation / accuse	اتهام / يتهم
cargo	بضائع	betray / betrayal	بخون / خيانة	under arrest	مطلوب القبض عليه
helm	عجلة القيادة	ceremony	احتفال	deceive / deceit	يخدع / خداع
loyal / loyalty	وفى / وفاء	destiny	المصير	suspect	يشك في / يشتبه في
proof / evidence	دليل	envy / envious	حسد / حسود	raise suspicion	يشير الشك
despair	يأس	fiancé / fiancée	خطيب / خطيبة	doubt	يشك في / الشك
desperately	بيأس	companion	رفيق	escape	يهرب / هروب
do justice	يحقق العدل	wisdom	الحكمة	scandal	فضيحة
injustice	الظلم	guidance	هداية / إرشاد	freedom	الحرية
prisoner	سجين	treasure	كنز	smuggler	مهرب
suffer from	يعاني من	tunnel	نفق	bitterness	المرارة
insufferable	لا يطاق	real identity	هوية حقيقية	greed / greedy	الطمع / طماع
fortune	ثروة / حظ	endure	يتحمل	charming	جذاب / ساحر
inheritance	ميراث	wealth / wealthy	ثراء / ثري	abandoned / deserted	مهجور
reveal / conceal	يكشف / يخفي	transformation	تحول / تغير	bitterness	المرارة
secret	سر / سري	revenge	انتقام / ينتقم	turned bitter	أصبحت مريرة
satisfaction	الرضا / القناعة	plotted	بحك / يخطط / يتآمر	forgiveness	المغفرة
prosecutor	المدعي	treacherous plot	مؤامرة بغدر	peace	السلام / الهدوء
sinner	المنذوب	mercy	الرحمة	triumph / victory	التصاير
mate	بحار	sparkle	يلمع	deck	سطح السفينة
disguise	يتكر / التكر	untouched	سليم	dock	رصيف - مرسى
fall gravely ill	يمرض بشدة	untouchable	لا يُمس	take command	يتولى القيادة
navigate storms	يبحر في عواصف	negotiate with	يتفاوض مع	near / approach	يقترُب من
gather	يتجمع - يتجمهر	crowd	مجموعة من الناس	port workers	عمال الميناء
obey	يطيع	tightly	بقوة - بإحكام	promised to him	وعدته بالزواج
anchor	رست في مرسى (سفينة)	lower the sails	ينزل الأشرعة	eager to	متلهف لـ
embrace	يحتضن	tremble	يرتعش	modestly	باحترام - بتواضع
captaincy	قيادة السفينة	gangplank	مجر السفينة اللوحى	humble / modest	متواضع
malice	حقد - خبث	fist	قبضة يد	clinched	مطبقة
mutter	يتنمّم	humiliation	إذلال - إهانة	curled into	انكمشت على
possibilities	إمكانات - احتمالات	heartbroken	محطم القلب	owe to	يدين إلى

Exercises on Group (A)

1. She felt deep when her boss pointed out her mistake in front of the entire team.
 - a. possibility
 - b. gangplank
 - c. transformation
 - d. humiliation
2. The old ship was securely in the harbor to wait out the storm.
 - a. shipwrecked
 - b. accused
 - c. anchored
 - d. smuggled
3. From the moment they met, they felt it was their to be together.
 - a. destiny
 - b. captaincy
 - c. disguise
 - d. inheritance
4. After his father passed away, he felt the heavy of providing for his entire family.
 - a. satisfaction
 - b. burden
 - c. doubt
 - d. suspicion

Group (B)

purser	أمين محاسبة على سفينة	tavern	حانة	fate	القدر
authorities	السلطات	hiss - hissed	بفح متحدثا كئيبان	traitor	خائن
compose	يؤلف	exile	ينفي / منفي	treason	الخيانة
seize	يتحكم في / يمسك بـ	local prosecutor	المدعي العام	debts	ديون
innocent	بريء	deputy prosecutor	نائب المدعي	destruction	تدمير
guilty / guilt	مذنب / ذنب	scheme	خطة	rival	خصم - منافس
clung to / clutch	تشبثت بـ	garment of mourning	عباءة حداد	pale	شاحب
rumour	شائعة - ينشر شائعة	betrothal feast	وليمة الخطوبة	cheer	يهتف
restore	يسترد	throne / crown	عرش / تاج	defeat	هزيمة / يهزم
hint	تلميح - ملاحظة	execute	ينفذ حكم الإعدام	bind - bound	يقيد - يربط
judge	قاضي / يحكم	fair-hearted	منصف	broke the seal	فتح الختم
ruin / ruins	يفسد / أطلال	release / free	يطلق سراح	heart pounded	خفق القلب
confess	يعترف	long to	يرغب في	dungeon	زنازاة تحت الأرض
confession	اعتراف	plead with	يتوسل لـ	pretend	يتظاهر - يدعي
collapse	ينهار / انهيار	fell on deaf ears	لم يستجاب له	grief / sorrow	الحزن
royalist	مناصر للملكية	farewell	الوداع	vanish	يتلاشى
sacrifice	يضحى / تضحية	chains	سلاسل / قيود	flames	لهب / نيران
pierce	يخترق	shackled / chained	مقيد	turned cold	تجمد (الدم)
blade	سيف / نصل	grimly	ببرود / بتجهم	fortress-prison	سجن محصن
his spirit sank	ياست روحه	infamous for	سوء السمعة	crash of waves	تحطم الأمواج
hollow pain	ألم أجوف	slip away	ينزلق بعيدا	in an instant	في لحظة
break a bond	يحطم الترابط	exchange glances	يتبادل نظرات	swallow	يبتلع
etched	محفورة / منقوشة	nightmare	كابوس	criminal	مجرم
denounce	بشهر بـ / يبلغ عن	haunt	يطارد	commit a crime	يرتكب جريمة
denunciation	تشهير / تشهير	take root	يترسخ / يثبت	steady	ثابت / قوي
soar	ينطلق / يحلق	twisted into	تحول إلى	condemn	يدين بتهمة
dare	يجرؤ على	invisible web	شبكة خفية	clear his name	يبريء اسمه
press	يلح / يضغط	his heart froze	تجمد قلبه	rejoice	يفرح
meanwhile	في نفس الوقت	pity - pitied	يشفق على	shrug - shrugged	يهز كتفيه
corridors	ممرات	question	يتساءل / يشكك في	jailer	سجان
barred / bars	مسدود / قضبان	stab with pain	يطعن بالألم	rot	يتعفن

Exercises on Group (B)

- The chef accidentally his finger with a paring knife while cutting vegetables.
 - denounced
 - swallowed
 - stabbed
 - hissed
- After the sun rose, the morning fog, revealing a clear, blue sky.
 - shrugged
 - soared
 - haunted
 - vanished
- Because of the icy wind, she the warm cup of coffee to feel warmth.
 - clutched
 - sacrificed
 - collapsed
 - defeated
- He was from entering the competition because he did not meet the age requirement.
 - pressed
 - chained
 - shackled
 - barred

Group (C)

lit by	مضاء به	experience	يعمر به / يجرب	mildew	العفن
endlessly	بلا توقف	drag - dragged	يسحب	mock / sneer	يسخر من
youthful	شاب / عطي (صفة)	the heavens	السماء	prison cell	زنازة السجن
trace patterns	يتتبع الأشكال	drained away	استنزفت	cracks	شقوق
charity	الإحسان	pound against	يرتطم به	squeeze	يضغط بقوة على
constantly	باستمرار	frail heart	قلب ضعيف	torture	عذاب
obsession	هوس	surround	يحيط به	stare (gaze) at	يحمق في
vigilance	حذر / يقظة	no matter the cost	مهما تكلف	praise	يمتدح / يثني على
sentinel	حارس / خفير	defy - defied	يتحدى	iron gates	بوابات حديدية
loosen	يفكك	dreaded sight	منظر مخيف	stale bread	خبز باس
faint	خافت	crush his spirit	يسحق روحه	claws	مخالب
steady	مستمر	his heart leapt	قفز قلبه	tapped lightly	نقر برفق
scratching	خدش	clasp	يشبك	resume	يستأنف من جديد
iron nails	مسامير حديدية	bare hands	بدان عاريتان	lined with	مخطط به
bleed - bled	ينزف	with awe	بدهشة	locked	محبوس
gratitude	امتنان	by sheer thought	بالفكر المحض	miscalculated	أخطأ الحساب
crawl	يزحف	felt reborn	شعر بميلاده من جديد	riches	ثروات
fluent in	طليق (فصيح) في	abbé	أب / قس (رجل دين)	priceless	لا يقدر بثمن
if fate wills it	لو شاء القدر	priest	كاهن / كبير كهنة	artifacts	تحف
seizures / fits	نوبات	otherwise	شيء غير ذلك	trapped	محتجز / محبوس
expose	يفضح	recount	يروى (يسرد) قصة	fade	يبهت / يضعف
empires	إمبراطوريات	geometry	علم الهندسة	armed with	مسلح به
bond deepened	توطدت العلاقة	reason with logic	يفكر منطقياً	desire	يرغب / رغبة
seize / possess	يستحوذ على	place a firm hand	يقبض بشدة	consume	يسلب / يستهلك
lift	يرفع	remain noble	يظل نبيلاً	lining	بطانة
vengeance	الانتقام / الثار	parchment	قطعة من الرق	sacred scripture	كتاب مقدس
wipe tears	بمسح الدموع	gasp for breath	يلهث	kneel - knelt	يركع
rare statues	تماثيل نادرة	sense of duty	إحساس بالواجب	fell to knees	جثا على ركبتيه
prince	أمير	beyond measure	لا يقدر بثمن	fool	مهرج / أحمق
sack	كيس	echo - echoed	يتردد صداه	prayer	صلاة / دعاء
plunged into	سقط في	bit his lips	عض شفتيه	forehead	الجبين

Exercises on Group (C)

- The critic at the young artist's painting, making him feel shy and defeated.
 - swore
 - sneered
 - consumed
 - armed
- I hope to travel the world, if fate it, and see all its wonders.
 - echoes
 - desires
 - wills
 - clasps
- The screen was so deeply that it was difficult to read the text beneath the mark.
 - scratched
 - surrounded
 - stared
 - recounted
- She could bring her goals into reality by thought and focused intention.
 - sheer
 - share
 - cheer
 - shade

Group (D)

cannonballs	قذائف مدفعية	shipwrecked	تحطمت سفينته	scream	صرخ
on the horizon	في الأفق	under a false name	باسم مستعار	chest	صندوق
cliffs	منحدرات صخرية	paradise	جنة	a cross	صليب
steep	شديد الانحدار	pickaxe	محول	stream	جدول مائي
strike - struck	ينقض / يضرب	fueled by	تستمد قوتها من	lifted the lid	رفع الغطاء
rubies	ياقوت أحمر	emeralds	زمرد	marble	رخام
cautious	حذر / حريص	decorated with	مزين به	blinded by	أعماه كذا ...
victim	ضحية	pay taxes	يدفع الضرائب	routes	طرق / مسارات
stain with lies	يلطخ بالكذب	rage	الغضب	shipping company	شركة ملاحية
banker	مصرفي	manners	أخلاق	wronged	مظلوم
seek - sought	يسعى إلى	conflicts	صراعات	corrupt / corruption	فساد / فساد
elegant	أنيق	refined	راقي	mask	قناع
fugitive	هارب	refuge	ملجأ	prey	فريسة
caverns	كهوف	master	سيد	retreat	ينعزل
barren	قاحل / مقفر	storerooms	مخزن	barrels	براميل
unreadable	غامض	fund / finance	بمول / تمويل	aristocrat	أرستقراطي
handful	حفنة	swords	السيف	aristocracy	الطبقة الأرستقراطية
respected blood	أصل محترم	ancestry	النسب	wicked	شرير
carry out	ينفذ	guardian	حارس	luxurious	فاخر
innkeeper	صاحب نزل	battle	معركة	magnificent	فخم
huge sums	مبالغ طفلة	salons	صالونات	warmhearted	طيب القلب
silent oath	حلفان صامت	witness	بشهاد / شاهد	mastermind	عقل مدير
lay dying	يحتضر	attempt to	يحاول أن	visions	رؤى / خيالات
trial	محاكمة	honor / dishonor	شرف / عار	manipulate	يتلاعب به
investigation	تحري / تحقيق	reserved for	من نصيب	brand	بوصم به
reunited	يلتقي من جديد	ray of light	شعاع نور	spare	يعطو عن
allies	حلفاء	swept through	اجتاحت	angel / devil	ملاك / شيطان
in disgust	باشمزاز	poisoning	تسميم	weep - wept	يبكي
appointed	محدد / مختار	stepmother	زوجة أب	ghosts	أشباح
let go of	يتخلى عن / يترك	bowed his head	أطرق برأسه	lifeless	بلا حياة
slave / slavery	عبد / عبودية	ashes of revenge	رماد الانتقام	the unknown	المجهول

Exercises on Group (D)

- She turned away from the cruel scene in, unable to watch any longer.
 - disguise
 - trial
 - vision
 - disgust
- The library was her peaceful from the chaos of the city.
 - ghost
 - refuge
 - fugitive
 - cavern
- The path up the mountain was very, making the climb extremely challenging.
 - steep
 - elegant
 - wicked
 - refined
- The defeated boxer his head as the winner's name was announced.
 - appointed
 - reunited
 - investigated
 - bowed

B: Revision on Chapters

Chapter (1): The Arrival at Marseilles الوصول إلى مارسيليا

Summary of the Chapter ملخص الفصل

- Edmond returned proudly to Marseille; his voyage marked the hopeful start of a new life.
عاد إدموند إلى مارسيليا بفخر، كانت الرحلة بداية أمله في حياة جديدة.
- Edmond took command after the captain fell ill and safely guided the Pharaon home.
كان إدموند قد تولى القيادة بعد مرض القبطان وقاد السفينة بأمان إلى الوطن.
- The ship approached the dock; Edmond saw his father and Mercédès waiting, he was joyful.
اقتربت السفينة من الرصيف، رأى إدموند والده وميرسيدس ينتظرانه، فامتلاً بالفرح.
- Edmond rushed to greet his loved ones. His father wept and Mercédès smiled lovingly.
أسرع إدموند لتحية أحبائه، بكى أبوه وابتسمت ميرسيدس بحمبة.
- He announced he would become captain; his father and Mercédès were filled with pride and hope.
أعلن أنه سيصبح قبطاناً، فامتلاً والده وميرسيدس بالفخر والأمل.
- Monsieur Morrel, the ship owner, confirmed Edmond's promotion and praised his courage and skill.
أكد السيد موريل - صاحب السفينة - ترقية إدموند وأشاد بشجاعته ومهارته.
- Fernand and Danglars watched with jealousy, resenting Edmond's success and happiness.
راقب فرناند ودانجلار بحسد، مستائين من نجاح إدموند وسعادته.
- Edmond learned of his father's poverty and immediately gave him all his earnings.
علم إدموند بفقر والده وأعطاه فوراً كل ما كسبه.
- That evening, Edmond and Mercédès dreamed confidently of a joyful future together.
في تلك المساء، حلم إدموند وميرسيدس بثقة بمستقبل سعيد معاً.
- Fernand and Danglars plotted to ruin Edmond by writing a false letter accusing him of treason.
خطط فرناند ودانجلار للإيقاع بإدموند بكتابة رسالة كاذبة تتهمه بالخيانة.
- The letter denounced Edmond as a messenger for Napoleon, endangering his entire future.
اتهمت الرسالة إدموند بأنه رسول لنابليون، مما عرض مستقبله كله للخطر.
- During Edmond's engagement feast, soldiers arrested him without explanation.
خلال حفل خطوبة إدموند، اعتقله الجنود دون أي تفسير.
- The celebration collapsed into shock and sorrow as Mercédès cried that Edmond was innocent.
انهيار الاحتفال في صدمة وحزن بينما صرخت ميرسيدس بأن إدموند بريء.

أسئلة بإجاباتها النموذجية Questions with Model Answers

1. Why was Edmond respected by the crew after the captain's death? (SB)
لماذا كان إدموند محترماً من قبل الطاقم بعد وفاة القبطان؟
He took command with courage, navigated storms, and brought the ship safely home.
تولى القيادة بشجاعة، وأبحر بالسفينة خلال العواصف، وأعاد السفينة للوطن بسلام.
2. How does the arrival at Marseilles set the stage for both hope and danger in Edmond's life? (SB)
كيف مهد وصول إدموند إلى مارسيليا الطريق لكل من الأمل والخطر في حياته؟
It brings him joy, love, and position, but it also attracts jealousy and betrayal.
يجلب له الفرح والحب والمنصب، لكنه في الوقت نفسه يثير الغيرة والخيانة.

3. What can we guess about Edmond's personality from how he takes responsibility on the ship? (SB)
 إنه شجاع، ومسؤول، وذكي، ومقدر. ماذا يمكن أن نستنتج عن شخصية إدموند من طريقة تحمله مسؤولية السفينة؟
 He is brave, responsible, intelligent, and respectable.

4. Do you think Edmond's loyalty to his captain was more important than reaching his family quickly? Why or why not? (SB)
 هل تعتقد أن ولاء إدموند لقبطانه كان أهم من وصوله بسرعة إلى أسرته؟ لماذا أو لماذا لا؟

Yes, because loyalty and duty show honor and gain respect.

نعم، لأن الولاء والواجب يُظهران الشرف ويجلبان الاحترام.

5. If you were in Edmond's place, would you have acted differently with the ship and the crew? Explain. (SB)
 لو كنت إدموند، هل تتصرف بشكل آخر مع السفينة والطاقم؟ وضح.

No. Showing responsibility is the best way to protect the ship and earn trust.

لا. لأن إظهار المسؤولية هو أفضل وسيلة لحماية السفينة وكسب الثقة.

6. The sea voyage represents more than travel. What might the sea symbolize for Edmond? (SB)
 الرحلة البحرية تمثل أكثر من مجرد سفر. إلى ماذا قد يرمز البحر بالنسبة لإدموند؟

The sea symbolizes opportunity, freedom, and the beginning of a new hopeful life.

البحر يرمز إلى الفرصة والحرية وبداية حياة جديدة مليئة بالأمل.

7. What plans did Edmond and Mercedes have for their life together before everything changed? (SB)
 أي خطط وضعها إدموند وميرسيدس لحياتهما معا قبل أن يتغير كل شيء؟

They planned to marry soon, build a happy home near the sea, and start a family.

خططا للزواج قريبا، وبناء بيت سعيد قرب البحر، وتأسيس أسرة.

8. Why was Fernand jealous of Edmond?

Fernand loved Mercédès but she loved Edmond.

لماذا كان فرناند يغار من إدموند؟

فرناند يحب ميرسيدس، لكنها تحب إدموند.

9. What made Danglers hate Edmond?

Edmond was promoted captain at only nineteen.

ما الذي جعل دانجلر يكره إدموند؟

إدموند رُقي قبطاناً وهو في التاسعة عشرة فقط.

10. What false accusation did Danglers write in a letter? (SB)
 أي تهمة كاذبة كتبها دانجلر في رسالة؟
 That Edmond carried a secret letter from Napoleon to his supporters.

أن إدموند يحمل رسالة سرية من نابليون إلى أنصاره.

11. Mercedes proved to love Edmond too much. Prove. (SB)
 أثبت أن ميرسيدس أثبتت حبها لإدموند.

When he was arrested, she cried out and said Edmond was innocent.

حين تم القبض عليه صرخت وقالت إنه بريء.

12. Fate played a role in Edmond's downfall. How? (SB)
 كيف لعب القدر دوراً في سقوط إدموند؟
 Envy and betrayal shaped Edmond's future.

الحسد والخيانة شكلا مستقبل إدموند.

13. What role did Edmond play during the storm? (SB)
 He guided the ship safely and protected the cargo.

الدور الذي لعبه إدموند في العاصفة؟

قاد السفينة بسلام وحمل البضائع.

14. Why was the Pharaon's return to Marseille so important?

لماذا كان رجوع سفينة الفرعون إلى مارسيليا مهماً؟

It carried valuable cargo and news of captain's death.

15. Edmond had a sense of gratitude. Prove this. (SB)
 أثبت أن إدموند كان لديه إحساساً بالامتنان.

He gave his wages to his father who had paid his debt.

16. **Edmond's father was a caring one. Illustrate.** كان والد إدموند أبا عطوفاً. فسر ذلك.
He sacrificed for his son and paid his debt and lived in poverty because of this.
ضحى لأجل ابنه ودفع دينه وعاش في فقر بسبب ذلك.
17. **How did Edmond's skill affect everyone?** كيف أثرت مهارة إدموند على الجميع؟
Even the old sailors, who at first had doubted him, now spoke of him with respect.
حتى البحارة المعجزة الذين شككوا من قبل فيه، أصبحوا يتحدثون عنه باحترام.
18. **Both Fernand and Danglars were not good at hiding their feelings. Illustrate.** لم يكن أي من فرناند ودانجلار بارعين في إخفاء مشاعرهما. وضح ذلك.
Both looked jealous and envious when Edmond was promoted.
كلاهما بدا غيورا وحسودا حين ترقى إدموند.
19. **Edmond was wrong when he said about happiness, "Nothing can take it from us." Explain.** كان إدموند مخطئاً حين قال عن السعادة "لا شيء يمكنه نزعها منا." فسر ذلك.
Jealousy and envy stole his happiness.
الغيرة والحسد سرقا سعادته.
20. **What does Dumas mean by saying: "With that single act, Edmond's future was poisoned"?** ماذا كان يعني دوما بقوله: "بهذا الفعل الوحيد، تم إفساد مستقبل إدموند"؟
The false letter sent Edmond to prison for many years.
الخطاب المزيف وضع إدموند في السجن لسنوات طويلة.

Exercises on Chapter (1)

- In what ways does Edmond's return to Marseilles mark the beginning of both promising opportunities and serious threats in his life? (SB)
- Fate served Edmond on the Pharaon. **Explain.**
- Mercedes was unfortunate. **Explain.**
- How was jealousy a destructive force in Edmond's life?
- Edmond's rapid rise to captaincy was a risk. **Explain.**
- Success can blind us to fact. **Discuss.**
- "There must be a mistake! Edmond is innocent!" What do this show about Mercedes?
- Monsieur Morrel supported Edmond. Give two examples to prove this.
- Why is Marseille important in the novel?
- Celebration can turn suddenly into sorrow. Give an example from the novel.
- Edmond had a sense of loyalty. **Prove.**
- How did betrayal shape Edmond's destiny?
- Why was the arrival at Marseilles the beginning of a new life for Edmond?
- Monsieur Morrel was a man of his word. **Prove.**
- Do you think young age should prevent promotion? Why?
- Nature celebrated Edmond and Mercédès's happiness. **Explain.**
- "But fate had other plans." To what extent is this sentence right?
- The seeds of betrayal grew in the souls of Danglars and Fernand. **Explain.**
- Danglars was dishonest. **Prove this.**
- Napoleon was powerful even in exile. **Illustrate.**
- How did evil shadows spoil the celebration?

Chapter (2): A Treacherous Plot مؤامرة غادرة

Summary of the Chapter ملخص الفصل

- The betrothal celebration ended in shock as Edmond was arrested; joy became sorrow. انتهى احتفال الخطوبة بصدمة بعدما تم القبض على إدموند؛ أصبح الفرح حزناً.
- Mercédès sought comfort in Edmond's father while Danglars and Fernand secretly celebrated the success of their plot. بحثت مرسيدس عن الراحة عند والد إدموند بينما احتفل دانجلار وفرناند سراً بنجاح خطتهما.
- Villefort received the false letter that accused Edmond of carrying a message from Napoleon to Paris. تسلم فيل فورت الرسالة المزيفة التي اتهمت إدموند بحمل رسالة من نابليون إلى باريس.
- Villefort read the letter and realized its danger in a kingdom terrified of Bonapartist threats. قرأ فيل فورت الرسالة وأدرك خطورتها في مملكة خائفة من التهديدات البونابرتية.
- Edmond insisted he carried the letter only out of duty and knew nothing of politics. أكد إدموند أنه حمل الرسالة بدافع الواجب ولا يعرف شيئاً عن السياسة.
- When Villefort discovered the letter was addressed to his own father, he feared the ruin of his career. عندما اكتشف فيل فورت أن الرسالة موجهة إلى والده، خشي أن تنهار مسيرته المهنية.
- Edmond was honest, but Villefort condemned him to the Château d'If to protect his own ambitions. كان إدموند صادقاً، لكن فيل فورت حكم عليه بالسجن في قصر إيف لحماية طموحاته.
- Marseille was shocked by Edmond's imprisonment, while Mercédès begged officials to believe in his innocence. صدمت مرسيليا بسجن إدموند بينما توسلت مرسيدس للمسؤولين أن يصدقوا براءته.
- Edmond's father grew weaker with grief, spending his days whispering his son's name. ازداد والد إدموند ضعفاً من الحزن، يقضي أيامه يهمس باسم ابنه.
- Fernand tried in vain to win Mercédès's heart. حاول فرناند دون جدوى كسب قلب مرسيدس.
- Villefort burned the letter to save his future; he sacrificed Edmond's freedom. أحرق فيل فورت الرسالة لينقذ مستقبله، وضحي بحرية إدموند.
- Edmond was taken toward the Château d'If; he cried out for help while the sea answered with silence. تم اقتياد إدموند إلى قصر إيف، صرخ طلباً للمساعدة بينما أجابه البحر بالصمت.
- Danglars and Fernand rejoiced, believing Edmond gone, though his spirit lived on in Mercédès's heart. فرح دانجلار وفرناند معتقدين أن إدموند انتهى، لكن روحه ظلت حية بقلب مرسيدس.

أسئلة بإجاباتها النموذجية Questions with Model Answers

1. What were Edmond and Mercédès planning for their future? (SB)

ماذا كان إدموند ومرسيدس يخططان لمستقبلهما؟

To get married and begin a life together filled with love and happiness.

أن يتزوجا ويبدءا حياة مملوءة بالحب والسعادة.

2. How can we tell that Fernand's feelings for Mercédès were more than friendship? (SB)

كيف يمكننا أن نعرف أن مشاعر فرناند تجاه مرسيدس كانت أكثر من مجرد صداقة؟

He became jealous of Edmond and plotted against him to deprive him of Mercedes.

شعر بالغيرة من إدموند وانقلب ضده ليحرمه من مرسيدس.

3. Compare Edmond's hope with Fernand's jealousy. How do these two emotions create conflict? (SB) كيف تخلق هاتان العاطفتان صراعاً؟
Edmond's hope gave him joy and optimism. أمل إدmond منحه فرحاً وتفاؤلاً.
Fernand's jealousy filled him with envy and bitterness. غيرة فرناند ملأت قلبه حسداً مرارة.
The two emotions made Fernand betray Edmond. العاطفتان جعلتا فرناند يخون إدmond.
4. Do you think Edmond should have noticed Fernand's jealousy earlier? Why or why not? (SB) هل تعتقد أن إدmond كان ينبغي أن يلاحظ غيرة فرناند في وقت أبكر؟ لماذا أو لماذا لا؟
Fernand's envy was obvious but Edmond's happiness made him overlook the danger. كان حسد فرناند واضحاً، لكن سعادة إدmond جعلته يتغاضى عن الخطر.
5. Imagine you are Mercédès. Would you trust Fernand as a friend after noticing his envy? Explain. (SB) تخيل أنك مرسيدس، هل ستثق بفرناند كصديق بعد ملاحظتك غيخته؟ فسر.
No, Fernand cared about his own desires more than her happiness. لا، كان فرناند يهتم برغباته الخاصة أكثر من سعادتها.
6. Weddings often symbolize unity and new beginnings. What does Edmond and Mercédès' planned wedding symbolize? (SB) غالباً ما يرمز الزواج إلى الوحدة والبدائيات الجديدة. ماذا يرمز زواج إدmond ومرسيدس المخطط له؟
It symbolizes hope, but its destruction represents how envy can ruin happiness. إنه يرمز إلى الأمل، ولكن تدميره يمثل كيف يمكن للحسد أن يدمر السعادة.
7. Why did Ville fort destroy the letter? (SB) لماذا أُلغ فيل فورت الرسالة؟
It was addressed to his father; it would ruin his reputation and ambitions. كان الخطاب موجهاً إلى والده، وقد يدمر سمعته وطموحاته.
8. Edmond's father was wise. Explain. فسر كيف كان والد إدmond حكيماً.
He knew envy is a cruel enemy and understood something dark had been planned. كان يعلم أن الحسد عدو قاسي وأدرك أن شيئاً مظلماً قد تم التخطيط له.
9. "and now they waited for the storm to destroy their rival." What do these words mean? "والآن انتظروا العاصفة لتدمر خصمهم." ماذا تعني هذه الكلمات؟
Fernand and Danglars knew the accusation of treason would destroy Edmond. كان فرناند ودانجلار يعلمان أن اتهام الخيانة سوف يدمر إدmond.
10. Ambition can be a killer. Explain applying this to Ville fort. الطموح قد يكون قاتلاً. اشرح كيفية تطبيق هذا على فيل فورت.
He sent innocent Edmond to prison so that he could rise in government. أرسل إدmond البريء إلى السجن حتى يتمكن من الصعود في الحكم.
11. Edmond was brave. Give an example to prove this. أعط مثالاً لتبين أن إدmond كان شجاعاً.
He stood tall before the deputy prosecutor, confused but not afraid. لقد وقف شامخاً أمام نائب المدعي العام، مرتبكاً ولكن ليس خائفاً.
12. Mercedes cared for Edmond too much. Explain. كانت مرسيدس تهتم بإدmond كثيراً. فسر.
She pleaded with officials and cried out that Edmond was no traitor. توسلت إلى المسؤولين وصرخت بأن إدmond ليس خائناً.
13. Edmond's father was greatly affected by his son's imprisonment. Discuss. ناقش كيف تأثر والد إدmond بشدة بسجن ابنه.
He grew weaker with grief. He sat by the window, whispering Edmond's name. ازداد حزنه. جلس عند النافذة، يهيمس باسم إدmond.

14. Ville fort was dishonest. Prove this. أثبت أن فيل فورت لم يكن أميناً.
He hid the fact that the letter was addressed to his father. أخفى حقيقة أن الرسالة كانت لأبيه.
15. If you were Fernand, would you try to gain Mercedes's heart? Why/Why not? لو كنت مكان فرناند، هل ستحاول كسب قلب مرسيدس؟ لماذا أو لماذا لا؟
No. True love respects the other person's feelings. لا، الحب الحقيقي يحترم مشاعر الطرف الآخر.
16. If you were Ville fort, would you destroy the letter? Why/Why not? لو كنت مكان فيل فورت، هل كنت ستنتف الرسالة؟ لماذا أو لماذا لا؟
No. A just prosecutor should value fairness. لا، على المدعي العادل أن يقدر الإنصاف.
17. The Château d'If was a frightening place. Explain. قلعة إيف كانت مكاناً مخيفاً. فسّر ذلك.
It was a house for traitors. Few who entered its gates ever returned. كان مكاناً للخونة. قلة ممن دخلوا أبوابها عادوا إليها.
18. Why do you think Edmond did not notice the schemes against him before his arrest? في رأيك، لماذا لم يلاحظ إدموند المؤامرات ضده قبل اعتقاله؟
He was too trusting and focused on his career. كان واثقاً جداً ومنشغلاً بمسيرته.
19. Do you think Fernand truly loves Mercédès, or is it only obsession? Explain. هل تعتقد أن فرناند يحب مرسيدس حقاً، أم أنه مجرد هوس؟ فسّر.
It is obsession, because he ignores her feelings. إنه هوس لأنه يتجاهل مشاعرها.
20. Why do officials ignore Mercedes's pleas even though they know Edmond's good nature? لماذا تجاهل المسؤولون نوسلات مرسيدس رغم معرفتهم بحسن طبع إدموند؟
Fear of Napoleon's return made them punish quickly without proof. خوفهم من عودة نابليون جعلهم يعاقبون بسرعة من دون دليل.

Exercises on Chapter (2)

1. Why might Edmond's words have convinced a fairer judge of his innocence?
2. What does Edmond's saying "I am a sailor, not a politician" reveal about his character?
3. How does Edmond's final cry toward the city emphasize his despair?
4. Why is Edmond's imprisonment described as the completion of the conspiracy?
5. Ville fort was not totally wicked. Illustrate.
6. "Farewell... You are sacrificed for my future." What does Villefort mean by this?
7. What did Danglars mean by, "The sea has swallowed him, though he lives still"?
8. Mercedes's love for Edmond was very strong. Illustrate.
9. How does Mercédès's reaction show both her love and her helplessness?
10. What does Edmond's father's trembling reveal about the power of envy in society?
11. Why was Edmond Dantès arrested during his betrothal celebration?
12. What was Mercédès's vow عهد after Edmond was imprisoned?
13. Why did Ville fort choose to imprison Edmond instead of freeing him?
14. If you were Mercédès, would you still believe in Edmond's innocence? Why?
15. In what ways does betrayal by friends feel worse than betrayal by strangers?
16. Should Edmond have refused the captain's request to deliver the letter? Why?
17. In what way does the sea become a symbol of both freedom and imprisonment?
18. How did Ville fort's ambition influence his sense of justice?
19. Why is the Château d'If described as a place of no return?
20. Do you think Fernand loves Mercédès? Why?

Chapter (3): Betrayal and Arrest الخيانة والاعتقال

Summary of the Chapter ملخص الفصل

- Edmond's arrest turned into terror that haunted him in his cold cell.
تحول اعتقال إدموند إلى رعب طارده في زنزانه الباردة.
- Danglars and Fernand had conspired and written their treacherous accusation.
كان دانجلار وفرناند قد تأمرا وكتبوا اتهامهما الغادر.
- They twisted Edmond's loyal act into a believable lie, trapping him in a conspiracy.
حوّلوا عمل إدموند المخلص إلى كذبة قابلة للتصديق، فأوقعوه في مؤامرة.
- During interrogation, Edmond defended his innocence but Villefort protected his career.
أثناء الاستجواب، دافع إدموند عن براءته بينما حمى فيل فورت مسيرته المهنية.
- Villefort destroyed the letter to protect himself but condemned Edmond as a traitor.
دمر فيل فورت الرسالة ليحمي نفسه، لكنه أدان إدموند بالخيانة.
- In Marseille, rumors spread about Edmond's imprisonment; his loved ones believed he was innocent.
في مرسيليا، انتشرت الشائعات حول سجن إدموند، لم يصدق براءته سوى أحبائه.
- Mercédès pleaded with officials for Edmond's release but every door was closed to her.
توسلت مرسيدس إلى المسؤولين لإطلاق سراح إدموند، لكن جميع الأبواب بقيت مغلقة أمامها.
- Even Morrel's honorable defense of Edmond failed to outweigh the written accusation.
حتى دفاع موريل الشريف عن إدموند لم ينجح في التغلب على الاتهام المكتوب.
- Danglars rejoiced secretly and dreamed of gaining power once Edmond was removed.
ابتهج دانجلار سراً وحلم بالحصول على النفوذ بعد إزاحة إدموند.
- Fernand tried to win Mercédès, but her loyalty to Edmond angered him.
حاول فرناند كسب مرسيدس، لكن ولاءها لإدموند أغضبته.
- In prison Edmond begged for mercy but was mocked and thrown into a harsh stone cell.
في السجن، توسل إدموند الرحمة لكنه سُخر منه وألقى في زنزانه حجرية قاسية.
- Edmond collapsed in despair because he had lost everything in a single day.
انهيار إدموند يائسا لأنه فقد كل شيء في يوم واحد.
- Isolation drained Edmond's spirit as he shouted into a darkness that never answered.
استنزفت العزلة روح إدموند بينما كان يصرخ في ظلام لم يُجبه أبداً.
- Edmond's father grew weaker from grief and died whispering his son's name.
ازداد والد إدموند ضعفاً من الحزن ومات وهو يهمس باسم ابنه.
- Mercédès refused to forget Edmond despite Fernand's growing obsession.
رفضت مرسيدس نسيان إدموند رغم تزايد هوس فرناند.
- Villefort rose in power, yet Edmond's pleading face haunted his quiet nights.
ارتقى فيل فورت في السلطة، لكن وجه إدموند المتوسل كان يطارده في ليلته الهادئة.

أسئلة بإجاباتها النموذجية Questions with Model Answers

1. Why was Edmond arrested even though he was innocent? (SB)

لماذا اعتقل إدموند رغم أنه بريء؟

Fernand and Danglars wrote a false letter accusing him of treason.

قام فرناند ودانجلار بكتابة خطاب مزيف بتهمة بالخيانة.

2. What does Fernand's and Danglars' betrayal tell us about their characters? (SB)

ماذا تكشف خيانة فرناند ودانجلار عن شخصياتهما؟

They were envious, selfish, and willing to destroy an innocent man for their ambition.
كانوا حسودين، وأنانيين، ومستعدين لتدمير رجل بريء من أجل طموحاتهم.

3. How does Edmond's imprisonment show the theme of trust and deceit? (SB)

كيف يوضح سجن إدموند موضوع الثقة والخداع؟

Fernand, Danglars and Ville fort betrayed Edmond's trust, so deceit can ruin lives.
لقد خان فرناند ودانجلارس وفيل فورت ثقة إدموند، لذا فإن الخداع يمكن أن يدمر حياة الناس.

4. The chains placed on Edmond symbolize more than imprisonment. What do they represent about his life and freedom? (SB)

الأصفاد التي وُضعت على إدموند ترمز لأكثر من مجرد السجن. ماذا تمثل عن حياته وحرية؟

The loss of freedom, stolen future, and the betrayal that sent him to prison.
فقدان الحرية، والمستقبل المسلوب، والخيانة التي أرسلته للسجن.

5. Do you think the authorities acted fairly when they arrested Edmond? Why/Why not? (SB)

هل تعتقد أن السلطات تصرفت بعدل عندما اعتقلت إدموند؟ لماذا أو لماذا لا؟

No. They depended on false accusations without proper investigation.

لا، لأنهم اعتمدوا على اتهامات كاذبة دون تحقيق سليم.

6. Why do you think the night of Edmond Dantès's arrest remained etched in the memory of all who had gathered to celebrate his betrothal?

لماذا تعتقد أن ليلة اعتقال إدموند دانتيس ظلت محفورة في ذاكرة كل من تجمعوا للاحتفال بخطوبته؟

The happiest evening of Edmond's young life had become a nightmare.

لقد تحولت أسعد أمسية في حياة إدموند الشاب إلى كابوس.

7. Danglers and Fernand were cunning. Explain. فسر ذلك.

They wrote the letter with clever words, just enough truth to make the lie seem real.

كتبوا الرسالة بكلمات ذكية، فقط ما يكفي من الحقيقة لجعل الكذبة تبدو حقيقية.

8. Fate helped Fernand and Danglars against Edmond. Illustrate.

القدر ساعد فرناند ودانجلار ضد إدموند. وضح ذلك.

Edmond received a letter on Elba island, and promised his dying captain to deliver it.

كان إدموند قد تلقى رسالة في جزيرة إلبا، ووعد قائده المحتضر بتسليمها.

9. What invisible web was already closing around Edmond?

ما هي الشبكة غير المرئية التي كانت تغلق حول إدموند؟

Friends and officials were ready to plot against him.

كان الأصدقاء والمسؤولون مستعدون للانقلاب ضده.

10. "I only carried out the final wish of my captain." What do these words reveal about Edmond? ماذا تكشف هذه الكلمات عن إدموند؟

His loyalty, honesty, and sense of duty.

ولائه وصدقه وإحساسه بالواجب.

11. The conflict inside Ville fort was hard. Explain. فسر.

He was torn between duty and ambition.

كان مصزقا بين الواجب والطموح.

12. Law has no heart. Discuss.

Law does not ask for innocence. It asks for proof.

القانون لا يطلب البراءة، بل يطلب الدليل.

13. Why did Mercedes's pleading words meet closed doors and deaf ears?

لماذا لقيت كلمات مرسيدس المتوسلة أبواباً مغلقة وأذاناً صماء؟

No one dared question the orders of the prosecutor.

لم يجرؤ أحد على التشكيك في أوامر المدعي العام.

14. Morrel, Edmond's employer, proved that he was a faithful man. Explain.

أثبت موريل، صاحب العمل الذي يعمل لديه إدموند أنه رجل مخلص. فسر ذلك.

He told the authorities that Edmond was loyal.

أخبر السلطات أن إدموند كان مخلصاً.

15. "I belong to Edmond. Until the day he returns, I will not listen to another."

What do these words show about Mercedes's personality?

"أنا ملك لإدموند. حتى يوم عودته، لن أنصت إلى غيره." ماذا تكشف هذه الكلمات عن شخصية مرسيدس؟

They show her loyalty, strong love, and strength to resist suffering.

تُظهر ولاءها، وحبها القوي، وقوتها في مقاومة المعاناة.

16. The arrest killed all Edmond's hopes. Prove.

In a single day he had lost his freedom, his father, his love, and his future.

في يوم واحد، فقد حريته، وأباه، وحبها، ومستقبله.

17. The Château d'If was a very bad prison. Discuss.

The cell was narrow with a straw bed, a broken jug for water, and walls damp with cold.

كان سجن قلعة إيف سينا جدار ناقص ذلك. كانت الزنزانة ضيقة، وكان بها سرير من القش، وأبريق مكسور للماء، وجدران مبللة بالبرد.

18. How did Ville fort enjoy the rewards of betrayal?

He was promoted and prepared for marriage into a powerful family.

نال ترقية وتمت تهيئته للزواج من عائلة نافذة.

Exercises on Chapter (3)

1. What do Fernand's motives reveal about the difference between love and possession?
2. How does Edmond react to being accused of treason; what does it reveal about him?
3. "The law does not ask for innocence, it asks for proof" how does this reflect injustice?
4. Prove that the jailer at the Château d'If was cruel.
5. How does Edmond's father's death serve as a consequence of the betrayal?
6. What role does deception play in changing Edmond's destiny?
7. How is the theme of jealousy represented through Fernand?
8. What is the significance of Edmond being arrested on his wedding day?
9. How does Mercedes' loyalty make her a tragic figure?
10. The Château d'If seemed like a living tomb. Explain.
11. How did Edmond kill time in the prison?
12. How was Edmond badly affected by the idea of being arrested at his betrothal feast?
13. "Where there is smoke, there is fire." Is this saying always right? Why/Why not?
14. How was Edmond's life behind the bars very bad?
15. Conscience doesn't always let criminals feel relief. Explain.
16. How does Edmond's loyalty to his captain become the cause of his downfall?
17. What role did Monsieur Morrel play in highlighting Edmond's innocence?
18. What does Mercedes' refusal to abandon Edmond reveal about her character?
19. How did Ville fort sacrifice Edmond for his future?
20. Unchecked ambition is harmful. Illustrate.

Chapter (4): The Prison of Château d'If سجن قلعة إيف

Summary of the Chapter ملخص الفصل

- The fortress had become Edmond's whole world after the gates shut behind him.
أصبح الحصن عالم إدموند كله بعد أن أغلقت البوابات خلفه.
- Silence, hunger, and mockery pushed Edmond toward despair and thoughts of death.
الصمت والجوع وسخرية الحراس دفعوا إدموند إلى اليأس والتفكير بالموت.
- One evening, Edmond heard a faint, deliberate scratching under the floor.
سمع إدموند في إحدى الأمسيات خدشًا خافتًا ومقصودًا تحت الأرض.
- Edmond had worked on his wall every night to help the unknown digger.
كان إدموند يعمل على جدار زنزانته كل ليلة لمساعدة الحافر المجهول.
- After weeks, Edmond broke through and met Abbé Faria, which revived his spirit.
بعد أسابيع، اخترق إدموند الجدار ولقي الأب فاريا، فتنعشت روحه.
- Faria explained that he had miscalculated his tunnel and reached Edmond by accident.
شرح فاريا أنه أخطأ في حساب النفق ووصل إلى زنزانه إدموند بالصدفة.
- Faria had been jailed for politics but used his time to study and learn.
سُجن فاريا بسبب السياسة لكنه استغل وقته للدراسة والتعلم.
- Faria taught Edmond that losing the mind was worse than losing freedom.
فاريا علم إدموند أن فقدان العقل أسوأ من فقدان الحرية.
- Edmond felt grateful as he and Faria widened the tunnel and met secretly.
شعر إدموند بالامتنان بينما وسع هو وفاريا النفق والتقيا سرًا.
- Faria taught Edmond many subjects and languages in the darkness of prison.
فاريا علم إدموند العديد من العلوم واللغات في ظلام السجن.
- Edmond had studied every day and became sharper and more educated.
درس إدموند يوميًا وأصبح أذكى وأكثر علمًا.
- One night, Faria told Edmond about a great treasure hidden on Monte Cristo.
ذات ليلة، فاريا أخبر إدموند عن كنزٍ عظيم مخفي في جزيرة مونت كريستو.
- Edmond doubted it, but promised to use the treasure for justice if he escaped.
شك إدموند بالأمر، لكنه وعد باستخدام الكنز للعدالة إذا هرب.
- For the first time, Edmond had imagined a future where he could change his fate.
تخيل إدموند لأول مرة مستقبلًا يستطيع فيه تغيير مصيره.
- Faria had suffered severe attacks and knew he might soon die.
عانى فاريا من نوبات شديدة وعرف أنه قد يموت قريبًا.
- During one attack, Faria gave Edmond the treasure map, fearing he would die first.
في إحدى النوبات، سَمَّ فاريا الخريطة لإدموند لأنه خاف أن يموت قبله.

أسئلة بإجاباتها النموذجية Questions with Model Answers

1. What conditions did Edmond face inside Château d'If? (SB)
ما الظروف التي واجهها إدموند في قصر إيف؟
الظلام، والرطوبة، والعزلة، واليأس.
Darkness, dampness, isolation, and hopelessness.
2. What does Edmond's survival in prison show about his inner strength? (SB)
ماذا يكشف بقاء إدموند على قيد الحياة في السجن عن قوته الداخلية؟
قوة إرادته وإصراره رغم اليأس.
His willpower and determination despite despair.

3. How does the prison setting increase the sense of injustice in the story? (SB)

كيف يزيد جو السجن من الإحساس بالظلم في القصة؟

The harsh and hopeless environment makes Edmond's imprisonment more cruel.

البيئة القاسية واليائسة تجعل سجن إدموند أشد قسوة.

4. Do you think Edmond should accept his fate quietly or keep fighting for freedom? Explain. (SB)

هل تعتقد أن على إدموند أن يقبل مصيره بهدوء أم يواصل القتال من أجل حريته؟ وضح.

He should keep fighting, because hope and resistance are important.

عليه أن يواصل القتال، لأن الأمل والمقاومة مهمان.

5. "Knowledge is power." Do you agree with this idea? Explain with an example. (SB)

"المعرفة قوة." هل توافق على هذه الفكرة؟ فسّر بمثال.

Yes, because learning gave Edmond tools to plan his escape and seek justice.

نعم، لأن التعلم أعطى إدموند أدوات لتخطيط هروبه والسعي وراء العدالة.

6. How does Faria's choice to teach and share his knowledge reveal his personality and values? (SB)

كيف يكشف اختيار فاريا للتعليم ومشاركة معرفته عن شخصيته وقيمه؟

It reveals generosity, wisdom, and belief in the power of knowledge to help others.

يكشف عن سخائه، وحكمته، وإيمانه بقوة المعرفة لمساعدة الآخرين.

7. How did the prison become Edmond's world? (SB)

The iron gates swallowed him; only damp stone and the sea sound surrounded him.

كيف أصبح السجن هو عالم إدموند؟

8. Why were the days in the prison described as being without hope? (SB)

لماذا وصفت الأيام في السجن على أنها خالية من الأمل؟

Edmond counted stones, traced the cracks, and measured time by the thin ray of light.

عدّ إدموند الحجارة، وتتبّع الشقوق، وقياس الوقت بشعاع الضوء الرقيق.

9. The guards at the Château d'If were cruel to Edmond. Explain. (SB)

كان حراس قلعة إيف قساة على إدموند. اشرح.

They laughed at him and answered with cruel jokes about his innocence.

سخروا منه وكانوا يردون عليه بنكات ساخرة تسخر من برائته.

10. How can you prove that Edmond's imprisonment was like slow death? (SB)

كيف يمكنك أن تثبت أن سجن إدموند كان يشبه الموت البطيء؟

Hunger, loneliness and despair consumed him. He wished to die.

استهلكه الجوع والوحدة واليأس. لقد تمنى أن يموت.

11. Faria represented the last ray of hope for Edmond. Explain. (SB)

مثل فاريا آخر شعاع أمل لإدموند. فسّر.

The moment Edmond wished to die, Faria scratched the wall.

في اللحظة التي تمنى فيها إدموند الموت، قام فاريا بخدش الجدار.

12. Physical wound can be less harmful than spiritual one. Explain. (SB)

الجرح البدني قد يكون أهدأ من الجرح النفسي (الروحاني). فسّر ذلك.

Edmond endured his bleeding fingers to reach Faria and get rid of loneliness.

تحمل إدموند أصابعه النازفة حتى يصل لفاريا ويتخلص من الوحدة.

13. Luck (Fate) led Faria to Edmond. Explain. (SB)

Faria miscalculated and arrived at Edmond's cell instead of the outer wall.

أخطأ فاريا في حساباته ووصل إلى زنزانة إدموند بدلاً من الجدار الخارجي.

14. Faria was unjustly imprisoned. Explain.

He was imprisoned for political reasons. His intelligence made him dangerous.

تم سجن فاريا ظلما. فسر ذلك.

15. Faria's character was a positive one. Explain.

He didn't lose hope. He turned his prison into a school.

سجن لأسباب سياسية. ذكائه جعله خطرا.

كانت شخصية فاريا ايجابية. فسر ذلك.

16. Why was Edmond grateful to Faria?

Edmond thought he would die alone but Faria saved him.

لم يفقد الأمل، حول سجنه إلى مدرسة.

لماذا كان إدموند ممتنا لفاريا؟

17. Faria and Edmond were cautious. Prove this.

They were careful to hide their digging so that the guards would suspect nothing.

ظن إدموند أنه سيموت وحيدا لكن فاريا أنقذه.

كان فاريا وإدموند حريصين. اثبت ذلك.

18. Faria was a well-educated man. Prove this.

Faria was fluent in languages. He had studied politics, science, and human nature.

كانا حريصين على إخفاء عملهما بالحفر حتى لا يشك الحراس في شيء.

اثبت أن فاريا كان رجلا متعلما جيدا.

19. How did Edmond show kindness toward the priest?

Edmond cared for him and refused to abandon him.

كان فاريا يجيد اللغات. درس السياسة والعلوم والطبيعة البشرية.

كيف أظهر إدموند طبيئته تجاه الكاهن؟

اعتنى إدموند به ورفض أن يهجره.

20. How did the treasure change Edmond's view of the future?

It gave him a dream of power and freedom.

كيف غير الكنز رؤية إدموند للمستقبل؟

منحه حلم القوة والحرية.

Exercises on Chapter (4)

1. How was Edmond well affected by Faria's teachings?
2. Why did Edmond say, "I entered this prison a sailor, but I will leave it a scholar"?
3. Faria trusted Edmond too much. Prove this.
4. "If fate wills it, this secret may one day save you." What could the secret do?
5. Faria's treasure was fascinating. Explain.
6. Why do you think the treasure was never known by anyone other than Faria?
7. Faria was a man of principles. Prove this.
8. Why is Edmond's first meeting with Faria important?
9. How did Faria replace Edmond's lost family?
10. What lesson comes from Faria's love of study in prison?
11. How did Edmond's despair turn into determination?
12. Why did Faria share the treasure's secret?
13. How was Edmond's friendship with Faria different from betrayals outside?
14. What does Faria's teaching say about his morals?
15. How did prison prepare Edmond to be the Count?
16. How did Edmond's mind expand in prison?
17. Faria was generous. Explain.
18. The Château d'If stood like a dark sentinel in the middle of the sea. Why?
19. Imagination saved Edmond from death in prison. Explain.
20. "Perhaps it is better to die," Was Edmond right to think so in the prison? Why?
21. Why do you think Edmond was very happy with the scratching sound?
22. Why do you think Faria's name was crowned with the title "abbe"?

Chapter (5): A Ray of Hope شعاع أمل

Summary of the Chapter ملخص الفصل

- Edmond visited the abbé through the tunnel each day to learn from him.
كان إدموند يزور الأب عبر النفق كل يوم ليتعلم منه.
- The abbé taught Edmond several languages until he spoke them well.
الأب علم إدموند عدة لغات حتى أصبح يجيدها.
- Faria drew maps and explained history, letting Edmond's mind travel freely.
رسم فاريا خرائط وشرح التاريخ، مما جعل عقل إدموند يسافر بحرية.
- Edmond had learned math and astronomy; his thinking became clearer and sharper.
تعلم إدموند الرياضيات وعلم الفلك، فأصبح تفكيره أوضح وأقوى.
- The abbé reminded him that knowledge would give him power after escaping.
ذكره الأب أن المعرفة ستمنحه القوة بعد الهرب.
- The abbé became like a father to Edmond who found love and guidance in his presence.
أصبح الأب كالأب لإدموند الذي وجد المحبة والهداية في وجوده.
- Faria helped Edmond to re-examine the events leading to his arrest.
فاريا ساعد إدموند أن يعيد النظر في الأحداث التي أدت إلى اعتقاله.
- The priest explained that Edmond was the victim of a planned conspiracy.
شرح الكاهن أن إدموند كان ضحية مؤامرة مدبرة.
- Edmond realized he was betrayed, but Faria had urged him to stay patient and wise.
أدرك إدموند أنه خُدع، لكن فاريا حثه على الصبر والحكمة.
- Edmond had watched the abbé grow weaker as painful attacks struck him.
راقب إدموند تدهور صحة الأب واشتداد نوباته المؤلمة.
- Before dying, the priest had given Edmond the map of the treasure.
قبل موته، أعطى الكاهن إدموند خريطة الكنز.
- They continued digging the tunnel together, planning to escape to the sea.
واصلوا الحفر معًا في النفق، وخططوا للهروب إلى البحر.
- When the abbé collapsed, he made Edmond promise to use the treasure wisely.
عندما انهار الأب، جعل إدموند يوعده بأن يستخدم الكنز بحكمة.
- In his final days, the abbé taught Edmond to use power for good, not revenge.
في أيامه الأخيرة، علم الأب إدموند أن يستخدم القوة للخير، لا للانتقام.
- The abbé died peacefully, leaving Edmond heartbroken but changed forever.
مات الأب بسلام، تاركًا إدموند مكسور القلب لكنه متغيرًا إلى الأبد.
- Edmond had vowed to escape, live, and honor the priest's memory.
تعهد إدموند بأن يهرب، ويعيش، ويكرم ذكرى الأب.

أسئلة بإجاباتها النموذجية Questions with Model Answers

1. Who does Edmond meet in prison, and how does this change his life? (SB)
من التقى إدموند في السجن، وكيف غير ذلك حياته؟
He meets Abbé Faria, who teaches him knowledge and gives him hope.
يلتقي بالأب فاريا، الذي يعلمه ويمنحه الأمل.
2. What does Faria's decision to share his wisdom show about his character? (SB)
ماذا يظهر قرار فاريا بمشاركة حكمته عن شخصيته؟
It shows he is generous, wise, and selfless.
يظهر أنه كريم، حكيم، وئديه تكران للذات.

3. Compare Edmond before and after meeting Faria. How does he change? (SB)

قارن بين إدموند قبل وبعد لقائه بالأب فاريا. كيف تغير؟

He was simple and hopeless. Then he became educated, wise, and purposeful.

كان بسيطًا ورائسًا ثم أصبح متعلمًا، حكيمًا، وذًا هدف.

4. Do you agree that knowledge can be more valuable than freedom?

Why or why not?

(SB) هل توافق أن المعرفة قد تكون أثمن من الحرية؟ لماذا أو لماذا لا؟

Yes, because knowledge gives power to use freedom wisely.

نعم، لأن المعرفة تمنح القوة لاستخدام الحرية بحكمة.

5. The "ray of hope" symbolizes more than a chance of freedom. What does it mean for Edmond's soul and future? (SB)

"شعاع الأمل" يرمز لأكثر من فرصة للحرية. ماذا يعني لروح إدموند ومستقبله؟

It means inner strength, wisdom, and a new destiny.

يعني قوة داخلية، حكمة، ومصيرًا جديدًا.

6. How was Edmond affected by Faria's teaching him about history and geography?

كيف تأثر إدموند بتعليم فاريا له عن التاريخ والجغرافيا؟

Edmond's mind traveled across continents and centuries.

سافر عقل إدموند عبر القارات والقرون.

7. Was Faria right when he said to Edmond, "If you escape this place, you will not be only a free man, but a man armed with wisdom"? Why?

هل كان فاريا محقًا لما قال لإدموند "إذا هربت من هذا المكان، فلن تكون حرًا فحسب، بل مسلحًا بالحكمة"؟ لماذا؟

Yes. Faria taught Edmond many things that prepared him for the future.

نعم فقد قام فاريا بتعليم إدموند أشياء كثيرة أعدته للمستقبل.

8. How did Faria represent for Edmond "The Father He Never Had"?

كيف مثل فاريا لإدموند "الأب الذي لم يكن لديه أبدًا"؟

He gave him love, guidance, and wisdom.

أعطاه الحب والإرشاد والحكمة.

9. Faria was more than a teacher for Edmond. Explain.

كان فاريا أكثر من مجرد معلم لإدموند. فسر ذلك.

Edmond found in Faria knowledge, love, patience, and guidance.

وجد إدموند في فاريا المعرفة، والحب والصبر والهداية.

10. Faria's mind was sharp. Prove this.

اثبت أن عقل فاريا كان حاد الذكاء.

Faria concluded that Edmond's imprisonment was not a chance, but a plot.

خلص فاريا إلى أن سجن إدموند لم يكن صدفة، بل مؤامرة.

11. Faria said, "Knowledge and patience are stronger than rage." Do you agree with him? Why? Why not? هل توافق؟ لماذا؟ لماذا لا؟

Yes, because anger destroys judgment, but wisdom ensures true justice.

نعم، لأن الغضب يدمر الحكم السليم، بينما الحكمة تضمن العدالة الحقيقية.

12. Faria cared for Edmond even when he was dying. Illustrate.

كان فاريا حريصًا على إدموند حتى وهو يحتضر. وضح ذلك.

He advised Edmond to live, escape and use the treasure for justice, not vengeance.

نصح إدموند أن يعيش، ويهرب، وأن يستخدم الكنز من أجل العدالة، لا الانتقام.

13. Before his death, Faria became different. Discuss.

أصبح فاريا مختلفًا قبل وفاته. ناقش.

He spoke of wisdom, not of riches.

كان يتحدث عن الحكمة لا عن الثروة.

He asked Edmond to be a builder, not a destroyer.

طلب من إدموند أن يكون بناء لا هادمًا.

14. "Yet even in death, the old priest's presence remained." Is this right for Faria?
 Why? "ومع ذلك، حتى في الموت، ظل الكاهن العجوز حاضراً." هل ينطبق هذا فعلاً على فاريا؟ لماذا؟
 Yes. His lessons, love, and secret made Edmond a man of purpose and destiny.
 لقد جعلت دروسه، وحبّه، وسرّه من إدموند رجلاً ذا هدف ومصير.
15. Could Edmond have survived without Faria's guidance? Why or why not?
 هل كان يمكن لإدموند أن ينجو دون إرشاد الأب فاريا؟ لماذا أو لماذا لا؟
 No, because Faria gave him hope and purpose.
 لا، لأن فاريا أعطاه الأمل والهدف.
16. How does Edmond show gratitude toward Faria? كيف يُظهر إدموند الامتنان تجاه فاريا؟
 By caring for him and honoring his name.
 بالعناية به وتكريم اسمه.
17. Why did the abbé see Edmond as "chosen by God"?
 لماذا رأى الأب فاريا أن إدموند "مختار من الله"؟
 Because Edmond remained noble despite betrayal.
 لأن إدموند ظل نبيلاً رغم الخيانة.
18. Was Edmond right in seeking revenge? Why? هل إدموند محق في سعيه للانتقام؟ لماذا؟
 Yes, but he must mix it with wisdom.
 نعم، لكن يجب أن يمزجه بالحكمة.
19. Edmond was helpful to Faria. Explain. كان إدموند معيناً لفاريا. فسّر ذلك.
 Edmond cared for Faria while Faria was ill.
 اعتنى إدموند بفاريا حين كان فاريا مريضاً.
20. Do you think Edmond should forgive his enemies or punish them? Why?
 هل تعتقد أن علي إدموند أن يسامح أعداءه أم يعاقبهم؟ لماذا؟
 He should punish but with justice, not cruelty.
 عليه أن يعاقب لكن بالعدل لا بالقسوة.

Exercises on Chapter (5)

- Faria was a smart teacher. Explain.
- Faria taught Edmond well about mathematics. Illustrate.
- "You will be my son, and I will be your teacher." What does this show about Faria?
- "Each man had something to gain from your ruin." What does Faria mean by this?
- How can you prove that Edmond respected Faria's wisdom too much?
- How does learning languages help Edmond's mind escape the prison walls?
- What does Abbé Faria mean when he says, "Let me be your father"?
- What role did trust play in the bond between Faria and Edmond?
- What did the abbé teach Edmond about patience in the face of betrayal?
- How did envy and ambition drive Danglars and Fernand to betray Edmond?
- What lesson can we learn about jealousy and betrayal?
- What does the abbé's bravery during sickness reveal about him?
- Why does the abbé give Edmond the treasure map before dying?
- How does Edmond promise to honor the abbé's memory?
- What does it mean to "never lose your soul in the fire of revenge"?
- How do the abbé's lessons prepare Edmond for his destiny?
- Why does Edmond swear to live and not despair after the abbé's death?
- What does being a "builder" rather than a "destroyer" mean for Edmond's future?
- How does the Monte Cristo map represent both treasure and responsibility?
- Why was Edmond placed in Château d'If instead of a local prison?
- How did studying with the abbé change Edmond's character?
- Why is it important that Edmond does not lose his humanity?

Chapter (6): The Secret of the Treasure سر الكنز

Summary of the Chapter المنخص الفصل

- Edmond mourned Faria deeply but felt new strength and purpose growing inside him.
حزن إدموند على فاريا بشدة لكنه شعر بقوة وهدف جديدين ينموان داخله.
- He spent days alone holding the parchment that described the treasure of Monte Cristo.
قضى أيامًا وحده ممسكًا بالرق الذي وصف كنز مونت كريستو.
- At first he doubted the treasure, but he trusted the abbé and vowed to find it.
في البداية شك في الكنز، لكنه وثق بالأب وأقسم أن يجده.
- He repeated the priest's advice to avoid hatred, though anger still burned in him.
كرر نصيحة الكاهن بتجنب الحقد رغم أن الغضب ظل يشتعل بداخله.
- The priest's death gave him a chance to escape when he learned of the sea burial.
منحه موت الكاهن فرصة للهروب عندما علم بدفن الجثة في البحر.
- He decided to take the abbé's place in the sack during the night.
قرر أن يحل محل الأب في الكيس خلال الليل.
- Edmond placed the priest's body on his bed and climbed into the sack himself.
وضع جثة الكاهن على سريره ودخل هو الكيس.
- The guards carried the sack to the fortress wall and thrown it into the sea.
حمل الحراس الكيس إلى سور القلعة وألقوه في البحر.
- He swam all night and reached a small island where fishermen later rescued him.
سبح طوال الليل ووصل إلى جزيرة صغيرة أنقذه منها الصيادون لاحقًا.
- He lived under a false name, waiting for a chance to reach Monte Cristo.
عاش باسم مستعار منتظرًا فرصة للوصول إلى مونت كريستو.
- He spent weeks studying maps and dreaming of finding the island and its treasure.
قضى أسابيع يدرس الخرائط ويحلم بالوصول إلى الجزيرة وكنزها.
- He waited patiently until a smuggler's boat happened to sail near Monte Cristo.
انتظر بصبر حتى أبحرت سفينة تهريب بالقرب من مونت كريستو.
- He saw Monte Cristo appear like a dark, lonely rock rising from the sea.
رأى مونت كريستو تظهر كصخرة مظلمة وحيدة ترتفع من البحر.
- While the others worked, he searched the island's rocks until he found the right spot.
بينما كان الآخرون يعملون، بحث بين صخور الجزيرة حتى وجد المكان الصحيح.
- He dug until he uncovered a large wooden chest hidden underground.
حفر حتى كشف صندوقًا خشبيًا كبيرًا مخبأ تحت الأرض.
- He opened it and discovered gold, jewels, and treasures beyond imagination.
فتحه ووجد ذهبًا وجواهر وكنوزًا تفوق الخيال.
- The poor sailor Edmond Dantès died, and the Count of Monte Cristo was born.
مات إدموند دانتيس، البحار الفقير، وولد كونت مونت كريستو.
- With the treasure, he planned to build a new identity, reward the good, and punish the guilty.
خطط بالكنز لبناء هوية جديدة، ومكافأة الطيبين، ومعاقبة المذنبين.

أسئلة بإجاباتها النموذجية Questions with Model Answers

1. What important secret does Abbé Faria share with Edmond? (SB)

ما هو السر المهم الذي شاركه الأب فاريا مع إدموند؟
كنز عائلة سبادا في جزيرة مونت كريستو. The treasure of the Spada family on Monte Cristo.

2. Why does Abbé Faria choose Edmond to trust with the treasure's location? (SB)
 لماذا اختار الأب فاريا إدموند ليأتمنه على مكان الكنز؟
 لأن إدموند صادق وجدير بالثقة.
 Because Edmond is honest and worthy.
3. How does the idea of treasure add to the theme of destiny in the story? (SB)
 كيف تضيف فكرة الكنز إلى موضوع القدر في القصة؟
 لقد حولت معاناة إدموند إلى قدر جديد.
 It turns Edmond's suffering into a new destiny.
4. Do you think the promise of great wealth can motivate someone to survive hardships? Why or why not? (SB)
 هل تعتقد أن وعد الثروة العظيمة يمكن أن يحفز شخصا على النجاة من المصاعب؟ لماذا أو لماذا لا؟
 نعم، لأنها تعطي الأمل والغاية.
 Yes, it gives hope and purpose.
5. If you discovered a hidden fortune, would you use it for personal comfort or to change the lives of others? Explain. (SB)
 إذا اكتشفت ثروة مخفية، هل ستستخدمها لراحتك الشخصية أم لتغيير حياة الآخرين؟ وضح.
 كلاهما، لكن في الأغلب لمساعدة الآخرين.
 Both, but mostly to help others.
6. The treasure is more than gold. What does it symbolize for Edmond's life, hopes, and revenge? (SB)
 الكنز أكثر من مجرد ذهب. ماذا يرمز بالنسبة لحياة إدموند وأمله وانقامه؟
 إنه يرمز إلى الحرية والعدالة والقوة.
 It symbolizes freedom, justice, and power.
7. Why did the death of Faria leave Edmond in deep sorrow?
 لماذا ترك موت فاريا إدموند في حزن عميق؟
 كان الكاهن معلمه وأبيه ونورا في سنواته الطويلة المظلمة.
 The priest had been his teacher, his father, and the light in his long years of darkness.
8. Edmond had contradictory feelings after Faria's death. Explain.
 كانت لدى إدموند مشاعر متناقضة بعد موت فاريا. فسر ذلك.
 كان حزينا لكنه شعر بقوة جديدة في قلبه - شعور بالواجب والأمل والعزيمة.
 He was sad but felt a new power in his heart; a sense of duty, hope and determination.
9. What do you think of Faria's character?
 ما رأيك في شخصية فاريا؟
 إنه حكيم وطيب ولديه نكران للذات.
 He is wise, kind, and selfless.
10. The parchment about the treasure was complex. Explain.
 كان الرق الخاص بالكنز معقدا. فسر ذلك.
 كان بها رموز وكلمات غريبة تصف مكان إخفاء الكنز.
 It had strange symbols and words, which described the hiding place of the treasure.
11. To what extent was Edmond sure there was a real treasure on Monte Cristo? Why?
 إلى أي مدى كان إدموند متأكدا من وجود كنز حقيقي في مونتني كريستو؟ ولماذا؟
 كان متأكدا بشدة لأن الأب فاريا لم يكن أبدا كاذبا أو مهرجا.
 He was greatly sure because the abbé was never a liar or a fool.
12. What did Edmond decide to do with the treasure?
 ماذا قرر إدموند أن يفعل بالكنز؟
 سوف يستخدمه لمكافأة الطيبين ومعاقبة المذنبين.
 He would use it to reward the good and punish the guilty.
13. The death of Abbé Faria gave Edmond an unexpected opportunity. Explain.
 أتاحت وفاة الأب فاريا لإدموند فرصة غير متوقعة. فسر ذلك.
 اختبأ في مكان جثة الأب في الكيس الذي يتم إلقاؤه في البحر.
 He hid in place of the abbe's corpse in the sack that was thrown in to the sea.

14. How did Edmond prioritize his missions in prison?

First escape. Then treasure. Then justice.

كيف حدد إدموند أولويات مهماته في السجن؟

أولاً الهروب. ثم الكنز. ثم العدالة.

كيف أمن إدموند خطة هروبه؟

15. How did Edmond ensure his escape plan?

He cut through the canvas with his iron piece, tore the rope, and swam with strength.

شق القماش بقطعه الحديدية، ومزق الحبل، وسبح بقوة.

16. Why do you think Edmond said, "Monte Cristo... the key to my destiny"?

Because the treasure would change his life completely.

لماذا تعتقد أن إدموند قال: "مونت كريستو... مفتاح قدرتي"؟

لأن الكنز سيغير حياته بالكامل.

17. What made Edmond astonished when he saw the treasure?

It contained gold coins, silver bars, diamonds, rubies red as fire and emeralds.

ما الذي جعل إدموند مذهولاً حين رأى الكنز؟

احتوى على العملات الذهبية، وسبائك الفضة، والماس، والياقوت الأحمر كالنار، والزمرد. سيحمله كنز مونت كريستو من اليأس إلى المصير.

18. At first, why does Edmond doubt the treasure's existence?

It seemed too fantastic, like a dream, and hard to believe.

في البداية، لماذا شك إدموند في وجود الكنز؟

لأنه بدا خيالياً جداً، مثل حلم، وصعب التصديق.

Exercises on Chapter (6)

1. How was Edmond affected by the death of his only prison friend?
2. Faria was more than a teacher for Edmond. Illustrate.
3. How did Edmond feel towards Danglars, Fernand and Ville fort? Why?
4. How did Edmond say farewell to Faria's body?
5. Edmond proved to be intelligent after Faria's death. Explain.
6. Why did Edmond's heart beat widely while he took Faria's place?
7. Why was it hard to reach the island of Monte Cristo?
8. Edmond was lucky on the fishing ship. Explain.
9. Why is Monte Cristo described as the island of rocks?
10. Why do you think Monte Cristo was regarded as a paradise for Edmond?
11. Why was finding the treasure like a rebirth for Edmond?
12. How role did the sea and the treasure play in Edmond's life?
13. How does Edmond struggle between justice and vengeance?
14. How did the plan to escape come to Edmond's mind?
15. How did Edmond prepare himself inside the sack?
16. Why did Edmond bite his lips instead of screaming in the water?
17. How did Edmond survive after swimming all night?
18. Why did Edmond need patience before reaching Monte Cristo?
19. What excuse did Edmond give to explore the island?
20. How did Edmond find the exact spot of the treasure?
21. How did Edmond show courage in planning escape?
22. How does Edmond react when he opens the treasure chest?
23. Why is the treasure described as "a kingdom in a box"?
24. Why does Edmond adopt a new identity?

Chapter (7): Escape to Freedom الفِرَارُ إِلَى الحَرِيَةِ

Summary of the Chapter الملخص الفصل

- Edmond worked on ships under false names, learned fast, and stayed silent about his past.
عمل إدموند على سفن كثيرة بأسماء مستعارة، وتعلم بسرعة، وبقي صامتًا بشأن ماضيه.
- Edmond hid his real name so his enemies would not discover he was alive.
أخفى إدموند اسمه الحقيقي حتى لا يكتشف أعداؤه أنه ما زال حيًا.
- Edmond joined smugglers, so he gained experience, courage, and freedom.
انضم إدموند إلى المهربين، فاكسب الخبرة والشجاعة والحرية.
- He returned to Monte Cristo with the smugglers, knowing the island held his destiny.
عاد مع المهربين إلى مونت كريستو، وهو يعلم أن الجزيرة تحمل مصيره.
- He found a huge treasure that changed his life completely.
عثر على كنز هائل غير حياته تمامًا.
- His new wealth allowed him to build a powerful new life.
سمحت له ثروته الجديدة ببناء حياة قوية وجديدة.
- Edmond remembered Faria's advice to use the treasure wisely.
تذكر إدموند نصيحة فاريا باستخدام الكنز بحكمة.
- He vowed to create a new identity separate from his old suffering.
أقسم أن يصنع هوية جديدة بعيدة عن معاناته القديمة.
- He chose the name "The Count of Monte Cristo" for his new life.
اختار اسم "كونت مونت كريستو" لحياته الجديدة.
- Edmond returned to Marseille. He learned that his father had died in sadness.
عاد إدموند إلى مرسيليا. عرف أن والده مات حزناً.
- He learned Mercédès had married Fernand, who had become rich and respected.
علم أن مرسيدس تزوجت فرناند الذي أصبح ثريًا ومحترمًا.
- He felt great pain knowing his betrayer lived happily with the woman he loved.
شعر بالألم شديد لأن خاتمه عاش سعيدًا مع المرأة التي أحبها.
- He secretly saved Morrel's business using part of his treasure.
أنقذ سرًا تجارة موريل باستخدام جزء من كنزه.
- Edmond traveled widely and trained himself to act like a nobleman.
سافر إدموند كثيرًا ودرّب نفسه ليبدو كنبيل.
- He used different identities to learn about people and their weaknesses.
استخدم هويات مختلفة ليتعلم عن الناس وضعفهم.
- Despite the changes, he remained the same betrayed man inside.
رغم كل التغييرات، ظل في داخله الرجل المظلوم نفسه.
- He waited patiently, planning to make each enemy fall by his own faults.
انتظر بصبر، يخطط لجعل كل عدو يسقط بعيوبه الخاصة.
- After years of preparation, Edmond transformed himself into a nobleman.
بعد سنوات من التحضير، تحول إدموند إلى رجل نبيل.
- He created a powerful and mysterious identity as the Count of Monte Cristo.
صنع هوية قوية وغامضة باسم كونت مونت كريستو.
- He was fully prepared to strike, while his enemies remained unaware.
كان مستعدًا تمامًا للهجوم، بينما بقي أعداؤه غير مدركين للخطر.

أسئلة بإجاباتها النموذجية Questions with Model Answers

1. What does Edmond's successful escape reveal about his character? (SB)
ما الذي يكشفه هروب إدموند الناجح عن شخصيته؟
He is brave, intelligent, and determined. إنه شجاع وذكي ومصمم.
2. How does the sea play both a danger and a path to freedom? (SB)
كيف يلعب البحر دور الخطر وطريق الحرية؟
It is dangerous because it could kill Edmond during his escape. البحر خطير لأنه كان قد يقتل إدموند أثناء هروبه.
It is also Edmond's path to freedom as it carries him away from prison to a new life. إنه أيضًا طريق إدموند إلى الحرية، إذ حمله بعيدًا عن السجن إلى حياة جديدة.
3. Do you think Edmond's escape was more about intelligence or luck? Why? (SB)
هل تعتقد أن هروب إدموند كان يعتمد أكثر على الذكاء أم على الحظ؟ ولماذا؟
Intelligence. He used careful planning, courage, and quick thinking. الذكاء، فقد استخدم التخطيط الدقيق والشجاعة وسرعة البديهة.
4. If you were in Edmond's situation, would you have the courage to risk drowning for freedom? Explain. (SB)
لو كنت في موقف إدموند، هل كنت ستمتلك الشجاعة للمخاطرة بالغرق من أجل الحرية؟ وضح.
Yes. Taking the risk would be worth it to live freely. نعم. لأن المخاطرة تستحق من أجل أن أعيش بحرية.
5. The sea represents more than water. What does it symbolize in Edmond's journey? (SB)
البحر يمثل أكثر من مجرد ماء، فإلى ماذا يرمز في رحلة إدموند؟
The sea symbolizes freedom, change, and rebirth. يرمز إلى الحرية والتغيير والبعث من جديد.
6. How did Edmond feel when he first touched the sea as a free man?
بماذا شعر إدموند عندما لمس البحر لأول مرة كرجل حر؟
He felt reborn and free from suffering. شعر كأنه وُلد من جديد وتحرر من المعاناة.
7. Why did Edmond decide to hide his real name after escaping?
لماذا قرر إدموند إخفاء اسمه الحقيقي بعد هروبه؟
To avoid being discovered by his enemies. ليتجنب أن يكتشفه أعداؤه.
8. Why did Edmond choose to work on ships under false names?
لماذا اختار إدموند العمل على السفن بأسماء مزيفة؟
He needed to survive, learn, and travel without revealing his true identity. كان يحتاج إلى البقاء والتعلم والسفر دون أن يكشف هويته الحقيقية.
9. What qualities made Edmond a valuable sailor to every captain?
ما الصفات التي جعلت إدموند بحارًا ذا قيمة لكل قبطان؟
He was strong, skilled, intelligent, and disciplined. كان قويًا، ماهرًا، ذكيًا، ومنضبطًا.
10. How did Edmond find the treasure on the island?
كيف وجد إدموند الكنز في الجزيرة؟
He pretended to go hunting, then dug secretly until he uncovered the treasure chest. تظاهر بأنه ذاهب للصيد، ثم حفر سرًا حتى عثر على صندوق الكنز.
11. What was Edmond's reaction when he saw the treasure for the first time?
ماذا كان رد فعل إدموند عندما رأى الكنز لأول مرة؟ لماذا؟
Why? He was shocked and amazed; the treasure was greater than he had ever imagined. اندهش وانبههر، فقد كان الكنز أعظم مما تخيل في حياته.

12. How did the treasure change Edmond's life? كيف غير الكنز حياة إدموند؟
It turned him from a poor escaped prisoner into a rich and powerful man.
حوّله من سجين فقير هارب إلى رجل غني وقوي.
13. Why did Edmond return to Marseille before starting his new life? لماذا عاد إدموند إلى مرسيليا قبل أن يبدأ حياته الجديدة؟
To see what had happened to his family and his fiancée. ليرى ما حدث لعائلته وخطيبته.
14. How did Edmond feel when he heard that Fernand was living happily with Mercédès? كيف شعر إدموند عندما علم أن فرنان يعيش بسعادة مع مرسيدس؟
Pain and anger. الألم والغضب.
15. How did Edmond secretly help Morrel? كيف ساعد إدموند موريل سراً؟
He used part of his treasure to secretly pay Morrel's debts and save his company.
استخدم جزءاً من كنزه لدفع ديون موريل سراً وإنقاذ شركته.
16. How did helping Morrel give Edmond new strength? كيف منحت مساعدة موريل لإدموند قوة جديدة؟
It confirmed his plan to become an agent of justice. أكدت خطته ليصبح أداة لتحقيق العدالة.
17. How did Edmond change his appearance and manners? كيف غير إدموند مظهره وسلوكه؟
He bought fine clothes, learned noble manners, and behaved like a gentleman.
اشترى ملابس فاخرة وتعلم آداب النبلاء وتصرف كرجل شريف.
18. What was Edmond's plan for revenge? ماذا كانت خطة إدموند للانتقام؟
He planned to destroy each enemy by using their own weaknesses against them.
خطط لتدمير كل عدو باستخدام نقاط ضعفه ضده.

Exercises on Chapter (7)

1. Why did Edmond decide to wait patiently before taking revenge?
2. What inner conflict did Edmond feel as he prepared for revenge?
3. What warning had Abbé Faria once given Edmond about hatred?
4. Why did Edmond consider Danglars his enemy?
5. What was Fernand's betrayal against Edmond?
6. Why did Edmond hate Villefort, the prosecutor?
7. How did Edmond use his time at sea wisely?
8. Why did Edmond decide to take a new name?
9. What did Edmond learn about his father when he returned?
10. What did Edmond discover about Mercédès, his former fiancée?
11. What did Edmond learn about Morrel's situation when he returned?
12. Why did Edmond use different names in different ports?
13. How did Edmond Dantès escape from the Château d'If?
14. What title did Edmond finally adopt, and what did it represent?
15. Why did Edmond choose to help Morrel secretly instead of revealing himself?
16. Which traits helped Edmond become a trusted sailor among captains?
17. How did Edmond react when he finally uncovered the treasure, and why?
18. What emotions did Edmond experience upon learning about Fernand and Mercédès?
19. What moral struggle did Edmond face while preparing for revenge?

Chapter (8): The Island of Monte Cristo جزيرة مونت كريستو

Summary of the Chapter ملخص الفصل

- Monte Cristo became a symbol of destiny and new identity for Edmond.
أصبحت مونت كريستو رمزاً للقدر والهوية الجديدة لإدموند.
- Edmond returned to the island as a rich man ready to turn it into his secret fortress.
عاد إدموند إلى الجزيرة كرجل ثري مستعد لتحويلها إلى حصنه السري.
- Edmond entered the secret caverns and organized the treasure carefully and kept its full size a secret.
دخل إدموند الأنفاق السرية ونظم الكنز بعناية وأخفى حجمه الحقيقي.
- Edmond built hidden rooms and a secret dock to store supplies on the island.
بنى إدموند غرفاً سرية ورصيفاً خفياً لتخزين المزن على الجزيرة.
- Monte Cristo was just a rocky island to others, but to him it was the base of his destiny.
كانت مونت كريستو بالنسبة للآخرين مجرد جزيرة صخرية، لكنها كانت بالنسبة له أساس مصيره.
- Edmond felt himself changing and realized the old sailor inside him was gone forever.
شعر إدموند بتغيره وأدرك أن البحار القديم بداخله اختفى للأبد.
- He practiced noble manners and created a calm and unreadable personality.
تدرب على الأخلاق النبيلة وصنع شخصية هادئة وغامضة.
- Edmond still remembered his painful past during quiet walks on the island.
تذكر إدموند ماضيه المؤلم خلال نزهاته الهادئة على الجزيرة.
- The treasure gave him freedom but not peace, which could only come with justice.
منحه الكنز الحرية لكنه لم يمنحه السلام، الذي لن يأتي إلا بالعدل.
- Edmond used his wealth to gain more power through secret identities.
استغل إدموند ثروته ليكتسب المزيد من القوة بهويات سرية.
- He enjoyed deceiving society just as his enemies had deceived others.
استمتع بخداع المجتمع كما خدع أعداؤه الآخرين.
- He dropped gold into the sea and swore to reward the good and punish the evil.
أسقط ذهباً في البحر وأقسم أن يكافئ الصالحين ويعاقب الأشرار.
- He divided the treasure and hid it in multiple banks across Europe.
قسم الكنز وخبأه في عدة بنوك عبر أوروبا.
- He created documents proving noble ancestry so no one would doubt him.
أعد وثائق تثبت نسبه النبيل حتى لا يشك فيه أحد.
- Sometimes Edmond remembered Abbé Faria's warning not to let hatred consume him.
أحياناً تذكر إدموند تحذير الأب فاريا ألا تدمره الكراهية.
- Edmond, once a hopeless prisoner, now sailed as the mighty Count of Monte Cristo.
كان إدموند، الذي كان يوماً سجيناً بلا أمل، يبحر الآن ككونت مونت كريستو العظيم.

أسئلة بإجاباتها النموذجية Questions with Model Answers

1. What does Edmond do after escaping the prison that shows his new identity?
(SB) ماذا يفعل إدموند بعد هروبه من السجن يظهر هويته الجديدة؟
He discovers the treasure and transforms himself into the Count of Monte Cristo.
يكتشف الكنز ويتحول إلى كونت مونت كريستو.
2. Why does Edmond choose to hide his true self from others?
(SB) لماذا يختار إدموند أن يخفي شخصيته الحقيقية عن الآخرين؟

To protect his plans, gain power secretly, and take revenge without being recognized.
ليحمي خططه ويكتسب القوة سرًا ويتنقم دون أن يتعرف عليه أحد.

3. How does the idea of "identity" play a central role in Edmond's life? (SB)

كيف تلعب فكرة "الهوية" دورًا أساسيًا في حياة إدموند؟

Edmond is reborn. He becomes a powerful figure who controls his destiny.

يولد إدموند من جديد. يصبح شخصية قوية تتحكم في مصيرها.

4. Do you agree with Edmond's plan to seek revenge, or should he forgive and move on? Explain. (SB)

هل توافق على خطة إدموند في الانتقام، أم يجب عليه أن يغفر ويمضي قدمًا؟ وضح.

Revenge would bring justice, while forgiveness would bring peace and end suffering.

الانتقام سوف يجلب العدالة، بينما التسامح سوف يجلب السلام وينهي المعاناة.

5. If you could take on a completely new identity, how would you use it to change your life? (SB)

إذا كان بإمكانك أن تتخذ هوية جديدة تمامًا، فكيف ستستخدمها لتغيير حياتك؟

I would correct my past mistakes and achieve my dreams.

سوف أصحح أخطائي الماضية وأحقق أحلامي.

6. What did the name Monte Cristo come to mean for Edmond Dantès?

ما الذي أصبح يعنيه اسم مونت كريستو لإدموند دانتيس؟

It became a symbol of destiny, not just a legend. أصبح رمزًا للمصير، وليس مجرد أسطورة.

7. What had the treasure of the Spada family done for Edmond?

ماذا فعل كنز عائلة سبادا لإدموند؟

It lifted him from misery to power.

رفعه من اليأس إلى القوة.

8. What did the island of Monte Cristo become for Edmond?

ماذا أصبحت جزيرة مونت كريستو تمثل لإدموند؟

It became his refuge, secret base, and the birthplace of his new identity.

أصبحت ملجأ، وقاعدته السرية، ومكان ولادة هويته الجديدة.

9. Why did Edmond return to Monte Cristo after saving Morrel?

لماذا عاد إدموند إلى مونت كريستو بعد إنقاذ موريل؟

To build his fortress and prepare for his new life. لبنى حصنه ويستعد لحياته الجديدة.

10. Why did Edmond organize and weigh the treasure? (SB)

لماذا نظم إدموند الكنز ووزنه؟

To control it carefully and use it without drawing suspicion.

ليتحكم فيه بدقة ويستخدمه دون إثارة الشكوك.

11. Why did Edmond hide the full size of his fortune?

لماذا أخفى إدموند الحجم الحقيقي لثروته؟

Because mystery was part of his weapon.

لأن الغموض كان جزءًا من سلاحه.

12. Why did Edmond choose the title "Count of Monte Cristo"?

لماذا اختار إدموند لقب "كونت مونت كريستو"؟

To honor the island and to hide his past.

ليكرم الجزيرة ويخفي ماضيه.

13. How did Edmond train himself for his new identity?

كيف درب إدموند نفسه على هويته الجديدة؟

He practiced noble manners, calm speech, and controlled movements.

تدرب على آداب النبلاء، والكلام الهادئ، والحركات المنضبطة.

14. What qualities did the title "Count" give Edmond?

ما الصفات التي منحها لقب "كونت" لإدموند؟

Power, respect, and influence in high society. منحه القوة والاحترام والنفوذ في المجتمع الراقى.

15. How did Edmond begin using his wealth to gain influence?

كيف بدأ إدموند باستخدام ثروته لاكتساب النفوذ؟

He lent money to merchants, funded ships, and made investments under false names. أقرض التجار أموالاً، وموّل السفن، وأجرى استثمارات بأسماء مزيفة.

16. What did Edmond learn about power in the modern world?

ماذا تعلم إدموند عن القوة في العالم الحديث؟

He learned that money opened doors more easily than swords.

تعلم أن المال يفتح الأبواب بسهولة أكبر من السيوف.

17. How did Edmond plan to fight his enemies?

كيف خطط إدموند لمواجهة أعدائه؟

He would use lies and disguise to achieve justice. سيستخدم الأكاذيب والتخفي لتحقيق العدالة.

18. What question did Edmond ask himself about revenge?

ما السؤال الذي طرحه إدموند على نفسه بشأن الانتقام؟

Whether happiness could be built only on destruction. هل يمكن بناء السعادة على الدمار فقط.

Exercises on Chapter (8)

1. What was Edmond's justification for his revenge?
2. What did the island symbolize as Edmond departed?
3. Why was Paris important for Edmond's plans?
4. What gave Edmond power in the Parisian society he was about to enter?
5. How did Edmond's time on Monte Cristo prepare him for revenge?
6. How did the island appear as Edmond's ship sailed away?
7. What false documents did Edmond have created?
8. Why was it important that no one doubted Edmond's noble status?
9. According to Edmond, what was the true purpose of his wealth?
10. Why do you think Edmond throw coins into the sea?
11. How did Edmond protect his treasure from loss or theft?
12. How was Edmond received in Paris?
13. What truth did Edmond discover about his enemies?
14. What did the hired sailors think Edmond was doing?
15. What did Monte Cristo represent for Edmond?
16. What was the real reason for Edmond's second visit to the island of Monte Cristo?
17. How did sailors view Monte Cristo?
18. What memories continued to haunt Edmond?
19. What role did Edmond play while in Rome?
20. What symbolic act did Edmond perform one evening on the island?
21. What inner warning from Abbé Faria did Edmond remember?
22. Why does Edmond choose to hide his true self from others?
23. Do you agree with Edmond's plan to seek revenge, or should he forgive? Explain.
24. If you could take on a new identity, how would you use it to change your life?

Chapter (9): A New Identity هوية جديدة

Summary of the Chapter ملخص الفصل

- Edmond's grand arrival in Paris made everyone curious about the foreign nobleman.
أثار وصول إدموند الفاخر إلى باريس فضول الجميع تجاه هذا النبيل الأجنبي.
- He rented a magnificent house and impressed people with his wealth and mystery.
استأجر منزلاً رائعاً وأذهل الناس بثروته وغموضه.
- His many masks let him enter different social worlds without raising suspicion.
سمحت له أقنعة العديدة بدخول عوالم اجتماعية مختلفة دون إثارة الشك.
- Each betrayer had built a new life, but Edmond still saw them as thieves of his past.
بنى كل خائن حياة جديدة، لكن إدموند رأىهم سارقى ماضيه.
- Mercédès felt pain when she saw him, sensing the shadow of the man she once loved.
شعرت مرسيدس بالألم عندما رآته، وكأنها تلمح ظل الرجل الذي أحبته.
- The Count used his wealth cleverly to expose the greed and weakness of others.
استخدم الكونت ثروته بذكاء لكشف جشع وضعف الآخرين.
- He also helped good people secretly, especially Maximilien Morrel.
ساعد أيضاً الطيبين سراً، وخاصة ماكسيميليان موريل.
- Disguised as Abbé Busoni, he visited Caderousse and saw how miserable he had become.
متكزراً كالأب بوسوني، زار كلروس ورأى مدى بؤسه.
- Edmond realized Caderousse would destroy himself without any help.
أدرك إدموند أن كلاروس سيدمر نفسه دون تدخل.
- Seeing Mercédès awakened old pain, but he forced himself to stay strong.
رؤية مرسيدس أيقظت ألماً قديماً، لكنه أجبر نفسه على البقاء قوياً.
- The Count's fame spread, and people both admired and feared him.
انتشرت شهرة الكونت، وأعجب به الناس وخافوه في الوقت نفسه.
- Even his enemies welcomed him, not knowing who he really was.
رغب به أعداؤه دون أن يعرفوا هويته الحقيقية.
- At night he felt the difference between his mask and the man he once had been.
في الليل شعر بالفرق بين قناعه والرجل الذي كانه قديماً.
- He remembered his suffering and renewed his vow to bring justice to the guilty.
تذكر معاناته وجدد عهده بأن يحقق العدالة ضد المذنبين.

أسئلة بإجاباتها النموذجية Questions with Model Answers

1. Why does Edmond return to his city in disguise instead of showing himself openly?
(SB) لماذا يعود إدموند إلى مدينته متكزراً بدلاً من إظهار نفسه علناً?
To observe his enemies without being recognized. ليراقب أعدائه دون أن يتعرف عليه أحد.
2. What does Edmond's careful planning suggest about his personality after prison?
(SB) بماذا يوحي تخطيط إدموند الدقيق عن شخصيته بعد السجن?
He becomes patient, intelligent, and controlled. أصبح صبوراً وذكياً ومتمزناً.
3. How do loyalty and betrayal shape Edmond's feelings toward his old friends and enemies?
(SB) كيف يشكل الولاء والخيانة مشاعر إدموند تجاه أصدقائه وأعدائه القدامى?
He rewards loyalty and punishes betrayal. يكافئ الولاء ويعاقب الخيانة.

4. Do you think Edmond's revenge is justified after so many years? Why or why not? (SB)
هل تعتقد أن انتقام إدموند مبرر بعد كل هذه السنين؟ ولماذا؟

It is justified, but revenge causes more pain. إنه مبرر لكن الانتقام يسبب مزيداً من الألم.

5. If someone betrayed you deeply, would you choose forgiveness or revenge? Explain your reasoning. (SB)
إذا خانتك أحدهم خيانة عميقة، هل تختار المسامحة أم الانتقام؟ اشرح سببك.

I would choose forgiveness to find peace. سأختار المسامحة لأجد السلام.

6. The Count's transformation says that suffering can change a person. Explain.
تحول الكونت يخبرنا عن كيفية تغير الإنسان بسبب المعاناة. فسر ذلك.

It shows that deep pain can turn innocence into cold determination. يظهر أن الألم العميق يمكن أن يحول البراءة إلى تصميم بارد.

7. Why does Paris admire the Count even though no one really knows him? لماذا تعجب باريس بالكونت رغم أن أحداً لا يعرفه حقاً؟

Mystery and wealth make people curious and respectful. الغموض والثروة يجعلان الناس فضوليين ومُعجبين.

8. Why does the Count help Maximilien secretly instead of openly? لماذا يساعد الكونت ماكسميليان سراً وليس علناً؟

True kindness needs no praise and secrecy protects his identity. الطيبة الحقيقية لا تحتاج إلى مدح والسرية تحمي هويته.

9. What does Mercédès' reaction when she sees Edmond again show about love? ماذا تُظهر ردة فعل ميرسيدس، حين رأت إدموند من جديد، عن الحب؟

Real love never dies. الحب الحقيقي لا يموت أبداً.

10. Edmond's control over his emotions made him powerful. Illustrate. سيطرة إدموند على عواطفه جعلته قوياً. وضح ذلك.

It allows him to think clearly and manipulate others effectively. تسمح له بالتفكير بوضوح والتأثير في الآخرين بفعالية.

11. How does the Count test the morals of the people around him? كيف يختبر الكونت أخلاق الناس من حوله؟

He offered them money and opportunities. عرض عليهم المال والفرص.

12. How does society's obsession with wealth help Edmond's plan? كيف يساعد هوس المجتمع بالثروة خطة إدموند؟

People's greed makes them easy to manipulate. جشع الناس من السهل التلاعب بهم.

13. Why does Edmond rarely smile or show emotion? لماذا نادراً ما يبتسم إدموند أو يظهر مشاعره؟

Emotion could reveal his human weakness. العاطفة قد تكشف ضعفه الإنساني.

14. Why do you think Edmond's generosity frightens some people? في رأيك، لماذا يخيف كرم إدموند بعض الناس؟

It is unnatural and may hide unknown motives. لأنه غير طبيعي وقد يخفي نوايا مجهولة.

15. What inner conflict does Edmond face when he sees Mercédès again? ما الصراع الداخلي الذي يواجهه إدموند عندما يرى ميرسيدس مرة أخرى؟

He feels love fighting against revenge. يشعر بالحب يصارع الانتقام.

16. Why does Edmond choose to punish his enemies one by one instead of all at once?
 لماذا يختار إدموند معاقبة أعدائه واحدًا تلو الآخر بدلًا من جميعهم في وقت واحد؟
 He wants each of them to feel personal guilt and fear.
 يريد أن يشعر كل واحد منهم بالذنب والخوف شخصيًا.
17. What does Mercédès' decision to face Edmond show about her strength of character?
 ماذا تظهر مواجهة ميرسيدس لإدموند عن قوة شخصيتها؟
 She is brave and guided by love, not fear. إنها شجاعة وتتحرك بدافع الحب وليس الخوف.
18. What does the Count's generosity toward the poor say about his true nature?
 ماذا يقول كرم الكونت تجاه الفقراء عن طبيعته الحقيقية؟
 Kindness still survives inside him. الطيبة لا تزال حية داخله.
19. How does Mercédès' sadness affect Edmond's feelings of revenge?
 كيف يؤثر حزن ميرسيدس على مشاعر الانتقام لدى إدموند؟
 It reminds him of his lost humanity and makes him question his path.
 تُذكّره بإنسانيته الضائعة وتجعله يشك في طريقه.
20. "Justice will be done" What does this oath reveal about Edmond's character?
 "ستتحقق العدالة." ماذا يكشف هذا القسم عن شخصية إدموند؟
 He is determined and strong. إنه عازم وقوي.

Exercises on Chapter (9)

1. What does Edmond's use of wealth reveal about his view of society?
2. In your opinion, what danger comes from living only for revenge?
3. Why does Caderousse's downfall seem inevitable؟
 حتميًا
4. What emotion still connects Edmond to his past life?
5. What moral difference is there between justice and revenge?
6. Why do you think Edmond speaks politely even to his enemies?
7. What does Caderousse's greed teach us about human weakness?
8. How does Edmond's calmness make his revenge more effective?
9. What replaced the poor sailor Edmond Dantès?
10. What did the Count bring with him to Paris?
11. Where did the Count rent his house in Paris?
12. What did Parisian society value most?
13. What disguise did Edmond use to gather information?
14. What identity did Edmond use to appear generous?
15. Why did Edmond use several disguises?
16. What title did Fernand take later?
17. What happened to Caderousse's life?
18. How did Mercédès feel when she saw the Count?
19. How did society react to the Count's arrival?
20. Why did the Count help Maximilien?
21. How did Caderousse confess his guilt?
22. What did the Count sometimes do late at night?

Summary of the Chapter الملخص الفصل

- Edmond had waited for years to begin his revenge on those who betrayed him.
انتظر إدموند لسنوات ليبدأ انتقامه ممن خانوه.
- Caderousse was the first target because he stayed silent during Edmond's arrest.
كان كادروس هو الهدف الأول لأنه لزم الصمت عند اعتقال إدموند.
- Caderousse killed a man while stealing a diamond and was later stabbed while escaping.
قتل كادروس رجلاً وهو يسرق ألماسة وطعن لاحقاً أثناء الهرب.
- Disguised as Abbé Busoni, the count visited Caderousse as he lay dying.
متنكرًا كالأب بوسوني، زار الكونت كادروس وهو يحتضر.
- The Count told him coldly that his greed had destroyed him.
قال له الكونت ببرود إن جشعه هو ما دمّره.
- Caderousse died after revealing that the Count was Edmond Dantès.
مات كادروس بعد أن كشف أن الكونت هو إدموند دانتيس.
- Next he targeted Danglars, the jealous clerk who had accused him of treason.
ثم استهدف دانجلار، أمين الصندوق الغيور الذي اتهمه بالخيانة.
- The Count attacked Danglars's fortune by making him lose huge amounts of money.
انقض الكونت على ثروة دانجلار بجعله يخسر مبالغ ضخمة.
- He praised Danglars in public while secretly pushing him toward ruin.
أشاد الكونت بدانجلار علنًا بينما كان يدفعه سرًا نحو الهلاك.
- The Count planned to destroy Villefort's honor, not his life.
خطط الكونت لتدمير شرف فيل فورت لا حياته.
- He revealed Villefort's hidden crimes, causing his public reputation to collapse.
كشف جرائم فيل فورت السرية فتدهورت سمعته أمام الناس.
- Villefort's family fell apart, and he lost his sanity.
تفككت عائلة فيل فورت وفقد عقله.
- The Count exposed Fernand's wartime betrayal of Ali Pasha.
كشف الكونت خيانة فرناند لعلي باشا أثناء الحرب.
- At trial, the evidence ruined Fernand's honor and shocked Paris.
في المحاكمة دمّرت الأدلة شرف فرناند وأصابت باريس بالصدمة.
- Mercédès begged the Count to spare her son, and he agreed.
توسلت مرسيدس للكونت أن يعفو عن ابنها فوافق.
- Fernand killed himself after losing everything.
قتل فرناند نفسه بعد أن فقد كل شيء.
- Each victory filled Edmond with both satisfaction and emptiness.
ملا كل انتصار قلب إدموند بالرضا والفراغ معًا.
- Maximilien Morrel reminded Edmond that goodness still existed.
ماكسيميليان موريل ذكر إدموند بأن الخير لا يزال موجودًا.
- The Count saved Valentine by protecting her in secret.
أنقذ الكونت فالنتاين بحمايتها سرًا.
- For the first time, he used his power to protect rather than punish.
لأول مرة استخدم قوته للحماية بدل العقاب.
- Paris whispered about whether the Count was an angel or a devil.
همست باريس متسائلة إن كان الكونت ملاكًا أم شيطانًا.
- Only Edmond knew he was simply a man who had suffered deeply and sought justice.
وحده إدموند عرف أنه مجرد رجل عانى كثيرًا وسعى إلى العدالة.

1. **How does Edmond present himself when he returns as the Count of Monte Cristo?** (SB)
كيف يُقدِّم إدموند نفسه عندما يعود بصفته كونت مونت كريستو؟
He presents himself as a mysterious and powerful nobleman. يُقدِّم نفسه كنبيل غامض وقوي.
2. **Why does Edmond prefer to act through disguise and secrets rather than reveal himself directly?** (SB)
لماذا يفضل إدموند أن يتصرف بالتكر والأسرار بدلاً من الكشف عن نفسه مباشرة؟
Secrecy helps him control his enemies and achieve revenge safely. السرية تساعد على السيطرة على أعدائه وتحقيق انتقامه بأمان.
3. **How does Edmond's new wealth give him power that he never had before?** (SB)
كيف تقوم ثروة إدموند الجديدة بمنحه قوة لم تكن لديه من قبل؟
His wealth allows him to influence society and destroy his enemies without violence. ثروته تمكنه من التأثير في المجتمع وتدمير أعدائه دون عنف.
4. **Do you agree that using deception can sometimes be justified if the goal is justice? Why or why not?** (SB)
هل توافق على أن الخداع يمكن أن يكون مبرراً أحياناً إذا كان الهدف هو العدالة؟ ولماذا؟
Sometimes it can be justified if it prevents greater harm. يمكن تبريره أحياناً إذا منع ضرراً أكبر.
5. **If you suddenly gained great wealth and influence, what would be the first change you would make in your society?** (SB)
إذا حصلت فجأة على ثروة ونفوذ كبيرين، ما أول تغيير ستحدثه في مجتمعك؟
I would use help the poor and improve education. سأساعد الفقراء وأحسن التعليم.
6. **What lesson does Caderousse's death teach Edmond about human nature?**
ما الدرس الذي تعلمه إدموند من موت كادروس عن طبيعة الإنسان؟
Evil often destroys itself without help. الشر غالباً ما يدمر نفسه دون مساعدة.
7. **Why does Edmond punish Danglars by targeting his money instead of his life?**
لماذا يعاقب إدموند دانجلار باستهداف ماله بدلاً من حياته؟
Danglars values money most. دانجلار يقدر المال أكثر.
8. **Why does the Count destroy Ville fort's family instead of killing him directly?**
لماذا يدمر الكونت عائلة فيل فورت بدلاً من قتله مباشرة؟
Losing honor causes more suffering than death. فقدان الشرف يسبب ألماً أكبر من الموت.
9. **Why does the Count spare Albert instead of completing his revenge?**
لماذا يعفو الكونت عن ألبرت بدلاً من إتمام انتقامه؟
Mercédès's begging awakens his lost humanity. توميل ميرسيدس أيقظ إنسانيته المفقودة.
10. **What does Fernand's suicide symbolize?**
إلى ماذا يرمز انتحار فرناند؟
Dishonor can be killing. العار قد يكون قاتلاً.
11. **What internal conflict grows inside Edmond after each act of revenge?**
ما الصراع الداخلي الذي يتزايد داخل إدموند بعد كل عمل انتقامي؟
He struggles between being a judge or a vengeful man. يصارع بين أن يكون قاضياً أو رجلاً حاقداً.
12. **Why is Maximilien Morrel important to Edmond's transformation?**
لماذا يُعد ماكسميليان موريل مهماً في تحول إدموند؟
His goodness reminds Edmond of hope. طيبته تذكر إدموند بالأمل.

13. What does saving Valentine reveal about Edmond's moral change?

ماذا يكشف إنقاذ فالنتين عن التغيير الأخلاقي لإدموند؟

لا يزال قلبي على اختيار الرحمة بدل الانتقام. He can still choose compassion over vengeance.

14. What does Villefort's madness symbolize?

إلى ماذا يرمز جنون فيل فورت؟

A guilty mind eventually punishes itself.

العقل المذنب يعاقب نفسه في النهاية.

15. Why does Edmond call his revenge "justice" rather than hatred?

لماذا يسمي إدموند انتقامه "عدالة" وليس "كراهية"؟

He believes he is correcting the wrongs of fate.

يعتقد أنه يصحح أخطاء القدر.

16. What moral danger comes from playing the role of "God's justice"?

ما الخطر الأخلاقي الناتج عن لعب دور "عدالة الله"؟

It can lead to pride and moral blindness.

قد يؤدي إلى الغرور والعمى الأخلاقي.

17. What is the significance of Paris seeing the Count as both angel and devil?

ما دلالة رؤية باريس للكونت كملك وشيطان في آن واحد؟

Morality can appear complex from different perspectives.

الأخلاق يمكن أن تبدو معقدة عند النظر إليها من زوايا مختلفة.

18. Why do you think Edmond chooses to punish his enemies in different ways instead of the same way?

في رأيك، لماذا يختار إدموند أن يعاقب أعداءه بطرق مختلفة بدلاً من طريقة واحدة؟

He wants each punishment to match the nature of each person's crime.

يريد أن تتناسب كل عقوبة مع طبيعة جريمة كل شخص.

Exercises on Chapter (10)

1. Why does Edmond choose to begin his revenge with Caderousse?
2. What does Edmond's manipulation of the market reveal about his intelligence?
3. Why does Mercédès beg for her son's life?
4. How does Edmond's view of justice begin to change after his revenges?
5. Why do you think Edmond feels emptiness after achieving revenge?
6. What question does Edmond ask himself that shows his doubt about revenge?
7. Why does Edmond never reveal his true identity to the public?
8. How does Edmond's intelligence replace traditional strength or weapons?
9. How does Edmond's disguise as Abbé Busoni serve both justice and mercy?
10. How does love influence Edmond's final choices?
11. What does Caderousse's decision to steal again reveal about his character?
12. Why does Danglars panic when his fortune begins to disappear?
13. Fernand's suicide reflects his pride and shame. Illustrate.
14. What crime does Caderousse commit on the stormy night?
15. What was Danglars's main weakness? How does the Count ruin Danglars?
16. How did the Count act toward Danglars in public? Why?
17. What was the Count's aim to destroy in Ville fort's life?
18. How did Ville fort's daughter Valentine suffer?
19. What happened to Villefort's mind at the end?
20. What secret from Fernand's past did the Count expose?
21. What question does Edmond ask himself at night?
22. How did Edmond use his power differently with Valentine and Maximilien?

Chapter (11): The Fall of the Guilty سقوط المذنبين

Summary of the Chapter ملخص الفصل

- Danglars reached total ruin as his greed left him drowning in debt.
وصل داتجلار إلى دمار كامل بعدما تركه جشعه غارقاً في الديون.
- He tried to flee with his remaining gold but was caught in Italy.
حاول الهروب بما تبقى من ذهبه لكنه أمسك في إيطاليا.
- Danglars was robbed, starved, and left broken by the Count's allies.
سلب داتجلار من ممتلكاته وجُوع وتركه حلفاء الكونت محطماً.
- When the Count appeared, Danglars begged for his life.
عندما ظهر الكونت، توسل داتجلار أن يُبقي على حياته.
- Edmond spared him, leaving him to live dishonored and alone.
عفا إدموند عنه وتركه يعيش مُهاناً ووحيداً.
- Villefort was destroyed when Edmond exposed every hidden crime in his past.
تدمر فيلفورت عندما كشف إدموند كل جرائمه الخفية.
- The once-powerful prosecutor stood in court humiliated and broken.
وقف المدعي العام -القوي سابقاً- في المحكمة ذليلاً ومنهاراً.
- He returned home to find his wife and young son dead from poison.
عاد إلى منزله ليجد زوجته وابنه الصغير ميتين بالسم.
- Villefort lost his sanity and wandered his home like a madman.
فقد فيلفورت عقله وتجوّل في منزله كالمجنون.
- Mercédès recognized the Count as Edmond and faced the pain of her past.
تعرفت مرسيدس على الكونت كإدموند وواجهت ألم ماضيها.
- She visited him secretly and asked whether revenge had brought him peace.
زارته سراً وسألته إن كان الانتقام قد جلب له السلام.
- She warned him that justice without mercy would destroy his heart.
حذرت من أن العدالة بلا رحمة ستدمر قلبه.
- Edmond found hope in Maximilien and Valentine while his enemies fell.
وجد إدموند الأمل في ماكسيميليان وفالنتين بينما سقط أعداؤه.
- Maximilien represented loyalty, and Valentine represented innocence.
مثل ماكسيميليان الولاء ومثلت فالنتين البراءة.
- As Maximilien prepared to die, Edmond revealed that Valentine was still alive.
بينما استعد ماكسيميليان للموت، كشف إدموند أن فالنتين ما زالت على قيد الحياة.
- Their reunion filled Maximilien with joy and brought Edmond his first warm smile.
ملأ لقاءهما ماكسيميليان فرحاً ومنح إدموند أول ابتسامة دافئة.
- Before leaving Paris, Edmond visited Mercédès one last time.
قبل مغادرة باريس، زار إدموند مرسيدس للمرة الأخيرة.
- He offered her Fernand's fortune, wishing to return what she had lost.
عرض عليها ثروة فرناند آملاً أن تعوض ما فقدته.
- Mercédès refused the money and wished Edmond peace instead.
رفضت مرسيدس المال وتمنت لإدموند السلام.
- Her forgiveness softened Edmond's heart and broke his anger.
لينت مفقتها قلب إدموند وحطمت غضبه.

1. Who becomes the Count's main target of revenge? Why? (SB)
 من أصبح الهدف الرئيسي للانتقام الكونت؟ ولماذا؟
 Danglars and Villefort, because they ruined his life. دانجلار وفيلفور لأنهما دمرا حياته.
2. What do Edmond's secret arrangements show about his personality? (SB)
 ماذا تكشف ترتيبات إدموند السرية عن شخصيته؟
 They show he is clever and patient. يُظهر أنه ذكي وصبور.
3. How is the difference between justice and revenge shown in the story? (SB)
 كيف يظهر الفرق بين العدالة والانتقام في القصة؟
 Justice heals, but revenge destroys. العدالة تُصلح، أما الانتقام يُدمر.
4. Do you think the Count is right to manipulate others, even if they are guilty? Why or why not? (SB)
 هل تعتقد أن الكونت محق في تلاعبه بالآخرين، حتى لو كانوا مذنبين؟ ولماذا؟
 No, because one shouldn't correct wrongs with new wrongs. لا، لأن المرء لا ينبغي أن يعالج أخطاء بأخطاء جديدة.
5. Is it possible for revenge to ever truly bring peace to someone's heart? (SB)
 هل يمكن للانتقام أن يجلب السلام الحقيقي إلى قلب الإنسان؟
 No, only forgiveness can bring peace. لا، وحدها المغفرة تجلب السلام.
6. Edmond's revenge affects both his enemies and himself. Explain.
 أثر انتقام إدموند على أعدائه وعلى نفسه. اشرح ذلك.
 It destroys his enemies but also fills his heart with emptiness. يدمر أعدائه لكن ملأ قلبه فراغاً.
7. Prove that Villefort's ambition was more dangerous than Danglars's greed.
 أثبت أن طموح فيلفور كان أخطر من طمع دانجلار.
 Villefort's ambition ruined his family and drove him mad. طموح فيلفورت دمر أسرته ودفعه إلى الجنون.
8. Mercédès represents forgiveness in the novel. Explain.
 تمثل مرسيدس المغفرة في الرواية. فسّر ذلك.
 She forgives Edmond and teaches him mercy over revenge. تغفر لإدموند وتعلمه الرحمة بدل الانتقام.
9. Maximilien and Valentine bring hope back to Edmond's life. Illustrate.
 أعاد ماكسيميليان وفالنتين الأمل إلى حياة إدموند. وضح ذلك.
 Their love and innocence remind him that goodness still exists. حبهما وبراءتهما ذكراه بأن الخير لا يزال موجوداً.
10. Explain why Edmond finally finds peace at the end.
 اشرح لماذا يجد إدموند السلام في النهاية.
 He learns that forgiveness brings more peace than revenge. يتعلم أن المغفرة تجلب سلاماً أكبر من الانتقام.
11. Why did Edmond prepare his revenge so carefully? لماذا أعد إدموند انتقامه بعناية؟
 He wanted justice, not just anger. أراد العدالة لا الغضب فقط.

12. What does Mercédès's poverty reveal about her values?

She values peace over wealth.

ماذا يكشف فقر مرسيدس عن قيمها؟
تُقدّر السلام أكثر من المال.

13. Why did the Count choose not to kill Danglars?

He wanted him to live with shame.

لماذا اختار الكونت ألا يقتل دانجلار؟
أراد له أن يعيش بالعار.

14. Why is Mercédès called "the ghost of the past"?

She reminds Edmond of who he used to be.

لماذا تُسمى مرسيدس "شبح الماضي"؟
تُذكّر إدموند بما كان عليه في الماضي.

15. How do Maximilien and Valentine contrast with Edmond's enemies?

They are pure and loyal, not greedy or cruel.

كيف يختلف ماكسيميليان وفالنتين عن أعداء إدموند؟
هما نقيان ومخلصان، لا جشع فيهما ولا قسوة.

16. How does Edmond's action toward the lovers show his change?

He begins to care and forgive.

كيف تُظهر أفعال إدموند تجاه العاشقين تغييره؟
بدأ يهتم ويغفر.

17. What lesson does Edmond learn about revenge?

Revenge never brings true peace.

ما الدرس الذي يتعلمه إدموند عن الانتقام؟
الانتقام لا يجلب السلام الحقيقي أبداً.

18. Why does Edmond choose to punish rather than kill his enemies?

He wants them to suffer as he did, not to die quickly.

لماذا يختار إدموند أن يعاقب أعداءه بدلاً من قتلهم؟
يريدهم أن يتكلموا كما تكلم، لا أن يموتوا بسرعة.

Exercises on Chapter (11)

1. What does Danglars's attempt to escape say about his character?
2. Why does Edmond finally reveal his true identity to Danglars?
3. What does Maximilien's decision to die for love show about his personality?
4. Why does Edmond visit Mercédès before leaving Paris?
5. What does Edmond's final act toward Mercédès and Albert reveal?
6. What does the "storm" refer to in the subject of revenge?
7. What was Danglars's main weakness?
8. What happened to Danglars in Italy?
9. What destroyed Villefort's reputation?
10. How does Edmond feel after Mercedes's visiting him?
11. Why does Maximilien want to die?
12. What surprise does Edmond reveal to Maximilien?
13. How does Maximilien feel and react when he sees Valentine?
14. How did Edmond's plan reflect his intelligence?
15. What does Edmond's control over events show about him?
16. How did greed lead to Danglars's downfall?
17. What emotion replaces Edmond's anger after seeing Danglars broken?
18. How did Edmond expose Villefort's crimes?
19. Why does Mercédès visit the Count secretly?
20. How does Mercedes's forgiveness affect Edmond?
21. What does Maximilien's despair show about love?
22. Why does Edmond decide to leave Paris?
23. What emotion does Edmond feel at the end?

Chapter (12): A New Dawn فجر جديد

Summary of the Chapter ملخص الفصل

- Paris forgot Count of Monte Cristo, but Edmond felt no joy after defeating his enemies.
تسيت باريس كونت مونت كريستو، لكن إدموند لم يشعر بأي فرح بعد هزيمة أعدائه.
- Edmond sat alone in his rich house, surrounded by treasures that felt empty.
جلس إدموند وحده في منزله الفاخر، محاطاً بكنوز بدت فارغة.
- He remembered his past and wondered if the man he once was had died.
تذكر ماضيه وتساءل إن كان الرجل الذي كانه قد مات.
- Edmond visited Mercédès for the last time at her quiet seaside home.
زار إدموند ميرسيدس للمرة الأخيرة في منزلها الهادئ على البحر.
- She told him the man she loved still lived inside him but was buried under anger.
قالت له إن الرجل الذي أحبته ما زال بداخله لكنه مدفون تحت الغضب.
- Edmond admitted he had punished his enemies but felt more trapped than before.
اعترف إدموند بأنه عاقب أعداءه لكنه شعر بأنه أكثر تقييداً من قبل.
- Mercédès urged him to release his hatred and choose a new future.
حثته ميرسيدس على ترك الكراهية واختيار مستقبل جديد.
- Edmond gave Albert his father's fortune and left Mercédès in tears.
أعطى إدموند لألبرت ثروة والده وغادر بينما كانت ميرسيدس تبكي بصمت.
- He saved Maximilien and Valentine and brought them to his island.
أنقذ ماكسيميليان وفالنتين وأخذهما إلى جزيرته.
- There he told them their love had taught him mercy over revenge.
أخبرهما هناك أن حبهما علمه أن الرحمة أعظم من الانتقام.
- Edmond gave them his fortune and chose freedom over wealth or vengeance.
إدموند منحهما ثروته واختار الحرية بدل المال أو الانتقام.
- He sailed away with Haydée, asking her to join him in a new life.
أبحر مع هايدي، طالباً منها أن ترافقه في حياة جديدة.
- She promised to stay with him forever as they left the past behind.
وعدته بأن تبقى معه إلى الأبد بينما تركا الماضي خلفهما.
- As the sun rose, Edmond finally felt truly free after many years.
ومع شروق الشمس، شعر إدموند أخيراً بالحرية الحقيقية بعد سنوات طويلة.

أسئلة بإجاباتها النموذجية: Questions with Model Answers

1. What choice does Edmond make at the end of the story: more revenge or peace?
Why?
(SB) ما الاختيار الذي يتخذه إدموند في نهاية القصة: المزيد من الانتقام أم السلام؟
He chooses peace and forgiveness instead of revenge. يختار السلام والمغفرة بدلاً من الانتقام.
Mercedes taught him that peace is better than revenge. علمته ميرسيدس أن السلام أفضل من الانتقام.
2. How does the theme of forgiveness change the meaning of the story compared to pure revenge?
(SB) كيف يغير موضوع المغفرة معنى القصة مقارنة بالانتقام الخالص؟
Forgiveness turns the story from hatred into hope and healing.
تحول المغفرة القصة من الكراهية إلى الأمل والشفاء.

3. What does the Count's final decision suggest about his character growth? (SB)

بماذا توحي قرار الكونت الأخير عن تطور شخصيته؟

He learned mercy and found wisdom after suffering. تعلم الرحمة ووجد الحكمة بعد المعاناة.

4. Do you agree that forgiveness is stronger than revenge? Why or why not? (SB)

هل توافق على أن المغفرة أقوى من الانتقام؟ ولماذا؟

Yes, because forgiveness frees the heart, while revenge chains it.

نعم، لأن المغفرة تُحرر القلب، بينما الانتقام يقيده.

5. If you had power to punish your enemies, would you stop at justice or go further to seek revenge? Explain. (SB)

إذا كانت لديك القدرة على معاقبة أعدائك، هل ستوقف عند العدالة أم تذهب أبعد لتطلب الانتقام؟ اشرح.

I would stop at justice, because revenge only creates more pain.

سأوقف عند العدالة، لأن الانتقام لا يخلق سوى مزيد من الألم.

6. What is the moral of *The Count of Monte Cristo*? ما العبرة من رواية كونت مونت كريستو؟

Revenge can destroy both the victim and the avenger. الانتقام قد يدمر الضحية والمنتقم معاً.

Forgiveness and mercy bring peace and freedom. المغفرة والرحمة يجلبان السلام والحرية.

7. What do you think of Edmond? Why? ما رأيك في إدموند؟ ولماذا؟

He is brave and intelligent. He suffered greatly but learned the value of mercy.

إنه شجاع وذكي. عانى كثيراً، لكنه تعلم قيمة الرحمة.

8. What do you think of Mercédès? Why? ما رأيك في مرسيدس؟ ولماذا؟

She is kind and loyal. She represents love that endures even after betrayal and loss.

إنها طيبة ومخلصة. تمثل الحب الذي يستمر حتى بعد الخيانة والتفقد.

9. Explain why Edmond feels no joy after taking revenge.

اشرح لماذا لا يشعر إدموند بالفرح بعد أن انتقم.

He realizes revenge has only brought him emptiness, not peace.

يدرك أن الانتقام جلب له الفراغ فقط، وليس السلام.

10. Discuss how Mercédès helps Edmond rediscover his humanity.

ناقش كيف تساعد مرسيدس إدموند على استعادة إنسانيته.

She reminds him of love, forgiveness, and the power of letting go.

تذكّره بالحب والتسامح وقوة التخلي عن الكراهية.

11. Explain how Edmond's view of wealth changes by the end of the story.

اشرح كيف يتغير رأي إدموند في الثروة بنهاية القصة.

He learns that gold and power are worthless without love and mercy.

يتعلم أن الذهب والقوة بلا قيمة من دون الحب والرحمة.

12. How does the phrase "The Empty Victory" reflect Edmond's emotions?

كيف تعكس عبارة "النصر الفارغ" مشاعر إدموند؟

His success in revenge feels meaningless without love or peace.

تجاهه في الانتقام بلا معنى من دون الحب أو السلام.

13. Why does Mercédès say Edmond still carries the man she once loved?

لماذا تقول مرسيدس إن إدموند ما زال يحمل الرجل الذي أحبته؟

She believes the good part of him still exists beneath his anger.

تؤمن أن الجزء الطيب منه ما زال موجوداً تحت الغضب.

14. Illustrate how Haydée represents a new beginning for Edmond.

وضّح كيف تمثل هايدي بداية جديدة لإدموند.

She symbolizes love, healing, and the future.

تمثل الحب والشفاء والمستقبل.

15. What does Albert's promise show about his character?

ماذا يُظهر وعد ألبرت عن شخصيته؟

He values honesty and wants to live a better life.

يقتر الصدق ويريد أن يعيش حياة أفضل.

16. What does Edmond mean when he says "mercy is greater than revenge"?

ماذا يقصد إدموند عندما يقول "الرحمة أعظم من الانتقام"؟

He realizes compassion brings peace, while revenge brings only pain.

يدرك أن الرحمة تجلب السلام، بينما تجلب الانتقام الألم فقط.

17. Why does Edmond choose to leave his fortune to the lovers?

لماذا يختار إدموند أن يترك ثروته للعاشقين؟

He believes they will use it with love, not greed.

يعتقد أنهم سيستخدمونها بالمحبة وليس بالطمع.

18. Why does Edmond finally feel free at the end?

لماذا يشعر إدموند أخيرًا بالحرية في النهاية؟

He released hatred and chose love instead.

تخلّى عن الكراهية واختار الحب بدلاً منها.

Exercises on Chapter (12)

1. Gold has no meaning without love. Do you agree? Why?
2. Edmond's journey is not just about revenge but self-discovery. Explain.
3. What lesson does Mercédès try to teach Edmond?
4. Why does Edmond give Albert his father's fortune?
5. What does "Wait and hope" symbolize at the end of the story?
6. Why is it important that Haydée answers "Forever"?
7. How does the sea function symbolically in this ending?
8. How does Edmond's transformation complete the story's moral?
9. How does love redeem **يُخلص** Edmond's soul?
10. What role does forgiveness play in the ending?
11. Why does Edmond see his treasures as lifeless?
12. What is the significance of Edmond visiting Mercédès again?
13. How does Mercédès help Edmond change his heart?
14. What emotions dominate Edmond's farewell to Paris?
15. How does Edmond's story reflect the danger of obsession?
16. Why is Monte Cristo island an important setting in the end of the novel?
17. How does Edmond's relationship with Haydée differ from his past love?
18. What does the sunrise at the end symbolize?
19. Why does Edmond choose to save Maximilien and Valentine?
20. What does Edmond's decision to give up his fortune show about his priorities?
21. Why does Edmond sail away with Haydée instead of staying in Paris?
22. What does Haydée's decision to stay with Edmond reveal about her feelings?

General Questions

1. How is forgiveness shown as a theme in the novel? كيف يظهر موضوع التسامح في الرواية؟
At the end, Edmond chooses mercy instead of hatred, proving that forgiveness brings peace. في النهاية، يختار إدموند الرحمة بدلاً من الكراهية، مما يثبت أن التسامح يجلب السلام.
2. Betrayal is one of the main themes in the novel. Discuss. الخيانة هي من الموضوعات الرئيسية في الرواية. ناقش ذلك.
Danglars, Fernand, and Caderousse betray Edmond out of jealousy and greed. دانجلار وفرناند وكاروس خانوا إدموند بدافع الغيرة والطمع.
Villefort betrays justice to protect himself. فيلفور خان العدالة ليحمي نفسه.
3. Revenge is one of the main themes in the novel. Illustrate. الانتقام هو من الموضوعات الرئيسية في الرواية. وضح.
Edmond ruins Danglars financially, exposes Fernand's dishonor, and destroys Villefort's family. إدموند دمر ثروة دانجلار، وكشف خيانة فرناند، وفصح أسرة فيلفور.
4. Injustice is one of the main themes in the novel. Illustrate. الظلم هو من الموضوعات الرئيسية في الرواية. وضح.
Edmond is innocent, but he is imprisoned because of envy and corruption. إدموند كان بريئاً، لكنه سُجن بسبب الحسد والفساد.
إلى ماذا يرمز إدموند؟
5. What does Edmond symbolize? Transformation, human resilience and the struggle between revenge and forgiveness. التغيير وقوة الصمود البشري والصراع بين الانتقام والتسامح.
6. What does Mercédès represent in the novel? ماذا تمثل مرسيدس في الرواية؟
Love, loyalty, and loss. الحب والوفاء والخسارة.
7. What does Haydée represent in the story? ماذا تمثل هايدي في القصة؟
Love, loyalty, and the hope of a new life. الحب والوفاء والأمل في حياة جديدة.
8. Who is the antagonist (villain) in the novel? Why? من الخصم (الشرير) في الرواية؟ لماذا؟
Danglars, Fernand, and Villefort. They destroyed Edmond's life. دانجلار، فرناند، وفيلفور. دمروا حياة إدموند.
9. Why is The Count of Monte Cristo a tragedy? لماذا تُعتبر الكونت دي مونت كريستو مأساة؟
An innocent man suffers betrayal and injustice. رجل بريء عانى الخيانة والظلم.
10. What role does Abbé Faria play in Edmond's life? ما دور الأب فاريا في حياة إدموند؟
He teaches Edmond subjects, gives him wisdom, and tells him about the treasure. علم إدموند علومًا، وقدم له الحكمة، وأخبره عن الكنز.
11. Where is most of the novel set? أين تدور معظم أحداث الرواية؟
Mainly in France (Marseilles and Paris), but also in Italy and Monte Cristo. أساسًا في فرنسا (مارسيليا وباريس)، وأيضًا في إيطاليا وجزيرة مونت كريستو.
12. Why is the Château d'If important in the novel? لماذا يُعتبر سجن شاتو ديف مهمًا في الرواية؟
It is where Edmond suffers for years, learns from Faria, and begins transformation. هو المكان الذي عانى فيه إدموند لسنوات، وتعلم من الأب فاريا، وبدأ فيه رحلة تغييره.

Skills For the Full Mark

مهارات التعامل مع سؤال الكتابة

1. Writing Skills مع سؤال الكتابة

الحصة الأولى: الجانب البنائي الشكلي - Structural Part

1. Parts of Speech: Kinds and Examples الأجزاء الكلامية: الأنواع والأمثلة

1. **Noun** الاسم: - A word that identifies a person, a thing or an idea, quality, or state.
2. **Verb** الفعل: - A word that describes what a person or thing does or what happens.
3. **Adjective** الصفة: - A word that describes a noun: An *exciting* adventure / a *green* apple.
4. **Adverb** الظرف: - It gives information about a verb, adjective, or other adverb.
- Adverb of Manner (how): - He came *quietly*. - Adverb of Time: - I tell him *daily*.
- Adverb of Place: - I put it *there*. - Adverb of Degree (how much): - He is *slightly* tired.
5. **Pronoun** الضمير: - They are used in place of a noun that has already been mentioned.
- | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------|---|
| Subject pronouns | ضمائر الفاعل | I - He - She - It - We - You - They |
| Object pronouns | ضمائر المفعول | me - him - her - it - us - you - them |
| Possessive pronouns | ضمائر الملكية | mine - his - hers - ... - ours - yours - theirs |
| Reflexive pronouns | الضمائر منعكسة | myself - yourselves - ourselves - themselves .. etc. |
| Demonstrative pronouns | ضمائر الإشارة | This - That - These - Those |
| Indefinite pronouns | ضمائر غير محددة | someone/ somebody/ something / everything / no one / nobody .. etc. |
| Possessive adjectives | صفات الملكية | my - his - her - its - your - our - their |
6. **Preposition** حرف الجر: - A preposition is a word such as *after*, *in*, *to*, *on*, and *with*.
- They describe something's position, when it happens, or the way in which it is done.
7. **Conjunction (connective / linker / linking word)** الرباط: ->
- They join words and clauses: *for/ and/ or/ but/ yet/ although/ if/ unless / since* etc.
8. **Determiner** أداة التحديد: -> It introduces a noun, such as *a/an*, *the*, *every*, *this*, *those*, or *many*.
- An Article (*a/an*, *the*). - A Possessive (*my*, *your*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *our*, *their*).
- A Quantifier (*many/much/more/most/some*) - A Demonstrative (*this/that/these/those*)
9. **An interjection** لفظ التعجب: -> convey an emotion: surprise, disgust, joy, excitement, anger
- *ouch/ god/ oh/ alas/ No/ Indeed. Phew/Humph/Mmmm!* I am not trying that again.
10. **Prefixes and Suffixes** الألفاظ واللواحق: ->
- (prefix) مقطع في أول الكلمة (re) في (rewrite). - (suffix) مقطع في آخر الكلمة (able) في (movable).

2. Sentences, Clauses and Phrases

- A sentence contains a subject and a predicate. كل جملة بها مبتدا وخبر.
1. **Assertive or declarative Sentence** جملة خبرية توكيدية: It states a fact. - *The train is late.*
2. **Interrogative sentence** جملة استفهامية: It asks a question. - *Where is my pen?*
3. **Imperative sentence** جملة أمرية: A command, a request, or a wish. - *Go to your room.*
4. **Exclamatory sentence** جملة تعجبية: It expresses feelings. - *What a shame! - Boy, am I tired!*
5. **Conditional sentences** شرطية: It discusses factors and consequences. - *If you go, I will go.*

العبارات وأشباه الجمل Clauses and phrases

- A clause is a group of words which has a subject and a complete finite verb.
1. **Independent (Main) clause**: A complete thought that can stand on its own as a sentence.
- *Learning a new language is often frustrating.*

2. **Dependent (Subordinate) Clause:** An incomplete thought and is joined to an independent clause to become a sentence. - It usually begins with a word such as **although** or **while**.
 - *Although learning a new language is often frustrating*
- **Phrases:** A group of words which either does not have a subject or a finite verb.
 - *works hard. / The reason being their good design.*
- **A simple sentence** has only one independent clause. - *The bus stopped.*
- **A compound sentence** has two or more independent clauses. - *The bus stopped and we got out.*

3. Punctuation Marks علامات الترقيم

A. Use of capital letters استخدام الأحرف الكبيرة:

- Names of people: Adel - Ahmed - Elham - Eman - Ali - Alaa - Jana - Mariam.
- Continents, countries, capitals, cities, towns and regions: Africa - Egypt - Cairo.
- Seas, oceans, lakes, rivers, mountains and cliffs: The Red Sea - The Atlantic Ocean
- Nationalities / Languages: Egyptian - English - French. / Italian - Spanish - Chinese.
- The first letter of the first word of a sentence: They go to school. They go at 6 every day.
- The first letter of the first word of a quotation: She said; "Please open the door."
- The names of days, months and festivals: Saturday - January - April - May - Christmas
- The pronoun (I) is always capital: - Hatem and I visited our uncle yesterday.
- Titles of offices: President Sadat - King Hussien - Prince William - Princess Diana
- Abbreviation: Mr - Mrs - Ms - Dr - St - USA - UK - A.U.E - A.R.E. - TV - CD - OK
- Forms of addresses in letter: Dear Sir - Dear Miss - Dear Friend
- Titles: All words of the title except prepositions and articles: A Tale of Two Cities.
- Titles of books, newspapers, magazines, films, plays and series: - Al-Ahram - Titanic.
- Titles of heavenly books: The Quran - The Old Testament (The Bible) - The Torah.
- The word "God" and the pronoun that stands for it: We pray to God and please Him.
- Directions when referring to a certain area: We had 3 relatives visit from the South.

B. Use of commas (,) استخدام الفاصلة:

- To separate items: - Huda bought sugar, tea, oil and five loaves of bread.
- To separate clauses from the rest of the sentences: - Our teacher, Mr Ali, is helpful.
- To mark non-defining clauses: - The police officer, who arrived early, arrested the criminal.
- Before quotations: - Tamer said, "I have already tidied my room".
- Before a quotation which is a question but not after it:
 - Ali asked, "Where are you going?" - "Where are you going?" asked Ali.
- At the end of a direct sentence if the speaker is placed after it: - "I'm coming," dad said.
- Before the question tag: - Ahmed visits his uncle once a week, doesn't he?
- After (Yes / No / Well / Sure / Of course / Excuse me / Sorry): - Yes, this is important.
- Before and after (please): - Can you help me, please? - Please, come in.
- To separate items of a complete date: - December 5, 2003.
- To separate items of a complete location (address): - San Francisco, California
- Before and after the person we call: - Ali, come now. - You have to come now, Ali.
- To separate the two parts of a sentence starting with Gerund, P.P or To + Infinitive:
 - Having done his work, he went home. - Looking out of the window, I saw some birds.
- Before the second part of a sentence if it expresses contrast: - I'm tired, not bored.
- After adverbs that come at the beginning of a sentence: - Luckily, she was safe.
- To separate a list of similar words or adjectives: - Write clear, simple, accurate words.
- To separate the two parts of a sentence starting with a conjunction:
 - Before he left, he had finished his work. - While I was going to school, I saw an accident.

C. Use of full stop (.) : استخدام النقطة :

1. At the end of declarative, imperative and conditional sentences: - Don't make noise.
2. After abbreviation: - My grandson Ahmad was born in Jan. 2020.
3. In initials for personal names: - T. S. Eliot (Tomas Stearns Eliot) was a great poet.
4. In British English, full stops are placed outside the final quotation mark.
 - The general manager said, "This is a great day for the company".
 - The general manager said, "This is a great day for the company." (It is also correct)

D. Use of the question mark (?) : استخدام علامة الاستفهام :

1. At the end of a question: - Where did you go? / She plays tennis, doesn't she?
2. To show doubt: - Nader was the thief? - You can't do it?

E. Use of the exclamation mark (!) : استخدام علامة التعجب :

- After a command, an interjection, or what shows surprise or anger: - What a nice place!
- "Look out behind you!" she yelled. - I'm so excited to go to the park tomorrow!

F. Use of the quotation marks (double: " " / single: ' ') : استخدام علامات التنصيص :

1. To show that words are spoken: I said to Ali, "I will travel to London next week".
 - "I'm coming home late tonight," my father said.
2. To enclose titles of books, newspapers, magazines, films, plays and series:
 - "Al Akhbar" is a great newspaper. - I have read "Macbeth".
3. To mention a word or phrase in a sentence: - What does 'punctuation' mean?

G. Use of apostrophe (') : استخدام الفاصلة العليا :

1. For contraction (the missing letters): - It's hot today. - She isn't playing now.
2. For possessives: - Omar's book / Charles's phone / pupils' work / Ali and Mona's car.
3. For numbers: - 100's of years. 4. For counting letters: - There are two T's in "title".

H. Use of colon (:): استخدام النقطتين :**1. To introduce a list or quotation:**

- He needs the following: paints, brushes and a piece of cloth.
2. To express proportion: - The ratio of boys to girls in the group is 2:1.
3. To separate minutes from hours while telling the time: - What is the time? - It's 10:30.
4. Between sentences when the second sentence explains or justifies the first sentence:
 - Try to keep calm during the interview: this will cause a good impression.

I. Use of semi-colon (;) : استخدام الفاصلة المنقوطة :

1. To separate two parts of a sentence: - I spoke to Omar: he won't come tomorrow.
2. Between two independent clauses linked by a transitional expression (e.g., accordingly, consequently, for example, nevertheless, so, thus).
 - Heavy rain had continued to fall at the airport: consequently, all flights were canceled.

J. Use of hyphen (-): استخدام الشرطة داخل الكلمة :

1. To join two words together: - I'm looking for a web-pal.
2. To link prefixes to words: - It happened before the pre-enlightenment era.
3. To join two or more words into a compound term. Do not separate words with spaces.
 - My eight-year-old boy loves reading. - Do you have sugar-free cookies?
4. Don't use a hyphen if the compound adjective follows the noun it describes:
 - English is widely spoken. - We use a widely-spoken language.

K. Use of dash (-): استخدام الشرطة داخل الجملة :**- To separate parts of sentences:**

- The car - the one with the broken window - was parked outside.

1. Slash (/) الشرحة المائلة:

1. A slash is often used to indicate "or": (أو) تستخدم بمعنى: Dear Sir/Madam (or)
2. Use a slash for fractions: مع الكسور الحصائية: $1/2$ (one half) - $2/3$ (two thirds)
3. To indicate "per" in measurements of speed, prices: لبيان (لكل) في المقاييس: - 100 km/h
4. Use it in dates to separate day, month and year: تستخدم في التواريخ: Expires end 10/15.

M. The percentage mark (%):

- We use it when stating facts and statistics.

Test Yourself on the structural Part تمارين الحصة الأولى

1. A full stop can't be used (Longman)
 - a. before the person you are speaking to
 - b. at the end of a statement
 - c. at the end of imperative sentences
 - d. at the end of reported questions
2. A colon (:) can be used to (Longman)
 - a. end a sentence
 - b. show explanation
 - c. express a result
 - d. express exclamation
3. To make the following sentence correctly punctuated, (Longman)

"I d have visited you if I had known you were ill," said Amir.

 - a. add a comma before if
 - b. add an apostrophe between I and d
 - c. remove the comma after ill
 - d. insert the quotations marks after Amir and not before said
4. Which of the following is punctuated correctly? (Longman)
 - a. Did you know that, Hatim
 - b. Did you know that Hatim?
 - c. Did you know that Hatim,?
 - d. Did you know that, Hatim?
5. Which of the following is punctuated correctly? (Longman)
 - a. Amani said "What a wonderful surprise. It's nice to see you here, Adel."
 - b. Amani said, "what a wonderful surprise! It's nice to see you here, Adel.
 - c. Amani said, "What a wonderful surprise! It's nice to see you here, Adel."
 - d. Amani said, "What a wonderful surprise Its nice to see you here, Adel.
6. Which of the following sentences is punctuated correctly? (Longman)
 - a. "He's coming late," my father said.
 - b. "He's coming late, my father said.
 - c. "He's coming late" my father said.
 - d. "He s coming late," my father said.
7. "Mum bought Ali a mobile." "Ali" is considered to be a/an
 - a. direct object
 - b. direct subject
 - c. indirect object
 - d. indirect subject
8. "The students are slowly gaining in confidence." "Slowly" is an adverb of
 - a. manner
 - b. degree
 - c. place
 - d. time
9. "Take your coat and give me mine." "Mine" is a/an pronoun.
 - a. reflexive
 - b. relative
 - c. possessive
 - d. interrogative
10. "I found the book nowhere." "Nowhere" is a/an adverb.
 - a. indefinite
 - b. object
 - c. reflexive
 - d. manner
11. You won't move that stone, however strong you are. "However" here is a/an
 - a. conjunction
 - b. adverb
 - c. pronoun
 - d. determiner
12. "Every man has his own habit." "His" is a/an
 - a. interjection
 - b. determiner
 - c. quantifier
 - d. demonstrative
13. The word "this" in "This is not yours." is a/an
 - a. demonstrative
 - b. adverb
 - c. verb
 - d. adjective
14. The syllable "-ment" in the word "investment" is called a/an
 - a. interjection
 - b. prefix
 - c. suffix
 - d. exclamation
15. "Let go of me!" is a/an sentence.
 - a. explanatory
 - b. interrogative
 - c. declarative
 - d. imperative
16. Apostrophes indicate
 - a. possession
 - b. introduction
 - c. completion
 - d. conclusion
17. are used to express proportions.
 - a. Colons
 - b. Hyphens
 - c. Semicolons
 - d. Commas

18. Which is a compound sentence?

- a. Mona got up late.
c. I love playing with my friends.

b. Ahmed waited for the bus.

d. I love tennis but my sister loves football.

19. Which sentence is correct?

- a. There are two ds' in the word "dad"
c. There are two d's in the word "dad"
- b. There are two ds in the word "dad"
d. There are two dd's in the word "dad"

20. Which of the following sentences is correctly punctuated?

- a. What a brave woman,
c. What a brave woman!
- b. What a brave woman:
d. What a brave woman;

Functional Part - (الغرضي) الحصة الثانية: الجانب الوظيفي

1. Items and Functions عناصر ووظائف

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار	always / usually / never / often / sometimes / regularly / still
Time and order روابط الترتيب الزمني	at first / firstly / in the first place / to begin with / second /
Sequence of ideas تتابع الأفكار	secondly / next / eventually / finally / in the end / lastly
Time conjunctions الروابط الزمنية	when / after / before / the moment / while / once / as soon as / by the time / during / as / just as / till / until / afterwards / then / next / it was only when / no sooner ... than / hardly .. when / scarcely when / on / since / ever since / since then.
Contrast روابط التناقض	but / despite / in spite of / even so / however / in contrast / nevertheless / on the contrary / on the other hand / still / whereas / yet / whatever
Comparison and similarity روابط المقارنة والتشبيه	In comparison / in the same way / similarly / likewise / in contrast / on the other hand
Condition روابط الشرط	if / only if / provided / as long as / in case / unless / but for / without / suppose / imagine
Cause or reason روابط السبب	because / as / since / for / due to / owing to / thanks to / because of / being / having / now that / inasmuch as
Result or effect روابط النتيجة والتأثير	accordingly / as a result / consequently / for this reason / in consequence / hence / owing to this / so / therefore / thus / that's why
Addition روابط الإضافة	apart from this / as well as / besides / furthermore / in addition / moreover / not only ... but also / too / and so / and neither / either / both and / neither nor
Purpose روابط الغرض	to / in order to / so as to / so that / in the hope that / lest / for fear that
Warning روابط التحذير	or / else / or else / otherwise
Partitives أدوات التجزئة	a piece of / a bit of / a cup / a bag / a glass / a pair / a packet..
Tag questions الأسئلة المذيبة - تهدف إلى التأكيد من معلومة.	?ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد منفي، جملة مثبتة ?ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد مثبت، جملة منفية
Echo Questions أسئلة الصدى - تهدف إلى تبيين الدهشة والمفاجأة	?ضمير فاعل / فاعل + فعل مساعد - جملة مثيرة للدهشة أو الاهتمام - - He ate a dog. - Did he?
Slang الكلمات العامية	LOL: laugh out loud / OMG: Oh my God

2. Contents of Essays مكونات المقال

- An essay is a group of paragraphs written about a single topic and a central main idea.

1. Introduction المقدمة

- It explains the topic with general ideas.

تشرح الموضوع بأفكار عامة.

- An introduction paragraph contains a topic sentence (the first in the paragraph) and a thesis statement (it explains what the essay is about). Sometimes it contains a hook.

- تحتوي على جملة الموضوع (الجملة الأولى بالفقرة)، وجملة رئيسية (تشرح هدف المقال)، أحياناً تحتوي جملة جاذبة للانتباه.

- A thesis statement الجملة الرئيسية:

- It states what will be explained in the essay.

تنص على ما سيتم شرحه في المقال.

- It should be put in the introduction and the conclusion.

يجب أن توضع في المقدمة والخاتمة.

مسأى نيوسبريند

- It is the most **general** sentence in an essay. هي الجملة الأكثر عمومية في المقال.
- It shouldn't be an **announcement** إعلان, **incomplete** غير كاملة, **narrow** or **too broad** واسعة جدا.
- It should have **one** sentence. ينبغي أن تحتوي على جملة واحدة.

- A hook الجملّة الجاذبة للانتباه

- It is an opening a sentence that captures the reader's attention. It is the first component of an essay introduction. جملة افتتاحية تجذب انتباه القارئ وهي المكون الأول لمقدمة المقال.

2. The body (bulk) جسم المقال

1. These the paragraphs explain and support the **thesis statement** and come between the **introduction** and the **conclusion**. فقرات تشرح وتدعم الجملة الرئيسية وتأتي بين المقدمة والخاتمة.
2. Each body paragraph begins with a **topic sentence** which all the information in that paragraph will be clearly and logically related to. It obviously relates to **the thesis**. تبدأ كل فقرة بجملة موضوع بها جميع المعلومات الواردة في الفقرة، مرتبطة بشكل واضح ومنطقي بها، كما أنها ذاتها تتعلق بالجملة الرئيسية بوضوح.
3. **Support** comes in the form of examples (theories/studies/opinions) relevant to your thesis statement and the scope. يمكن أن يأتي الدعم في شكل أمثلة (نظريات / دراسات / آراء) ذات الصلة بالفكرة الرئيسية والتطبيقات.

3. The conclusion الخاتمة

1. Don't introduce new ideas in a conclusion. لا تقدم أفكارًا جديدة في الخاتمة.
A conclusion restates or gives further commentary on ideas discussed in the essay. الخاتمة تعيد فقط أو تعطي مزيدًا من التعليقات على الأفكار التي تمت مناقشتها في المقالة.
2. It leaves the reader with your final thoughts on a topic. تترك للقارئ الأفكار النهائية حول الموضوع.

3. Kinds (Types) of Essays أنواع المقالات

1. **Narrative Essay (Telling a story)** المقال الروائي: It tells a story about a **real-life experience**.
2. **Descriptive Essay** المقال الوصفي: It **describes** a **person, place, object, or even memory**.
3. **Expository Essay** المقال التفسيري: It **explains** a **topic, using facts, statistics, and examples**.
4. **Persuasive Essay** المقال الإقناعي: It **convinces** the reader to accept the writer's view.
5. **Literary analysis essay** مقال التحليل الأدبي: It presents a close reading of a work of literature.
6. **Argumentative essays** المقالات الجدلية: It **convinces** the reader of your thesis using evidence.
7. **Compare and contrast essay** مقال مقارنة وتباين: It points out the similarities and differences.
8. **Cause and effect essay** مقال السبب والنتيجة: It shows the relationship between things.
9. **Process (How-to) Essay** مقال شرح الصليبات: It outlines making or doing something.

Test Yourself on the functional Part الثانية الحصة

1. (Pollution has a serious effect on our health. However, a lot of people are still ignorant of the importance of keeping the environment clean.) This shows in ideas.
a. addition b. contrast c. possibility d. reason
2. Which of these transitions is used to show the result of something?
a. Furthermore b. Consequently c. In addition d. Due to
3. When you want to introduce an opposite opinion when you are writing you can say
a. In the other way b. On the other hand c. By the other hand d. On one side
4. I like reading short stories. Moreover, I am fond of writing poetry. This shows
a. reason b. cause c. addition d. contrast
5. In a hook sentence, you need to
a. sum up your essay by revisiting information. b. grab the reader's attention to read the essay.
c. support, explain, illustr: , or provide evidence for the idea expressed in the topic sentence.
d. analyze two points of view by either comparing them, contrasting them, or both.
6. Which expressions introduce a sequence of ideas in an essay?
a. In conclusion, Lastly, In summary b. On the one hand, On the other hand
c. However, In contrast, Nevertheless d. Firstly, Secondly, Finally

7. Which expressions can you not use to start your final paragraph in an essay?
a. To sum up b. In conclusion c. To conclude d. Firstly (Longman)
8. You summarise the content of your essay when you
a. develop the main idea. b. write the elements of your essay in detail.
c. make the end open. d. write the conclusion of your essay. (Longman)
9. Your essay introduction should
a. let the reader miss the topic. b. include a hook to catch the reader's attention.
c. refer to the end. d. ask the reader for help. (Longman)
10. When you conclude your essay, you should
a. review your supporting ideas. b. ask the reader to choose the end.
c. exclude your supporting ideas. d. refer to the sentence of introduction. (Longman)
11. A narrative essay is the one that
a. provides a clear, focused explanation of a topic. b. presents an extended evidence-based argument.
c. tells a story about a personal experience or an imaginative one.
d. provides a detailed sensory description of something. (Longman)
12. "On the one hand, I'd like a job that pays more, but on the other hand, I enjoy the work I'm doing at the moment." The underlined expressions show (LM)
a. similarity between two different facts b. comparing two different facts
c. addition d. a decision to leave the current job
13. A/An essay provides a detailed sensory description of something. (LM)
a. narrative b. descriptive c. argumentative d. expository
14. A/An is another name for the attention-grabber sentence.
a. body b. closing c. introduction d. hook (Longman)
15. Which of the following doesn't express contrast?
a. He contacts us although he is busy. b. He is busy, so he can't contact us.
c. He is busy, but he contacts us. d. Despite being busy, he contacts us. (Longman)
16. Which of the following can't be used to show contrast?
a. because b. although c. ins spite of d. despite (Longman)
17. A terrible accident happened in Banha, Which completion shows result? (LM)
a. due to the rash driver. b. although the driver was careful.
c. so some people were sent to hospital. d. but no one died. (Longman)
18. A/An essay depends on opinions and emotions.
a. argumentative b. narrative c. persuasive d. descriptive (Longman)
19. Which of the following is used when ending an essay?
a. In conclusion b. To start with c. First of all d. Moreover (Longman)
20. Which of the following transitions shows cause?
a. however b. firstly c. therefore d. due to (Longman)

أجزاء الفقرة الثلاثة: الجانب التحليلي (المعلوماتي) - Analytical and informational part

1. Hints on Paragraphs ملاحظات حول كتابة الفقرة

أجزاء الفقرة الثلاثة The Three Parts of a Paragraph

1. The Topic Sentence الجملة الموضوعية:

عادة ما تكون الجملة الأولى في الفقرة. لا ينبغي أن تتضمن تفاصيل، بل يجب أن تقدم الفكرة الرئيسية التي ستدعمها بقية فقرتك.

2. The Supporting Sentences الجمل الداعمة:

جمل تفصيلية داعمة تدعم الفكرة الرئيسية في الجملة الافتتاحية (الموضوعية).

The Transition Sentence الجملة الانتقالية relate the ideas in the current paragraph to what is coming in the next. - Examples: "next," "however," "first," "second," and "in addition".

3. The concluding Sentence الجملة الختامية:

تشبه جملة الموضوع، تعد إقرار الفكرة الرئيسية.

2. Hints on Emails ملاحظات حول كتابة البريد الإلكتروني

Recipient	المستلم	To: user name + @ + domain name.
Sender	المرسل	From: user name + @ + domain name.
Subject line	شريط العنوان	Subject / About:.....
Greeting / Salutation	التحية / الفاتحة	Dear, sir /Ms / Nada / Mohamed
Body	الموضوع	It consists of as many paragraphs as ideas you are asked to discuss.
Closing	الخاتمة	I look forward to hearing from you soon.
Signature / Sign off	التوقيع	Best Wishes, Yours,

البريد الإلكتروني غير الرسمي informal email والبريد الإلكتروني الرسمي formal email

	Formal	Informal
To	- a customer / a manager / a company. - a job application / a complaint to a shop.	- a colleague / a friend / a relative. - an invitation to a friend at work.
Greetings (salutation)	Dear Sir/Madam/ professor/ Mr/Ms	Hi/ Hey / Hello / Dear
Reason for writing	- for further information about - regarding the meeting - with regard to the complaint ...	- Just a quick question about ... - I was wondering if ... - I wanted to let you know that
Making a request	- Could you please let me know if .. - I would appreciate it if you could	- Would you mind? - Can you call me as soon as possible?
Ending	Yours sincerely (faithfully), / Kind regards, / Best wishes, / Thank you	Thanks, / Take care, / Love, / Catch up soon, / See (talk to) you soon, / Bye, / Cheers,
Language	Avoid using abbreviations, contractions, slang, emoticons.	- Contractions: It's great, I'm, you'll have, etc. - Phrasal verbs: put you up, check out. - Colloquial language: How are you doing? - Writing as we think: Oh, By the way, Anyway,
Signature	Use your first and last name.	You could simply skip a sign off altogether.
	- An attachment is something you send with your email.	المرافق شئ ترسله مع بريدك الإلكتروني.
	- Proofreading: Before you hit "send," review your email for spelling, grammar, and punctuation.	
	- Avoid clichés	تجنب العبارات المبتذلة

3. Hints on CV (Curriculum Vitae) (resume) ملاحظات حول كتابة بيان السيرة الذاتية

Contact Information (Contact Details)

Home address: Street, city, country.

Phone: Phone number

E-mail: Email address

DOB: Day / month / year

Nationality:

Your personal statement تكتب عن مهاراتك وسبب تقدمك للوظيفة وأهدافك المستقبلية خلالها.

EDUCATION and academic achievements هنا تكتب مراحل تعليمك وإنجازاتك الأكاديمية بها

WORK EXPERIENCE and duties هنا تكتب الوظائف التي شغلتها من قبل ومهامك خلالها

SKILLS: هنا تكتب المهارات التي تتمتع بها وهي تنقسم إلى

1. مهارات فنية (hard / technical):

- مهارات تتعلق بالوظيفة كاللغات التي تتقنها وأمتلاكك لرخصة قيادة ومهارات الحاسوب والبرمجة.

2. مهارات شخصية (soft / personal / common):

- مهارات سلوكية تخص القيادة والعمل الجماعي والتعامل مع الآخر والتواصل معه.

INTERESTS AND HOBBIES:

هنا تكتب عن هواياتك واهتماماتك

تمارين الحصة الثالثة Test Yourself on the informational Part

1. What can you use when writing an email to a friend?
a. contractions b. full forms c. passive voice d. direct speech
2. Which option is not a good way to finish an email to a close friend?
a. See you soon b. Goodbye c. All the best d. Yours sincerely
3. When starting an email to a friend, it is a good idea to
a. say that you will write to them soon. b. ask about their school friends.
c. give the necessary information. d. ask how they are and tell them something about you.
4. Which of the following can be used in a formal email? (Longman)
a. Bye b. Dear Friend c. Yours sincerely d. Love from
5. In an informal email, you can conclude with (Longman)
a. Bye b. See you later c. A and B d. Yours sincerely
6. What mustn't be included in a CV? (Longman)
a. Contact Information. b. Work Experience. c. Education and skills. d. Personal information.
7. The following sentence "In the end, the value of a non-smoking nation is not in pounds. The good health of the people is the true value for us all." is used as
a. a concluding sentence b. a topic sentence c. an example sentence d. a detail sentence
8. Which of the following is sent with an e-mail?
a. An article b. An attachment c. A letter. d. An SMS.
9. A/An shows the beginning of a paragraph.
a. dash b. period c. indent d. capital letter
10. A/An is a digital message.
a. paragraph b. letter c. essay d. email
11. A header is part of an email that contains the address of the
a. article b. sender c. recipient d. b & c
12. What should you do before you click the "send" button?
a. write one sentence b. reread the email c. a & b d. use an envelope
13. In an email, the line is where you type what the email is about.
a. to b. subject c. attachment d. from
14. The final sentence of a paragraph is called the sentence.
a. first b. closing c. topic d. introductory
15. Which of these can't be used in a formal email?
a. Unity b. Being decent c. Formal words d. Slang
16. When you write an essay or paragraph, you start with a/an sentence. (تجريبي - ٢٠٢١)
a. closing b. introductory c. conclusion d. ending
17. Messaging language doesn't require rules of writing. (Longman)
a. formal b. informal c. former d. comfortable
18. A part from your contact details, the most important part of your CV is your
a. date of birth b. hobbies c. achievements d. contacts

الحصة الرابعة: الجانب التطبيقي (المهاري) - The Practical Part

١ في مقال بعنوان (عن) ماذا تتواجد الفقرة التالية؟ This could be a part of an essay about

- 1 "Although we are surrounded by these mass-produced devices, this does not mean that their use should be implemented in the future." This can be part of an essay about
a. technology b. equality c. mobile phones d. films
- 2 "Some employees are often overworked and are clearly heading for burnout. Despite this, they carry on as they are aware of the need to increase their productivity". This could be part of an article about the problem of (WB)
a. mental health and well-being. b. time management of certain employees.
c. alternative ways of working. d. the need for companies to increase productivity.

2. The following is part of a/an essay. أي نوع من المقالات تكون به الفقرة التالية؟

3. The following is part of a/an essay. (Longman)
 Holidays are a time for us to recharge our batteries and spend quality time with family and friends. The previous holiday was not perfect. As usual, we drove to Sharm El-Shiekh in our car. We heard strange noises in our car's engine on the road, and it suddenly broke down.
 a. narrative b. argumentative c. persuasive d. descriptive

4. أي من الجمل التالية يصلح كجزء من (جسم) مقال (من نوع) عن؟
 Which of the following is part of a / an essay on "....."?

4. Which of the following is part of an essay about *the changes you have experienced in your life*? (Longman)
 a. For some people, changing career direction could be a risk, so they prefer sticking to one career throughout their lives
 b. Lack of work experience could be a major obstacle when applying for a new job.
 c. Personally, I have a lot of experience due to the various situations I have been through in life.
 d. In conclusion, personal skills are highly recommended to occupy certain posts.

5. أي جملة تجوز افتتاحية (جملة موضوعية) لهذه الفقرة : Topic Sentence / Introductory sentence

- Which of the following sentences can be used to start an essay on?
 - Choose (Select) the best topic sentence for the following paragraph.
 5. Which sentence can be used to start an essay on over-population? (WB)
 a. It is crystal clear that overpopulation is one of the biggest challenges we need to face.
 c. However, still some people insist on having big families.
 b. In conclusion, facing overpopulation is the responsibility of the government as well as individuals.
 d. In addition, it is not easy to provide jobs for the increasing numbers of graduates.

6. أي جملة تصلح أو لا تصلح لإنهاء موضوع : Concluding Sentence

6. Which sentence could end an essay on "The importance of cultural heritage"? (LM)
 a. First of all, cultural heritage can create a sense of individual and collective belonging, which helps to maintain social and territorial cohesion.
 b. Moreover, cultural heritage can be a wider window through which we make proper propaganda about our ancient civilisation in particular.
 c. In short, being multicultural can be beneficial when travelling abroad or dealing with people from other nations.
 d. To sum up, cultural heritage can create a sense of individual and collective belonging, which helps to maintain social and territorial cohesion.

7. أسئلة الغرض من الجملة: - هل هي تعبر عن سبب / نتيجة / غرض / ندم / ترتيب / أمنية / تناقض

7. Furthermore, it analyses and observes our surroundings in order to deliver information in the form of news. In this sentence, "Furthermore" shows (LM)
 a. addition b. contrast c. cause d. result
 8. We use "Consequently" in a paragraph or an essay to (Longman)
 a. introduce the result of something b. give a reason for something
 c. give contrasting information d. introduce a summary of the main points
 9. We use "However" in a paragraph or an essay to express (Longman)
 a. summary b. contrast c. addition d. introduction
 10. Which of the following is used to reflect contrast? (Longman)
 a. Ahmad doesn't read stories as he has no free time. b. In addition to reading, I like swimming.
 c. While Ahmad likes reading, I prefer swimming. d. Amir, as well as Ahmad, likes reading.

٧. أسئلة الغرض من تركيب لغوية معينة (قاعدة لغوية): تحتاج إلى معرفة جيدة بالقواعد ونقاطها الصعبة.

11. I really must buy my mother a present on her birthday party. This shows (LM)
 a. lack of necessity b. regret c. ability d. inner feeling
12. You could do this task with your friend if you wish. This shows (LM)
 a. ability b. suggestion c. blame d. refusal
13. Which of the following doesn't express regret? (LM)
 a. I should have revised well for the exam. b. I'm sorry for not revising well for the exam.
 c. I should revise for the next exam. d. I regret not revising for the exam.
14. Which of the following shows possibility? (LM)
 a. I must have taken an earlier train. b. I should have taken an earlier train.
 c. I could have taken an earlier train. d. I needn't have taken an earlier train.

٨. أسئلة اختيار أفضل العناوين (Titles / Headings).

15. Select the best title for the following paragraph: (Some people are against experimenting with genetic engineering. They believe that changing the way things happen naturally poses many risks. Genetic engineering scientists are working against nature, which is dangerous, and we have no idea what effect it will have on the natural order of things. Also, they believe that generic science is frightening, especially when it concerns human life and its religious values. Imagine if scientists find a way to create human beings in a completely artificial way.)
 a. Genetic engineering and animals b. Genetic engineering and values
 c. Values for genetic engineering d. Why religions support genetic engineering

٩. أسئلة الفكرة الرئيسية أو الفكرة العامة أو الموضوع العام

16. We live in a polluted environment. We are still suffering from air, water and noise pollution. This shows (Longman)
 a. a comparison of all forms of pollution. b. the causes of all forms of pollution.
 c. a focus on the problem of pollution and its forms. d. how to solve the problem of pollution.

١٠. أسئلة الجمل الداعمة أو التفاصيل الداعمة (Supporting details).

17. "Global warming is definitely the single greatest environmental challenge that the planet earth is facing at present.) What is the most appropriate supporting sentence for this?
 a. Human beings are addicted to burning fossil fuels.
 b. It is essential to understand the gravity of the situation.
 c. Due to this rise in temperature, the oceans are rising and the coral reefs are dying.
 d. Hurricane is enough to prove this point.
18. Select the supporting detail that doesn't fit. **Topic Sentence:** Reading class is interesting.
 a. We learn interesting facts from the things we read.
 b. Our teacher gives us new ways to look at things. c. It's my least favorite class.
 d. Sometimes we do dramatic readings of the text that are super engaging.

١١. أسئلة متنوعة (بحق لواضع الامتحان أن يختبر معارفك العامة: القواعد والكلمات والوظائف اللغوية).

19. "I'm busy, said the sea." This sentence has a personification and that kind of sentence could be seen in a (ش.ع.أبدي - ٢٠٢١)
 a. letter b. resume c. message d. poem
20. "Let's go to the club," This sentence is a kind of (ش.ع.أبدي - ٢٠٢١)
 a. offer b. request c. suggestion d. order
21. Which of the following is correctly structured? (تجريبي - ٢٠٢١)
 a. One's parents know what best for one. b. One's parents know what best for him.
 c. One's parents know what is best for one. d. One's parents know what is best for him.
22. We should look up to old people. The phrasal verb "look up to" means (LM)
 a. ignore b. help c. detest d. respect

23. Which of the following sentences is not correct? (حخص مصر)
 a. What do you enjoy most about your holiday? b. What do you like most about your holiday?
 c. What most do you like about your holiday? d. What do you most enjoy about your holiday?
24. One of the social instructions is
 a. Keep distance to avoid infection. b. Write your work experience.
 c. Write your personal and hard skills. d. Leave your contact information.
25. We should use renewable sources of energy to keep the environment clean. The prefix that gives the opposite meaning of **renewable** is (Longman)
 a. un b. dis c. non d. im
26. "Give me twenty pounds now!" This is an example of (حخص مصر)
 a. interrogative sentence b. imperative sentence
 c. declarative sentence d. none of the above
27. Which of the following is not correct? (حخص مصر)
 a. I met someone nice yesterday b. I met nice someone yesterday
 c. I met someone who was nice yesterday d. I met someone that was nice yesterday
28. Which sentence is not correct? (حخص مصر)
 a. Each one of those potatoes is rotten. b. Every one of those potatoes is rotten.
 c. Everyone of those potatoes is rotten. d. All these potatoes are rotten.

2. Comprehension Skills مهارات التعامل مع قطعة الفهم

يمكنك قراءة الأسئلة قبل القطعة حتى تعرف الفكرة الرئيسية (the main idea) وترتكز خلال القراءة. عند قراءة القطعة، اهتم بفهم سياق الجملة أكثر من اهتمامك بترجمتها حرفياً، هذا ليس سؤال ترجمة. تابع المثال:

Examples include a **tiger's stripes**, **battledress** of a **soldier** and a **butterfly** camouflaging as a leaf.

لفهم من السياق أن هناك أمثلة لتفسير موضوع القطعة. تشمل تلك الأمثلة التمر والجندي والفراشة بغض النظر عن معرفة مدى (كيفية أو سبب) تمتثلها لهذا الموضوع. وربما لم تكن لم تدرك بعد الفكرة الرئيسية للموضوع.

خمن معنى الكلمات الصعبة عند القراءة من السياق العام للجملة أو الفقرة التي تتواجد فيها أو القطعة ككل.

(Children cry when their parents **tell them off** or when they are in trouble, adults cry when they are upset or have watched a sad film.)

- The underlined words "tell them off" mean "..... them".
 a. reward b. award c. praise d. scold

- يترجم الجملة داخل القطعة والتركيز في السياق (المعنى العام للجملة) مستجد أن معنى هذا التعبير (سلبى وليس ايجابى).
 - المعانى الموضحة في الاختيارات (ثلاثة ايجابية وواحد سلبى) - استبعد عن معالى (يكافى) reward / يمنح جائزة (award / يمدح) (praise). - سئخار (scold) التي تعنى (يؤبخ).

أسئلة التخمين Guessing Questions

- The **synonym** (meaning) / **antonym** (opposite) of "....." is
- From the text, find the expression that means "....."
- What does the underlined word **the word in bold** (...) refer to / indicate / show?
- Pick out (Detect) (Find) words in the passage which mean
- The word "....." is similar (close/closest) in meaning to/may be replaced by

انتبه للأسئلة التي تسأل عن مدة أو عدد أو رقم لأنها في الغالب تكون خادعة.

Twenty eyes looked up at him annoyed by this unaccustomed disturbance. Rami felt himself go red as he picked up his book, which didn't seem to have been damaged by the fall.

- About how many people were there in the library?

a. five b. ten c. forty d. twenty

- قال الكاتب (عشرون عيناً) أي عينان لكل شخص. - هنا تكون الإجابة هي عشرة أشخاص (ten people).

٥. انتبه إلى أسئلة المراجع السياقية (Contextual Reference).

- سؤال عن الكلمة أو العبارة التي تعود عليها كلمة معينة أو ضمير معين، اقرأ الفقرة التي جاء بها الضمير (من بدايتها إلى نهايتها) لتستطيع تحديد الكلمة أو العبارة التي يعود عليها هذا الضمير.

- The underlined word "....." in the second paragraph refers to

A computer, like any other machine, is used because it does certain jobs better and more efficiently than humans.

- قد يعود الضمير على فكرة كاملة.

- Scientists spend a lot of time thinking of theories and experiments; this makes it hard to balance between work life and personal life. - What does "this" refer to?

The answer: Scientists' spending a lot of time thinking of theories and experiments.

٦. استخراج الفكرة الرئيسية للموضوع (main idea) أو ثيمة الموضوع (theme).

- This text talks about / - Which topic is the passage primarily concerned with?

- The theme / main (central) (general) idea / gist / principal topic of the passage is ...

- غالبا تكون الفكرة الرئيسية هي ما يعود إليه الكاتب ويكرره بين حين وحين.
- يكون هناك جمل مدعمة (فرعية) تدعم الفكرة الرئيسية وعادة ما تكون أمثلة لشئ أو شروحات. - تابع المثال:

Ahmed loves fruit. He eats fruit every day. He especially loves apples and oranges. He has never tasted fruit he doesn't like.

٧. معرفة الموضوع الرئيسي للقطعة (main topic). - غالبا هو الكلمة المفتاحية التي يدور حولها الموضوع.

Happiness means different things to different people. Some people believe that if they have much money, they will be happy. Others believe that money is not the only happiness.

٨. سؤال افضل عنوان للقطعة.

- The best (most suitable / appropriate / convenient) title for the passage is

٩. سؤال اختيار عبارة أو عبارتين لتلخيص فقرة أو القطعة.

- The title that best summarizes this paragraph is

- ضع خط تحت الأفكار الرئيسية ثم قرّن بينهم وما هو موجود بالاختيارات، اختر ما يعبر عنه بشكل عام.

١٠. الأسئلة الضمنية: الاستنباط أو الاستدلال أو الاستنتاج أو الاستقراء.

١. تتطلب تحليلا يتجاوز سياق القطعة، يوجد موقف خاص في القطعة، ستحلل هذا الموقف وتجد الموقف المماثل من اختيارات الإجابة. يجب أن تذهب إلى نقاط أكثر عمقا، قرّن بين ما تستنتجه والاختيارات المتاحة.

- Which of the following excerpts best captures the overall theme of the passage?

- Which statement about the narrator's attitude toward is supported by the passage?

- The passage can be a part of / The text may be taken out of

- It can be inferred from the passage that

١١. أسئلة الغرض من كتابة فقرة أو القطعة كلها (the purpose).

- What's the writer's purpose (focus) in writing this passage / text?

- The main concern of the passage is to

١٢. أسئلة نغمة القطعة أو نغمة مؤلفها (the tone).

- What is the author's tone in the passage? - What is the mood of the passage?

- نغمة أو لهجة القطعة المقصود بها عاطفة أو موقف الكاتب تجاه موضوع القطعة أو الرسالة التي يريد توصيلها.

sentimental	عاطفية	tolerant	متسامحة	bitter	مريرة
optimistic	متفائلة	humorous	مضحكة / ساخرة	objective	موضوعية
ambivalent	متناقضة المشاعر	critical	نقدية	subjective	منحازة / متحيزة

١٣. أسئلة أسلوب أو طريقة الكتابة (approach and style).

- وصفي (descriptive)، توضيحي (illustrative)، جنلي (argumentative) أو تحليلي (analytical).

- The writer's approach (style) of writing in the given passage can be termed

١٤. الأسئلة البنائية: - أسئلة تحديد العلاقة بين الأجزاء المختلفة للقطعة.

- ستساعدك معرفة الكلمات الانتقالية التي تبين السبب / التناقض / الإضافة / الغرض إلخ.

- One function of the third paragraph of this passage is to

Test Yourself on Comprehensions

1. Read the passage and then answer the questions:

During the 17th and 18th centuries, almost nothing was written about the contribution of women during the colonial **استعمارية** period and the early history of the newly formed United States. Lacking the right to vote **حق التصويت** and absent from seats of power, women weren't considered an important force in history. Anne Bradstreet wrote significant poetry in the 17th century, Mercy Otis Warren produced the best contemporary **معاصر** history of the American Revolution, and Abigail Adams penned important letters showing she exercised great political influence over her husband, John, the second President of the US. But little or no notice was taken of these contributions. During these centuries, women were invisible in history books.

Throughout the 19th century, this lack of visibility continued, despite the efforts of female authors writing about women. These writers, like most of their male counterparts **نظرائهن** **النكور**, were amateur historians. Their writings were celebratory **احتفالية** in nature, and **they** were uncritical in their selection and use of sources.

During the 19th century, however, certain feminists **مناصرون لحقوق المرأة** showed a keen sense of history by keeping records of activities in which women were **engaged**. National, regional and local women's organizations compiled **يجمع** accounts of their doings. Personal correspondence, newspaper clippings, and souvenirs were stored. These sources form the core of the two greatest collections of women's history in the US. Such sources have provided valuable materials for later generations of historians.

Most of the writing about women conformed to the "great women" theory of history, just as much of mainstream **سائد** American history concentrated on "great men". To demonstrate that women made great contributions to American life, female authors singled out women leaders and wrote biographies, important women produced their autobiographies. Most of these leaders were involved in public life as reformers **إصلاحيين**, activists, or authors, and were not representative at all of the great mass of ordinary women. The lives of ordinary people continued, to be untold in the American histories being published.

- What does the passage mainly discuss?
 - The keen sense of history shown by American women.
 - The "great women" approach to History used by American historians.
 - The place of American women in written histories.
 - The role of literature in early American histories.
- The word "**contemporary**" means that the history was
 - faultfinding
 - informative
 - written at that time
 - thoughtful
- The word "**celebratory**" means that the writings referred to were
 - religious
 - serious
 - full of praise
 - related to parties
- In the first paragraph, Bradstreet, Warren, and Adams are mentioned to show that
 - a woman's status was changed by marriage.
 - only 3 women could publish their writing.
 - female poetry was more accepted than other writings.
 - even the contributions of outstanding women were ignored.
- The word "**they**" refers to
 - counterparts
 - sources
 - authors
 - efforts
- In the 2nd paragraph, what weakness in 19th-century histories does the author point out?
 - They left out discussion of the influence on money on politics.
 - They were printed on poor quality paper.
 - They put too much emphasis on daily activities.
 - The sources of the information they were based on were not necessarily accurate.
- What use was made of the 19th century women's history materials?
 - They became source for historians
 - They hindered historians' efforts
 - They proved historians were right
 - They helped historians become generations
- The word "**engaged**" is close in meaning to the word
 - activated
 - married
 - involved
 - extracted

2. Read the passage and then answer the questions:

For a century and a half the piano has been one of the most popular solo instruments آلات فردية for Western music. Unlike string وترى and wind نفخ instrument, the piano is completely self-sufficient, as it can play both the melody لحن and its accompanying harmony نغم at the same time. For this reason, it became the favorite household منزلي instrument of the 19th century.

The ancestry أصل of the piano can be traced to the early keyboard instruments of the 15th and 16th centuries – the spinet, the dulcimer and the virginal. In the 17th century the organ, the clavichord and the harpsichord became the chief instruments of the keyboard group, a supremacy they maintained until the piano **supplanted** them at the end of the 18th century. The clavichord's tone was metallic معدني and never powerful; nevertheless, because of the variety of tone possible to **it**, many composers found the clavichord a sympathetic instrument for concert use, but the character of the tone could not be varied save by mechanical or structural devices.

The piano was perfected in the early 18th century by a harpsichord maker in Italy. This instrument was called a piano e forte (soft and loud), to indicate its dynamic versatility براعة ديناميكية; its strings were struck by a recoiling hammer with a felt-padded head. The wires were much heavier in the earlier instruments. Mechanical improvements in the 19th century (the introduction of pedals to sustain tone or soften it and the perfection of a metal frame and steel wire of the finest quality) finally produced an instrument capable of myriad tonal effects.

1. What does the passage mainly discuss?
 - a. The popularity of the piano with composers
 - b. The historical development of the piano
 - c. The quality of tone produced by various keyboard instruments
 - d. The uses of keyboard instruments in various types of compositions
2. Which of the following instruments was widely used before the seventeenth century?
 - a. The clavichord
 - b. The spinet
 - c. The organ
 - d. The harpsichord
3. The word "a supremacy" is closest in meaning to.....
 - a. an improvement
 - b. a dominance
 - c. a development
 - d. a suggestion
4. The word "supplanted" is closest in meaning to.....
 - a. attended
 - b. promoted
 - c. supported
 - d. replaced
5. The word "it" refers to the.....
 - a. music
 - b. harpsichord
 - c. variety
 - d. clavichord
6. According to the information in the third paragraph, which of the following improvements made it possible to lengthen the tone produced by the piano?
 - a. The use of heavy wires
 - b. The metal frame construction
 - c. The use of felt-padded hammerheads
 - d. The introduction of pedals
7. According to the passage, what deficiency did the clavichord have?
 - a. Its tone wasn't powerful
 - b. It had no tone
 - c. It had only one tone
 - d. It had two tones only
8. The was popular before the piano.
 - a. pianist
 - b. organ
 - c. organization
 - d. organizer

3. Translation Skills مهارات التعامل مع سؤال الترجمة

أولاً: نصائح عامة للتعامل مع سؤال الترجمة (اختيار من متعدد)

1. لحل هذا السؤال بشكل جيد، اعتمد على الاستبعاد (استبعاد الإجابة الخاطئة حتى تستقر على الصحيحة).
2. ضع خطاً تحت الكلمات المختلفة بكل اختيار. قارن الاختلافات لتحديد الأخطاء وانتقاء الإجابة الصحيحة.
3. أنواع الأخطاء في الترجمة من العربية إلى الإنجليزية:
- أ. أخطاء خاصة بالقواعد: (يجب مراجعة الخيارات الأربعة من ناحية القواعد النحوية)

- ١) ما زمن الجملة: هل هو مضارع أم ماضي أم مستقبل.
- ٢) هل الفعل يتوافق مع الفاعل، فلفاعل الجمع يأخذ فعل جمع والفاعل المفرد يأخذ فعل مفرد.
- ٣) هل هناك روابط بالجملة، التزم بقواعدها وتأكد من معنى الرابط.
- بعض الروابط يتبعها جملة: **although / though / even though / because / as / but / however**
- بعض الروابط يتبعها اسم أو (V.ing): **despite / in spite of / because of / owing to / due to**
- ٤) تأكد من موضع الصفة أو الظرف. الصفة تصف الاسم وتأتي قبله / الظرف يصف الفعل ويأتي بعده.
- ٥) تأكد إذا كانت الجملة مبنية للمعلوم أو للمجهول، فطبيعة تكوين الفعل مختلفة في كليهما.
- ٦) تأكد من صحة ترجمة المضاف والمضاف إليه والملكية. (٧) راجع صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل في سياق الجملة.
- ٨) راجع حروف الجر، هل تناسب مع ما يسبقها من صفة أو اسم أو فعل.
- ٩) راجع ضمير الوصل، هل هو مستخدم بشكل صحيح، هناك ضمائر للعائل (who/whom/that)،
وأخرى لغير العائل (which/that)، وأخرى للمكان (where) والزمان (when) والملكية (whose).
- ١٠) راجع الضمائر: فاعل (I) ومفعول (me) وملكية (mine) ومنعكسة (myself)، هناك صفات ملكية (my).
- ١١) يجب مراعاة الأفعال التي يأتي بعدها (V.ing) والأفعال التي يأتي بعدها (مصدر + to).

ب. أخطاء خاصة بالكلمات:

- ١) هناك كلمات تتشابه في النطق ولكن تختلف في الكتابة والمضي: **their - there / see - sea / weight - wait**
- ٢) هناك كلمات متشابهة في الشكل مع اختلاف بسيط: **effect - affect / band - banned / adapt - adopt**
- ٣) انتبه للإثبات والتفي والمضاد المناسب: **moral - immoral / ability - inability / regular - irregular**
- ٤) انتبه لنوع الكلمة: اسم - فعل - صفة - ظرف: **ill - illness / efficient - efficiency / good - well**

- ج. أخطاء خاصة بتركيب الجملة: ١) حدد نوع الجملة: هل هي خبرية أم أمرية أم استفهامية، من أجل مراعاة ترتيبها.
٢) راجع تكوين الجملة: هل ينقصها فعل أو فاعل أو أي عنصر آخر.

ثانياً: كيفية التعامل مع سؤال الترجمة من الإنجليزية إلى العربية

١. تذكر أن الجملة العربية جملة فعلية: تبدأ بالفعل ثم الفاعل ثم المفعول. **We love sports.**
٢. إذا كان فعل الجملة الانجليزية (am / is / are / have / has) فالتنا تبدأ الجملة العربية بالفاعل.
للإشارة فوائد **Reading has benefits** - المصريون ودودين **Egyptians are friendly**.
٣. إذا لم تكن معنى الكلمة الإنجليزية التي لا تعرفها وحاول أن تعوض عنها بكلمة عربية قريبة منها.
In most developed countries, there's no **discrimination** between men and women.
تسرع (discrimination) يقترب من معنى (تفرقة / تمييز / عنصرية).

ثالثاً: كيفية التعامل مع سؤال الترجمة من العربية إلى الإنجليزية

١. إذا كان هناك كلمة عربية لا تعرف معناها الإنجليزي فحاول أن تستخدم كلمة مرادفة لها.
نصوب جميعاً إلى مستقبل مفعم بالأمل / استبدل (نصوب إلى) بدسعى (تطلع) إلى / نريد (مفعم بـ) بـ (مليء بـ).
- **We all seek to (look forward to / want) a future full of hope.**
٢. تبدأ الجملة الإنجليزية بالفاعل ثم الفعل ثم المفعول ثم باقي الجملة.
يحلم المصريون بحياة خالية من الفساد **Egyptians dream of a life void of rot.**
٣. في اللغة العربية تأتي الصفة بعد الموصوف. في اللغة الإنجليزية الصفة تأتي قبل الموصوف.
قرأت كتاباً عن الحرب الباردة في أوروبا الأسبوع الماضي.
- **I read a book about the cold war in Europe last week.**
- إذا وجدت صفتان أو مجموعة صفات غير منفصلة بأدوات ربط فإنا نترجم الصفة الأخيرة أولاً ثم نكمل.
مؤتمرات طبية دولية **(international medical conferences)**
- إذا وجدت صفتان أو مجموعة صفات منفصلة بأدوات ربط فإنا نترجم الصفة الأولى أولاً ثم نكمل.
مدارس جميلة ونظيفة ومتطورة **(beautiful, clean and developed schools)**
٤. إذا بدأت الجملة العربية بلام الملكية أو احتوت كلمة (له / لها / لنا)، نعتبر فعل الجملة بمعنى (يمتلك).
سيكون لاستخدام التكنولوجيا أثر عظيم.
- **Using technology will have a great effect.**
٥. كلمة (أن) في منتصف الجملة وبعدها جملة كاملة نترجم (that).
كلمتي إنه / إنها (في أول الجملة) تعني (من) وتترجم إلى (It's).
كلمة (أن) التي تأتي بعد فعل علوي تترجم إلى (مصدر + to) أو (V.ing) أو (V.ing + حرف جر).
- ينبغي أن يشارك جميع المصريون في تحمل مسؤولية وطنهم.

- All Egyptians **should share** in bearing the responsibility for their homeland.
 - قررت الحكومة أن ترفع رواتب الموظفين الشهر القادم.
 - The government decided to **raise**
 - إنها الحرب التي تحول حياة الناس إلى جحيم.
 - **It's** war that turns peoples' lives into hell.
 ٦. كيفية ترجمة الفعل التابع لكلمتي (قد / لقد):

قد + فعل مضارع.	مصدر + may
قد / لقد + فعل ماضي + كلمة من كلمات الماضي.	التصريف الثاني للفعل
قد / لقد + فعل ماضي (بدون كلمة ماضي).	have / has + P.P
كان قد / كان بالفعل قد + فعل ماضي.	had + P.P

- Oil **may run out** in the near future.
 Man **has succeeded** in invading space.
 My brother **passed** a driving test yesterday.
 When I arrived, the train **had** already left.
 ٧. هناك أفعال في اللغة العربية تحتوي على حرف جر لكنها لا تأخذ حرف جر في الإنجليزية.
 يقضي على **eliminate** / يستمتع بـ **enjoy** / يصل إلى **reach** / يعترف بـ **admit**
 - ذهبت إلى الأوبرا واستمتعت بالموسيقى.
 - I went to the opera and **enjoyed** the music.

رابعاً: تمارين ترجمة

- Our hunger for land, wood and water is growing, therefore the future of life itself is in danger.
 أ. يزداد احتياجنا للأرض والخشب والماء لأن مستقبل الحياة نفسها في خطر.
 ب. يزداد احتياجنا للأرض والخشب والماء لذا فإن الحياة نفسها في مستقبل خطر.
 ج. يزداد جوع الأرض والخشب والماء لذا فإن مستقبل الحياة نفسها في خطر.
 د. يزداد احتياجنا للأرض والخشب والماء لذا فإن مستقبل الحياة نفسها في خطر.
- Everyone needs education suitable for the age, its changes and its requirements.
 أ. يحتاج كل فرد إلى تعليم العصر المناسب وتغيراته ومتطلباته. ب. يحتاج كل فرد إلى التعليم العصري المناسب وتغيراته ومتطلباته.
 ج. يحتاج كل فرد إلى مناسبة تعليم العصر وتغيراته ومتطلباته. د. يحتاج كل فرد إلى التعليم المناسب للعصر وتغيراته ومتطلباته.
- We should sacrifice our lives for the sake of a just and comprehensive peace.
 أ. ينبغي أن نضحى بحياتنا لأجل سلام عادل وشامل.
 ب. ينبغي أن نضحى بحياتنا لأجل سلام عادل وشامل.
 ج. ينبغي أن نحيا بتضحية لأجل سلام عادل وشامل.
 د. ينبغي أن نضحى بحياتنا لأجل السلام والعقل الشاملين.
- The flow of inventions has resulted in a feverish race among nations to obtain advanced technology.
 أ. تسببت زيادة المخترعات في شراسة بين الأمم المتسابقة للحصول على التكنولوجيا المتقدمة.
 ب. نتج عن تدفق المخترعات سباق شرس بين الأمم للحصول على التكنولوجيا المتقدمة.
 ج. تدفق إنتاج المخترعات مع سباق شرس بين الأمم للحصول على التكنولوجيا المتقدمة.
 د. نتج عن زيادة المخترعات سباق شرس بين الأمم لإنتاج التكنولوجيا المتقدمة.
- Camouflage is a method of hiding which allows an object to remain unnoticed, by blending with its environment.
 أ. التمويه اختفاء للطريقة تسمح لشيء أن يبقى غير ملحوظاً بأن يندمج مع بيئته.
 ب. التمويه طريقة للاختفاء تسمح لشيء أن يبقى غير ملحوظاً بأن يندمج مع بيئته.
 ج. التمويه طريق خفي يسمح لشيء أن يبقى غير ملحوظاً بأن يندمج مع بيئته.
 د. التمويه بطريقة الاختفاء يسمح لشيء أن يبقى غير ملحوظاً بأن يندمج مع بيئته.
- Environmental problems originate from the relation between man and his culture and natural surroundings.
 أ. تنشأ المشكلات البيئية العلاقة بين الإنسان وثقافته والبيئة الطبيعية المحيطة.
 ب. تأسل المشكلات البيئية العلاقة بين الإنسان وثقافته والبيئة الطبيعية المحيطة.
 ج. تنشأ المشكلات البيئية من العلاقة بين الإنسان وثقافته والبيئة الطبيعية المحيطة.
 د. تبنى المشكلات البيئية العلاقة بين الإنسان وثقافته والبيئة الطبيعية المحيطة.
- Noise pollution really threatens people living in big cities such as Cairo.
 أ. في الحقيقة يهدد التلوث السمعي الناس الذين يعيشون في المدن الكبرى مثل القاهرة.
 ب. التلوث السمعي يهدد الناس الحقيقيون الذين يعيشون في المدن الكبرى خصوصاً القاهرة.
 ج. يهدد الناس التلوث السمعي الحقيقي للذين يعيشون في القاهرة كمدينة كبرى.
 د. حقا تلوث الضوضاء تهدد للناس العاشون في المدن الكبرى على سبيل المثال القاهرة.

8. Man has to reach a balanced relation with the environment and its components.
- أ. ينبغي أن يحقق الإنسان توازن في علاقة البيئة ومكوناتها. ب. على الإنسان أن يصل لتوازن مع البيئة وعلاقته بمكوناتها.
ج. ينبغي على الإنسان أن يصل إلى علاقة متوازنة مع البيئة ومكوناتها.
د. ينبغي أن يصل الإنسان إلى علاقة توازن بيني مع المكونات من حوله.
9. Education deepens environmental awareness in students and teaches them about the value of nature.
- أ. يعمق الوعي البيئي التعليمي قيمة الطبيعة عند الطلاب ويعلمهم عنها.
ب. يعمق التعليم الوعي البيئي عند الطلاب ويعلمهم عن قيمة الطبيعة.
ج. يعمق التعليم بيئة الوعي عند الطلاب ويعلمهم عن قيمة الطبيعة.
د. التعليم عميق في الوعي البيئي عند الطلاب ويعلمهم قيم عن الطبيعة.
10. No one can avoid being influenced by advertisement which can easily persuade us to buy a product.
- أ. لا أحد يستطيع أن يتأثر منتجاتها بالإعلانات التي يمكنها بسهولة أن تقتنعا أن نشترى منتج ما.
ب. لا أحد يستطيع أن يتجنب الإعلانات المؤثرة التي يمكنها بسهولة أن تقتنعا أن نشترى منتج ما.
ج. لا أحد يستطيع أن يتجنب التأثير في الإعلانات التي يمكنها بسهولة أن تقتنعا أن نشترى منتج ما.
د. لا أحد يستطيع أن يتجنب التأثير بالإعلانات التي يمكنها بسهولة أن تقتنعا أن نشترى منتج ما.
11. Almost all our energy comes originally from the sun and all living things use it.
- أ. تأتي معظم طاقتنا بالقرب من الشمس الأصلية كما تستخدمها جميع الكائنات الحية.
ب. تقريباً تأتي طاقتنا في الأصل من معظم الشمس كما تستخدمها جميع الكائنات الحية.
ج. تقريباً تأتي معظم طاقتنا في الأصل من الشمس كما تستخدمها جميع الكائنات الحية.
د. تأتي معظم طاقتنا في الأصل بالقرب من الشمس كما تستخدمها جميع الكائنات الحية.
12. Developing countries have no choice in globalization which serves progressive countries more.
- أ. ليس أمام الدول النامية أي خيار في العولمة التي تخدم الدول المتقدمة أكثر.
ب. أمام الدول النامية أي خيار إلا العولمة التي تخدم الدول المتقدمة أكثر.
ج. ليست الدول النامية أمام أي خيار في العولمة التي تخدم الدول المتقدمة أكثر.
د. ليست الدول النامية تختار العولمة التي تخدم الدول المتقدمة أكثر.
13. Investment should be encouraged, production should be increased and consumption should be cut down.
- أ. تشجيع الاستثمار وزيادة الإنتاج وتقليل الاستهلاك وإجبات قومية. ب. ينبغي زيادة الاستثمار وتشجيع الإنتاج وتقليل الاستهلاك.
ج. ينبغي تشجيع الاستثمار وزيادة الإنتاج وتقليل الاستهلاك. د. تشجيع الاستثمار واجب وزيادة الإنتاج وتقليل الاستهلاك.
14. Rain forests are being destroyed at an incredible rate by farmers.
- أ. تدمير الغابات المطيرة بمعدل مدهل بواسطة المزارعين. ب. يتم تدمير الغابات المطيرة المذهلة المعدل بواسطة المزارعين.
ج. يتم تدمير الغابات المطيرة بواسطة المزارعين المدهولين. د. يتم تدمير الغابات المطيرة بمعدل مدهل بواسطة المزارعين.
15. Stress can warn you that you are under too much pressure and you should change your way of life.
- أ. يمكن أن يوترك الحذر من أنك تقع تحت الكثير من الضغط وأن عليك أن تقوم بتغيير طريقك في الحياة.
ب. يمكن أن يحذرك التوتر أنك تقع تحت الكثير من الضغط وأن عليك أن تقوم بتغيير طريقك في الحياة.
ج. يمكن أن يحذرك التوتر أنك تتجذب إلى الكثير من الضغط وأن عليك أن تقوم بتغيير طريقك في الحياة.
د. يمكن أن يوترك التحذير من أنك تقع تحت الكثير من الضغط وأن عليك أن تقوم بتغيير طريقك في الحياة.
16. Young people are liable to err, do wrong and be misled through inexperience.
- أ. الشباب يرتكبون الأخطاء العريضة أو يتم تضليلهم بسبب عدم الخبرة.
ب. الشباب عرضة للأخطاء الضاللية أو أن يتم انكابها بسبب عدم الخبرة.
ج. الشباب عرضة لارتكاب الأخطاء أو أن يتم تضليلهم بسبب عدم الخبرة.
د. الشباب يعرضون الأخطاء المرتكبة أو أن يتم تضليلهم بسبب عدم الخبرة.
17. Seeking peace requires a lot of hard work, patience, compromises and face-to-face talks.
- أ. يتطلب السلام وراء السعي الكثير من العمل الجاد والصبر والحلول الوسطية والمحادثات وجها لوجه.
ب. يتطلب السعي وراء السلام الكثير من العمل الجاد والصبر والحلول الوسطية والمحادثات وجها لوجه.
ج. يتطلب السعي السلام مع الكثير من العمل الجاد والصبر والحلول الوسطية والمحادثات وجها لوجه.
د. يتطلب السعي وراء الكثير من السلام والعمل الجاد والصبر والحلول الوسطية والمحادثات وجها لوجه.
18. All Egyptians believe in peace both as an aim to be sought and a path to be taken.
- أ. يؤمن كل المصريين بأن السلام هدف يجب السعي إليه وطريق يجب أن يتخذ.
ب. يؤمن كل المصريين بالسلام كهدف يجب السعي إليه وطريق يجب أن يتخذ.
ج. يؤمن كل المصريين بأن السلام هدفاً يجب السعي إليه وطريق يجب أن يتخذ.
د. يؤمن كل المصريين بالسلام كهدف السعي إليه طريق يجب أن يتخذ.

19. The high cost of living, which is one of our most difficult problems, is due to inflation.

- أ. نعتي ارتفاع تكلفة المعيشة، الذي هو أحد أصعب مشكلاتنا، بسبب التضخم.
- ب. يرجع ارتفاع تكلفة المعيشة بين أحد أصعب مشكلاتنا إلى التضخم.
- ج. يرجع ارتفاع تكلفة المعيشة وبقيّة مشكلاتنا الصعبة إلى التضخم.
- د. يرجع ارتفاع تكلفة المعيشة، الذي هو أحد أصعب مشكلاتنا، إلى التضخم.

20. To bring the prices down, both the government and individuals should work together.

- أ. من أجل تخفيض الأسعار ينبغي على كلاً من الحكومة والأفراد أن يعملوا سوياً.
 - ب. ينبغي على كلاً من الحكومة والأفراد أن يخفضوا الأسعار سوياً.
 - ج. من أجل تخفيض الأسعار ينبغي أن تعمل الحكومة من أجل الأفراد.
 - د. تخفيض الأسعار ينبغي له أن تعمل الحكومة لمساعدة الأفراد.
٢١. تسهم الرياضة في تأصيل القيم الهامة للمجتمع وللحياة كالتنافس الشريف والعمل الجماعي.

- a. Sports contribute to originating values which are important for the society and life such as honest competition and team work.
- b. Sports contribute to originating values whom are important for the society and life such as honest competition and team work.
- c. Sports contribute to originating values which are important the society and life such as honest competition and team work.
- d. Sports contribute to originating values which are important for the society and life such honest competition and team work.

٢٢. يجب على الشباب إبداء مزيد من الاحترام والتقدير لكبار السن وكذلك تراث الأجداد.

- a. Youth should to show more respect and appreciation for older people and also the heritage of our ancestors.
- b. Youth should show more respect and appreciation for older people and also the heritage of our ancestors.
- c. Youth should show more respect and appreciation older people and also the heritage of our ancestors.
- d. Youth should show more respect and appreciation for older people and also the heritage our ancestors.

٢٣. تضطر بعض الحيوانات إلى تغيير لونها بلون البيئة المحيطة بها لتحمي أنفسها من كائنات أقوى منها.

- a. Some animals obliged to change their colour to look like the colour of their surroundings to protect themselves from other stronger creatures.
- b. Some animals are obliged change their colour to look like the colour of their surroundings to protect themselves from other stronger creatures.
- c. Some animals are obliged to change their colour to look like the colour of their surroundings to protect themselves from other stronger creatures.
- d. Some animals are obliged to change there colour to look like the colour of their surroundings to protect themselves from other stronger creatures.

٢٤. التقدم في العمر عملية طبيعية يمر بها أي إنسان ولا يستطيع أحد أن يمنع حدوثها.

- a. Growing old is a natural process that any human passes through and no one can prevent it's occurrence.
- b. Growing old is a natural process that any human passes through and no one can prevent its occurrence.
- c. Growing old a natural process that any human passes through and no one can prevent its occurrence.
- d. Growing old is a natural process that any human pass through and no one can prevent its occurrence.

٢٥. يستطيع الإنسان الوصول إلى أفكار جديدة عن طريق التفكير الإبتكاري وامتلاك المواهب.

- a. Man can invent ideas new through innovative thinking and having the talent for this.
- b. Man can invent new ideas though innovative thinking and having the talent for this.

- c. Man can invent new ideas through innovative thinking and having the talent for this.
 d. Man can invent new ideas through innovative thinking and have the talent for this.
 ٢٦. يمكن استخدام العلاج بالموسيقى في علاج بعض الاضطرابات البدنية والذهنية لدى الناس.
- a. Music therapy can be used to treat some of people's physical and mental disorders.
 b. Music therapy can used to treat some of people's physical and mental disorders.
 c. Music therapy can be using to treat some of people's physical and mental disorders.
 d. Music therapy can be used to treat some of people's physical or mental disorders.
 ٢٧. تساعدنا القراءة علي تطوير سلوكياتنا الي الافضل بالإضافة الي أنها تمدنا بالمعرفة.
- a. Reading helps to improving our behaviour to the better in addition to giving us knowledge.
 b. Reading helps to improve our behaviour to the better in addition to giving us knowledge.
 c. Reading helps to improve our behaviour to the better in addition to give us knowledge.
 d. Reading helps to improve our behaviour to the better in addition to giving knowledge us.
 ٢٨. المنزل ليس فقط مكاناً نعيش فيه، إنه جزء من حياتنا وشخصياتنا.
- a. Home isn't just a place to live in; it's part of our life and character.
 b. Home isn't just a place to live in. it's part of our life and character.
 c. Home isn't just a place to live in, it's part of our life and character.
 d. Home isn't just a place to live in! it's part of our life and character.
 ٢٩. تحدث الكوارث الطبيعية كالزلازل والأعاصير والبراكين وتؤثر سلباً علي الحياة فيها.
- a. Natural disasters likes earthquakes, hurricanes and volcanoes occur and affect life there badly.
 b. Natural disasters like earthquakes, hurricanes and volcanoes occuring and affect life there badly.
 c. Natural disasters like earthquakes, hurricanes and volcanoes occur and affecting life there badly.
 d. Natural disasters like earthquakes, hurricanes and volcanoes occur and affect life there badly.
 ٣٠. أصبح العالم في أمس الحاجة إلى استخدام مصادر الطاقة المتجددة والنظيفة لضمان سلامة الحياة.
- a. The world has been become in a bad need of using clean and renewable sources of energy to ensure life's safety.
 b. The world has become in a bad need of use clean and renewable sources of energy to ensure life's safety.
 c. The world has become in a bad need of using clean and renewable sources of energy to ensure lifes' safety.
 d. The world has become in a bad need of using clean and renewable sources of energy to ensure life's safety.
 ٣١. تساعد السياحة علي تعميق التفاهم والتعايش السلمي بين دول العالم بلغاتها وثقافتها المختلفة.
- a. Tourism help to deepen understanding and peaceful co-existence among world countries with their different languages and cultures.
 b. Tourism helps to deepen understanding and peaceful co-existence on world countries with their different languages and cultures.
 c. Tourism helps to deepen understanding and peaceful co-existence among world countries with their different languages and cultures.
 d. Tourism helps to deepen understanding and peaceful co-existence among world countries with they're different languages and cultures.
 ٣٢. المواطنون الصالحون هم الذين يكرسون أنفسهم ووقتهم وأموالهم من أجل رعاية أسرهم وحماية وطنهم.
- a. Good citizens are those whom devote themselves, their time and their money for the welfare of their families and the protection of their country.
 b. Good citizens are those who devote themselves, their time and their money for the welfare of their families and the protection their country.
 c. Good citizens are those who devote themselves, their time and their money for the welfare their families and the protection of their country.
 d. Good citizens are those who devote themselves, their time and their money for the welfare of their families and the protection of their country.
 ٣٣. يجب أن يؤمن كل فرد في المجتمع بأن العمل الجاد هو الطريق الوحيد للتقدم والنجاح في الحياة.
- a. Every member of the society should believe that hard work is the only way to progress.

- b. Every members of the society should believe that hard work is the only way to progress.
 c. All member of the society should believe that hard work is the only way to progress.
 d. Every member of the society should believe that work hard is the only way to progress.

٣٤. تتشأ المشكلات البيئية من خلال تفاعل الإنسان مع الثقافة والبيئة.

- a. Environmental problems raise through man's interaction with the culture and the environment.
 b. Environmental problems rise through man's interaction with the culture and the environment.
 c. Environmental problems arise through man's interaction with the culture and the environment.
 d. Environmental problems arouse throw man's interaction with the culture and the environment.

٣٥. يستطيع كل مصري نجاح خارج بلده أن يرد الجميل للوطن.

- a. Every Egyptians who achieved success abroad can pay back the favour for his homeland.
 b. Every Egyptian who achieved success abroad can pay back the favour for his homeland.
 c. All Egyptian who achieved success abroad can pay back the favour for his homeland.
 d. Every Egyptian whom achieved success abroad can pay back the favour for his homeland.

٣٦. تُعقد المؤتمرات الدولية لحل المشكلات القائمة بين دول العالم.

- a. International conferences held to solve the problems existing among world countries.
 b. International conferences holdi g to solve the problems existing among world countries.
 c. International conferences are held to solve the problems existing among world countries.
 d. International conferences are held solve the problems existing among world countries.

٣٧. ينبغي أن يتحلى الأطباء بصفات خاصة مثل الصبر والقوة والقدرة على الإهتمام بالناس.

- a. Doctors should characterized by special qualities such as patience, power, and the ability to look after people.
 b. Doctors should to be characterized by special qualities such patience, power, and the ability to look after people.
 c. Doctors should be characterized special qualities such as patience, power, and the ability to look after people.
 d. Doctors should be characterized by special qualities such as patience, power, and the ability to look after people.

٣٨. توصل العلماء والمهندسون إلى طرق جديدة لتكليل التلوث الناتج من حرق غاز العوادم.

- a. Scientists and engineers have discovered new ways to reduce pollution resulting from burning exhaust fumes.
 b. Scientific engineers have discovered new ways to reduce pollution resulting from burning exhaust fumes.
 c. Scientists and engineers have been discovered new ways to reduce pollution resulting from burning exhaust fumes.
 d. Scientists and engineers have discovered new ways reduce pollution resulting from burning exhaust fumes.

٣٩. علينا أن نتجنب تناول الطعام المعطب قدر المستطاع لأنه قد يكون ضاراً أو ساماً.

- a. We should avoid to eat canned food as much as we could because it may be harmful or poisonous.
 b. We should avoid eating canned food as much as we could because it may be harmful or poisonous.
 c. We should avoid eating be canned food as much as we could because it may be harmful or poisonous.
 d. We should avoid eating canned food as most as we could because it may be harmful or poisonous.

٤٠. ينتج العالم كميات كافية من الطعام لكنها لا تصل إلى كل الذين يتضورون جوعاً.

- a. The world produces enough quantities of food and they don't reach those who are starving.
 b. The world produces enough quantities of food so they don't reach those who are starving.
 c. The world produces enough quantities of food when they don't reach those starving.
 d. The world produces enough quantities of food but they don't reach those who are starving.

4. Essay and Email

A. Writing an Essay كتابة المقال

أولاً: أنواع المقالات

1. Descriptive Essays المقالات الوصفية :

- وفيها نتحدث عن حقائق أو عادات أو أشياء تحدث بالفعل بشكل دائم. - نستخدم فيها غالباً زمن المضارع البسيط.
- أمثلة للموضوعات الوصفية: التلوث / الأدمان / وسائل الاعلام / التعليم / دور المرأة الخ.

2. Narrative Essays المقالات الروائية :

- وفيها نتحدث عن أشياء قد حدثت بالفعل في الماضي (حكاية / قصة / رواية). - نستخدم فيها الماضي البسيط.
- أمثلة للموضوعات الروائية: - قصة حدثت لك أو لغيرك. - تجربة لن تنساها. - زيارة أو رحلة إلى مكان ما.

3. Futuristic Essays المقالات المستقبلية :

- نتحدث عن شيء متوقع أو مرتب له أو مخطط لحدثه في المستقبل. - نستخدم فيها زمن المستقبل البسيط.
- أمثلة للموضوعات المستقبلية: - الحياة في المستقبل. - شكل الحياة بعد خمسين عام من الآن.

4. Age comparison-based Essays المقالات القائمة على المقارنة بين عصرين :

- يتم فيها مقارنة حالة في زمن معين بحالة أخرى في زمن آخر. / تحتاج فيها إلى المزج بين زمنين.
- أمثلة لتلك الموضوعات: - الحياة الآن وفي الماضي. - الحياة الآن وفي المستقبل.

ثانياً: مكونات المقال

1. The introduction Paragraph الفقرة المقدمة :

1. تعريف للعنصر الرئيسي في الموضوع:

- في هذه النقطة نحن لا نقوم بتعريف عنوان الموضوع نفسه إنما نقوم بتعريف العنصر الرئيسي فيه.
- فمثلاً إن كان عنوان الموضوع هو (The Benefits of Reading) التي تعني (فوائد القراءة) فإبنا لا نقوم بتعريف (فوائد القراءة) إنما نقوم بتعريف (القراءة) وهي العنصر الرئيسي في العنوان.

- يساعدك التعريف التالي على تقديم أي موضوع:

جملة + who / which / that / when / where + اسم تصنيفي (ت.ل.) + is (are) + one of + the most important (most dangerous / best / worst) + العنصر الرئيسي في الموضوع

- أمثلة لتعريفات مبتكرة بالطريقة السابقة:

Tolerance is one of the most important qualities which people in society should have.

Pollution is one of the most dangerous problems which we face nowadays.

2. جملة شاملة و مختصرة عما سيتم كتابته في الموضوع: وهنا نعرض الأفكار الرئيسية للموضوع في جملة.
- إذا كنت ستكتب عن مزايا و عيوب التكنولوجيا الحديثة، يمكنك كتابة جملة شاملة كما يلي:

Modern technology has many advantages, but at the same time it has some disadvantages.

2. The body الموضوع نفسه :

- يتكون من الأفكار الرئيسية التي تضعها في المسودة.
- تدعم كل فكرة بـ أدلة / أمثلة / تفاصيل / تفسيرات / أسباب. - نستخدم روابط بين الجمل لتقوية المعنى.

- الروابط التي يمكن استخدامها بين الجمل:

On one hand, On the other hand,	من ناحية, من ناحية أخرى,
Regarding (Concerning / As for),	بخصوص
The first reason for is + V.ing / اسم / that + جملة	السبب الأول لـ..... هو
One advantage of is + V.ing / اسم / that + جملة	احدي مزايا هي
One disadvantage of is + V.ing / اسم / that + جملة	احدي عيوب هي
In addition to that, / Furthermore, / Moreover,	بالإضافة إلى ذلك,
It is as clear as crystal that	من الواضح جداً أن

3. The conclusion الخاتمة :

To sum up, (To summarize,)
Finally, we can say that
In brief, / In short,

لنختصر القول,
في النهاية يمكننا أن نقول أن
باختصار,

كيف يجب أن تكون الخاتمة: لا يجب أن تحتوي الخاتمة على فكرة جديدة لم يتم تغطيتها داخل الموضوع. يجب أن تتضمن الخاتمة الآراء أو المقترحات أو التوصيات أو النصائح حول الموضوع.

ثالثاً: نصائح ينبغي اتباعها

١. لا تنسى أن تترك مسافة في أول سطر من كل فقرة.
٢. ضع علامات ترقيم صحيحة للجمل التي تكتبها.
٣. لا تُفرط في استخدام الروابط داخل الموضوع.
٤. تجنب تكرار الجمل داخل الموضوع.
٥. استخدم جمل قصيرة (بسيطة) تحتوي على (grammar / spelling) صحيحين.
٦. إذا أردت التعبير عن فكرتين، اربطهما مستخدماً (أداة ربط) مناسبة:

Over population is a dangerous problem, that's why it's necessary to overcome it.

Pollution is a serious problem because it threatens our life on earth.

٧. التزم بزمان الموضوع: الحقائق (مضارع بسيط) - الحكايات (ماضي بسيط) - التنبؤات والتوقعات (مستقبل بسيط).
٨. التزم بوحدة النص، ولا تخرج عن الموضوع.
٩. حاول دائماً أن تُطور الفكرة أو توسعها لتكتب أكثر. ويُمكنك فعل ذلك عن طريق ضرب مثال أو إضافة دليل.
١٠. تجنب الأخطاء الشائعة الآتية: * بداية الجملة بفعل.

Don't say Should the Egyptians respect the law. *Say* The Egyptians should respect
* تشكيل فعل الجملة المضارع على شكل (V.ing).

Don't say Tourism playing a main role in *Say* Tourism plays a main role in
* الخلط بين الفاعل المفرد والفاعل الجمع في المضارع البسيط المثبت والمنفي.

- A student **has** / Students **have**. - The state **doesn't** / Smokers **don't**.
* وضع (is/ are) قبل التصريف الأول للفعل (عند تكوين المضارع البسيط المبني للمعلوم).

Don't say The accident was happened yesterday. *Say* The accident happened yesterday.
* وضع (be) أو (to) بعد الأفعال الناقصة. (في غير موضعها):
* وضع (was/were) قبل التصريف الثاني (عند تكوين الماضي البسيط المبني للمعلوم).

Don't say We must be increase *Say* We must increase

Don't say People should to help *Say* People should help
* الخلط بين أداة التعريف والنكرة

Don't say The honesty is the best quality. *Say* Honesty is the best quality.

رابعاً: مقالات مكتوبة

1. The pros and cons of mobile phones مزايا وعيوب الهواتف المحمولة

Mobile phones are of the most important technological means of communication which have turned the world into a smaller village. However, these phones are a mixed blessing. They have some merits and also have other demerits at the same time.

As for the advantages, people can contact anyone all over the world at any time. Recently, the cost of mobile phone calls has been cheap and reasonable. Mobile can rescue people from dangers and accidents. For example, if an accident takes place in a very remote place, it can be easy to call the police or the ambulance on your mobile. Mobiles have really linked the world.

On the other hand, there are some disadvantages of these phones if people use them unwisely. They are extremely dangerous when people use them while driving. They can cause accidents. Some mobiles, especially those that are connected to the internet, are very expensive. Some people spend all their time attached to mobile phone screens chatting, watching videos or listening to music. This makes them passive. Mobiles can be very expensive if people overuse them. It can be annoying to overhear other people's conversations. Mobile musical tunes usually disturb people on trains and buses. Batteries may run out at times when it is impossible to recharge them. Sometimes you cannot get a signal. To summarize, mobiles should be used wisely to only serve us not harm us.

2. Everyone should have a role to play to share in the development of their country


It is a well-known fact that the youth of any country is a great asset. They are indeed the future of the country and represent it at every level. The role of youths in nation-building is more important than you might think. In other words, the intelligence and work of the youth will take the country on the pathway of success. As every citizen is equally responsible, the youth is too. They are the building blocks of a country.

The youth is important because they will be our future. Today they might be our partners, tomorrow they will go on to become leaders. The youths are very energetic and enthusiastic. They have the ability to learn and adapt to the environment. Similarly, they are willing to learn and act on it as well to achieve their goals.

Our youth can bring social reform and improvement in society. We cannot do without the youth of a country. Furthermore, the nation requires their participation to achieve the goals and help in taking the country towards progress.

Likewise, we see how the development of any country requires active participation from the youth. It does not matter which field we want to progress in, whether it is the technical field or sports field, youth is needed. It is up to us how to help the youth in playing this role properly. We must make all the youth aware of their power and the role they have to play in nation-building.

B. Writing an email كتابة الإيميل

From	:	عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للراسل	
To	:	عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه	
Subject (About):	:	موضوع الإيميل	
Hello / Dear,			
		الموضوع	Best wishes, اسم الراسل

Written e-mails

1. Write an email to your American friend to tell him about Hayah Karima initiative.

How are you? I'm writing this email to tell you about the Hayah Karima initiative; the presidential initiative of Decent Life, which targets the development of more than 4,500 villages across Egypt at a great cost. Decent Life offers jobs in local communities to ensure sustainable development as well as provide a permanent source of income for villagers. Under the initiative, investments are injected into human capital through education projects including the construction of new schools and the development of existing schools. The initiative covers infrastructure projects to enhance the quality of life for nearly 60 million citizens in rural areas. It mainly contributes to fulfilling the objectives of the economic development strategy adopted by the Egyptian government. This comes in line with the government's efforts to attract investments from the private sector, which is a priority for Egypt in the meantime. We praise the role played by the Decent Life initiative in developing the Egyptian countryside, particularly in the sectors of education, healthcare, family development, and vocational training. Write and tell me about similar projects in your country.

Revision for Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

A: A Glimpse of Revelation III

Unit (1): The Rightly-Guided Caliphs الخلفاء الراشدين

Lesson (1): Muslims Tragic Loss خسارة المسلمين العظيمة

A. Vocabulary:

succeed	يخلف	grief	حزن	administrative	إداري
succession	خلافه	issue	قضية	heir	وريث
pact	معاهدة - ميثاق	obligation	فرض	apostasy	ردة
substantial	جوهرى	discord	نزاع	reign	حكم - فترة حكم
assassination	اغتيال	stretched out	انتشر	smooth	سلس
transition	انتقال	territory	منطقة - إقليم	innovative	مبدع

B. Text:

The Noble Prophet (BPUH) once said: "No prophet will come after me; only caliphs will succeed me" (Al-Bukhārī). In the eleventh year of Hijra – 632 CE, dark grief filled the Islamic nation due to the death of Prophet Muhammad (BPUH). It was such a tragic loss to all Muslims, specifically the companions (APWT) that even some of them refused to accept the fact that the Prophet (BPUH) had passed away.

قال النبي ﷺ: "لا نبي بعدي، إنما يخلفني خليفة" (رواه البخاري). في السنة الحادية عشرة من الهجرة، أي عام ٦٣٢ ميلادي، خيم حزن عميق على الأمة الإسلامية لوفاة النبي محمد ﷺ. كانت خسارة فادحة على المسلمين أجمعين، وعلى الصحابة رضي الله عنهم، حتى إن بعضهم رفض قبول حقيقة وفاة النبي.

With the death of the Prophet (BPUH), the issue of succession surfaced; who would be the caliph now? Prophet Muhammad (BPUH) had not appointed an heir to his position. Soon after his death, some of the Arabian tribes declared that their pact with Prophet Muhammad (BPUH) was of a personal nature and apostatized.

بوفاة النبي ﷺ، طفت مسألة الخلافة على السطح؛ فمن سيكون الخليفة الآن؟ لم يُعين النبي ﷺ وريثاً لمنصبه. وبعد وفاته بفترة وجيزة، أعلنت بعض القبائل العربية أن عهدها مع النبي ﷺ كان شخصياً، وارتدت.

"Muhammad is not the father of any of your men; rather, [he is] the Emissary of Allah, and the seal of the prophets. And Allah has ever been All Knowing of everything." (Qur'ān, 33:40). قال تعالى: {إِنَّمَا كَانَ مُحَمَّدٌ ابْنًا أَحَدٍ مِّن رِّجَالِكُمْ وَلَكِن رُّسُولَ اللَّهِ وَخَاتَمَ النَّبِيِّينَ وَكَانَ اللَّهُ بِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ عَظِيمًا} (الأحزاب، ٤٠: ٣٣).

Thus, the need for a caliph was urgent. The Prophet (BPUH) once said, "Whosoever among you shall live after me will see much discord. Thus, hold fast to my tradition and the examples of the Rightly-Guided Caliphs who will come after me" (Abū Dawūd and Al-Tirmidhi).

لذا، كانت الحاجة إلى خليفة ملحة. قال النبي ﷺ: «من بعث منكم بعدي فسيرى اختلافاً كثيراً، فتمسكوا بسنتي وبأخلاف الراشدين المهديين من بعدي.» (أبو داود والترمذي).

The first four caliphs of the Islamic state – Abū Bakr, 'Umar, 'Uthmān, and 'Alī (APWT) are known as the Rightly-Guided Caliphs (13H - 52 H) (632-661 CE). Their 29-year rule reign started with the death of Prophet Muhammad (BPUH) in 632 CE, when Abū Bakr took the title of Caliph – successor of the Prophet (BPUH) which ended with the assassination of Caliph 'Alī (APWH) in 661 CE. During their reign, Islam flourished and spread widely beyond the border of Arabian Peninsula as the Muslim state united and extended over a wide geographical area. It stretched out from the borders of China in Asia to West Asia and North Africa, all the way to Andalusia in Europe.

عُرف الخلفاء الأربعة الأوائل للدولة الإسلامية - أبو بكر وعمر وعثمان وعلي (رضي الله عنهم) - بالخلفاء الراشدين (١٣هـ - ٥٢هـ) (٦٦١-٦٣٢م). بدأ حكمهم الذي استمر ٢٩ عامًا بوفاة النبي محمد ﷺ عام ٦٣٢م، عندما تولى أبو بكر لقب الخليفة - خليفة النبي ﷺ - وانتهى باغتيال الخليفة علي (رضي الله عنه) عام ٦٦١م. في عهدهم، ازدهر الإسلام وانتشر على نطاق واسع خارج حدود شبه الجزيرة العربية حيث توحدت الدولة الإسلامية وامتدت على مساحة جغرافية واسعة. امتدت من حدود الصين في آسيا إلى غرب آسيا وشمال إفريقيا، وصولاً إلى الأندلس في أوروبا.

The role of the caliphs in the unity of the Muslim state was critical, as they provided a smooth transition after the Prophet's death. They largely preserved his cause and worked hard to get the Muslim State. They also introduced a novel administrative system which was carried out and molded to meet the needs of different circumstances by subsequent rulers.

كان دور الخلفاء في وحدة الدولة الإسلامية بالغ الأهمية، إذ وفروا انتقالاً سلساً للسلطة بعد وفاة النبي ﷺ. وحافظوا على قضيته إلى حد كبير، وبذلوا جهوداً حثيثة لإقامة الدولة الإسلامية. كما أسسوا نظاماً إدارياً جديداً، نفّذه وطوّره الحكام اللاحقون لتلبية احتياجات مختلف الظروف.

C. Answer the following questions:

- Why did dark grief fill the Islamic nation after the death of Prophet Muhammad (BPUH)?
- The Prophet's death was a tragic loss to all Muslims.
- What are the most critical problems Muslims faced immediately after the Prophet's death?
- Some Arabian tribes apostatized and some people claimed prophecy ادعوا النبوة.
- How long did the reign of the caliphs of the Islamic state last? - 29 years.
- What geographical effect did the reign of the caliphs have?
- The Muslim state stretched out from the borders of China in Asia to West Asia and North Africa, all the way to Andalusia in Europe.
- How was the role of the caliphs in the unity of the Muslim state critical?
- They provided a smooth transition after the Prophet's death. They largely preserved his cause and worked hard to get the Muslim State. They introduced a novel administrative system.
- Do you think that the most tragic loss to all Muslims is the death of Prophet Muhammad (BPUH)? Explain why?
- Yes. The Prophet was a great man who guided people from darkness to the light of Islam.
- Why did some Arabian tribes feel no obligation towards Islam after the Prophet's death?
- They thought that their pact with Prophet Muhammad (BPUH) was of a personal nature.

D. Choose the correct answer:

- Great filled the Islamic nation due to the death of Prophet Muhammad (BPUH).
a. madness b. happiness c. sadness d. pleasure
- The need for a true leader was substantial. The word "substantial" means
a. crucial b. unimportant c. trivial d. pregnant
- There was no to the position of the Prophet (BPUH).
a. heir b. heir c. whole d. rear
- Some caliphs did not survive a trial of
a. accommodation b. condition c. fabrication d. assassination
- The four caliphs introduced an administrative system.
a. intendant b. attendant c. innovative d. expected

E. Translate the following:

- The role of the caliphs in the unity of the Muslim state was critical, as they provided smooth transition after the Prophet's (BPUH) death.
٢. لقد ازدهر الإسلام وانتشر واتسعت رقعته في عهد الخلفاء الراشدين الأربعة لاتباعهم تعاليم النبي صلى الله عليه وسلم.

E. Write True or False for the Following Sentences:

- No prophet will come after the Prophet Muhammad (BPUH).
- Some men and even women started claiming prophethood.
- The companions easily accepted the Prophet's (BPUH) death.
- During the four caliphs reign, the spread of Islam was limited.
- The four caliphs grew the Muslim territory.

Lesson (2): The First Caliph Abū Bakr al-aṣṣiq

A. Vocabulary:

honorific
heels

شرفي successor
أعقاب unanimously

خليفة Emissary
بالإجماع uprising

مبعوث - نبي
انتفاضة

campaign	حملة	prophethood	نبوة	consolidate	يعزز
bequeath	يوصي	apostatize / apostate	يرتد / مرتد	crucial	ضروري
spine	شوكة - قوة	delude	يضل - يخدع	triumph	نصر

B. Text:

Abū Bakr (APWH) - 'Abd Allah ibn Abī Quhāfa - was a senior companion to the Prophet (BPUH). He was known by the honorific title "Al-Ṣiddīq". Upon the death of Prophet Muhammad (BPUH), many people refused to believe that the Prophet had died. However, standing firm as always, Abū Bakr spoke to the confused crowd and reminded them that the Prophet (BPUH) was a human being and that he had passed away and there was no reason for them to deny this. He recited the Qur'ānic verse: "Muhammad was but an emissary preceded by [other] emissaries who had already passed away before him. Will it be that, if he dies or is killed, you will turn on your heels?" (Qur'ān, 3:144).

أبو بكر الصديق - عبد الله بن أبي قحافة - كان من كبار صحابة النبي ﷺ. عُرف بلقب "الصديق". بعد وفاة النبي صلى الله عليه وسلم، شك كثير من الناس في وفاته. ومع ذلك، ثابتاً كعادته، خطب أبو بكر في الجموع المرتبكة، ونكرهم بأن النبي ﷺ بشر، وأنه قد توفي، ولا مانع من إتيان ذلك. ثم تلا الآية القرآنية: "وَمَا مُحَمَّدٌ إِلَّا رَسُولٌ قَدْ خَلَتْ مِنْ قَبْلِهِ الرُّسُلُ أَفَإِنْ مَاتَ أَوْ قُتِلَ انْقَلَبْتُمْ عَلَى أَعْقَابِكُمْ." (آل عمران: 144)

Immediately after the Prophet's (BPUH) death, Abū Bakr, who was unanimously accepted to be the first caliph, led the Muslim state. The Caliph (APWH) faced a number of uprisings during his reign, the most challenging of which was the Apostasy Wars. When the news of the death of the Prophet (BPUH) spread, some groups of people among the Arabs apostatized from Islam. They refused to pay the obligatory alms (Zaka). Another challenge was that some men and women claimed prophethood. Abū Bakr (APWH) decided to fight them all to consolidate the Muslim state again. He held a war council at Madīna as headquarters for the mass campaigns against the apostates who alleged prophethood and against those who refused to pay Zaka all over the Arab Peninsula. These battles, which Abū Bakr led and conducted, were the most crucial in the history of Islam.

بعد وفاة النبي ﷺ مباشرة، قاد أبو بكر - الذي أُجمع على أنه الخليفة الأول - الدولة الإسلامية. واجه الخليفة (رضي الله عنه) عدداً من الانتفاضات خلال فترة حكمه، وكان أصعبها حروب الردة. عندما انتشر خبر وفاة النبي ﷺ، ارتدت مجموعات من العرب عن الإسلام. رفضوا دفع الزكاة المفروضة. وكان التحدي الآخر هو ادعاء بعض الرجال والنساء النبوة. قرر أبو بكر (رضي الله عنه) قتالهم جميعاً لتوطيد أركان الدولة الإسلامية مرة أخرى. وعقد مجلس حرب في المدينة المنورة كمقر للحملة الجماعية ضد المرتكبين الذين ادعوا النبوة وضد أولئك الذين رفضوا دفع الزكاة في جميع أنحاء شبه الجزيرة العربية. كانت هذه المعارك، التي قادها وأدارها أبو بكر، الأكثر أهمية في تاريخ الإسلام.

The spine of the apostates and those who claimed prophethood was broken. Some people came back into Islam, but others remained deluded. In a few years, Islam triumphed and was seen and heard far and wide.

انكسرت أركان المرتكبين ومدعي النبوة. عاد بعض الناس إلى الإسلام، بينما ظل آخرون في ضلالهم. وفي غضون سنوات قليلة، انتصر الإسلام، وشاعت أخباره في كل مكان.

One of the greatest achievements that Abū Bakr (APWH) contributed to Islam was the compilation of the Noble Qur'ān. Although the Noble Qur'ān was available in sheets and on parchments, it was not collected in book form. There were hundreds of memorizers among the companions at that time. Umar suggested to collect the Noble Qur'ān in a form of book because many of those memorizers died over the years and were killed in the battles. Having approved Umar's suggestion, Abū Bakr (APWH) assigned Zayd ibn Thābit (APWH) to carry out the task.

من أعظم إنجازات أبو بكر الصديق (رضي الله عنه) في الإسلام جمع القرآن الكريم. ورغم توفره على شكل صحائف ومخطوطات، إلا أنه لم يُجمع في مصحف. كان هناك مئات من الصحابة يحفظونه في ذلك الوقت. اقترح عمر رضي الله عنه جمع القرآن الكريم في مصحف، لأن كثيراً من هؤلاء الحفظة ماتوا على مر السنين وقتلوا في المعارك. وبعد أن وافق أبو بكر على اقتراح عمر، كُلِّف زيد بن ثابت رضي الله عنه بهذه المهمة.

About two years and three months after being appointed caliph, at the age of 63, Abū Bakr (APWH) died. Before his death, he nominated Umar ibn al-Khaṭṭāb as his successor. He was buried next to the Prophet (BPUH). It is reported that he did not bequeath any money at all. He left only a servant, a camel and a garment that he ordered to be delivered to his succeeding caliph.

بعد عامين وثلاثة أشهر تقريباً من توليه الخلافة، توفي أبو بكر الصديق عن عمر يناهز ٦٣ عاماً وقبل وفاته، عين عمر بن الخطاب خليفة له. ودُفن بجوار النبي. ويروى أنه لم يوص بشيء، بل ترك خادماً وجمالاً وثوباً أمر بتسليمه إلى خليفته.

C. Answer the following questions:

- Why do you think many companions refused to believe that the Prophet died?
 - They loved and respected the prophet who was the greatest man ever.
- What challenges did Abū Bakr (APWH) have to face?
 - Some Arabs apostatized from Islam. Some men and women claimed prophethood.
- What sad event affected Muslims so badly that they got confused and could not believe it?
 - The death of the Prophet (BPUH).
- What was the most challenging uprising that Abū Bakr had to face? - The Apostasy Wars.
- Why did Abū Bakr hold a war-council at Madīna?
 - To fight the apostates to consolidate the Muslim state again.
- What was one of the greatest achievements Abū Bakr (APWH) contributed to Islam?
 - The compilation of the Noble Qur'ān.
- What did Abū Bakr leave when he died? - Only a servant, a camel and a garment.

D. Choose the correct answer:

- Things were happening too quickly and he was
 - combined
 - compact
 - conduct
 - confused
- The person who has rejected their religious or political beliefs is called
 - apostate
 - believer
 - humane
 - follower
- He's himself if he thinks it's going to be easy while, in fact, it is difficult.
 - deducing
 - deluding
 - deleting
 - diluting
- 'Umar Ibn al-Khaṭṭāb (APWH) was the of Abu Bakr (APWH).
 - successor
 - king
 - caliph
 - prophet
- He his daughter his entire estate.
 - suggested
 - invited
 - bequeathed
 - barked

E. Translate the following:

- Abū Bakr, who was unanimously accepted to be the first of Rightly-Guided Caliphs, led the Muslim state. He had to face a number of uprisings during his reign.

٢. إن أحد أهم إنجازات الخليفة الراشد أبي بكر الصديق رضي الله عنه جمع القرآن الكريم.

E. Write True or False for the Following Sentences:

- Abū Bakr was the first Rightly-Guided Caliph.
- None of the Arabs apostatized from Islam after the Prophet's death.
- Zayd ibn Thābit (APWH) was appointed to collect the Qur'ān.
- Before his death Abū Bakr nominated 'Umar ibn al-Khaṭṭāb as his successor.
- When Abū Bakr died, he left a great sum of money for his family.

Lesson (3): The Second Caliph "Umar Ibn al-Khaṭṭāb" الكلمة التي عرب من اللفظ

A. Vocabulary:

consult	يستشير	confer	يتشاور / يمنح	contributions	إسهامات
census	إحصاء	facilities	تسهيلات	judicial	قضائي
appealing	قبول	public treasury	المال العام	administration	إدارة
expansion	توسع	empire	إمبراطورية	subjugated	خضع
stability	ثبات	revolutionize	يثور	assassinate	يقتل

B. Text:

During his illness, Abū Bakr (APWH) consulted senior companions of the Prophet (BPUH) and decided to confer the caliphate on 'Umar ibn al-Khaṭṭāb (APWH). 'Umar was the second Rightly-Guided Caliph of Islam. He was known as "al-Faruq" (the one who distinguishes right from wrong) because of his fair character. He was the first caliph to be entitled Commander of the Faithful (Amīr al-Mūminīn).

خلال مرضه، استشار أبو بكر الصديق كبار الصحابة، وقرر تنصيب عمر بن الخطاب رضي الله عنه خليفةً. كان عمر ثاني الخلفاء الراشدين في الإسلام، وغُرف بالفاروق لعنله، وكان أول خليفة يُلقب بأمرير المؤمنين.

'Umar (APWH) made great contributions, not only to the geographic spread of Islam, but to the establishment of religious justice and intellectual freedom within the Islamic state. He introduced the Islamic lunar calendar to be used by all Muslims, ran public census, and started the construction of public facilities. He began what would be known as the Islamic judicial system, and improved the economic system. 'Umar (APWH) established the departments of military, police, taxation, education, and public treasury. He also set regulations on how regional rulers should interact with citizens. He organized the armies and appointed judges.

قدّم عمر بن الخطاب إسهاماتٍ جليلة، ليس فقط في نشر الإسلام جغرافياً، بل في إرساء العدالة الدينية والحرية الفكرية في الدولة الإسلامية. أدخل التقويم القمري الإسلامي ليستخدمه جميع المسلمين، وأجرى تعداداً عاماً للسكان، وبدأ في بناء المرافق العامة. كما أسس ما يُعرف بالنظام القضائي الإسلامي، وحسّن النظم الاقتصادي. أنشأ عمر إدارات الجيش والشرطة والضرائب والتعليم والزراعة العامة. كما وضع قواعد لكيفية تعامل حكام الأقاليم مع المواطنين. ونظّم الجيوش وعيّن القضاة.

During his reign, justice was enforced everywhere, and he proved to be a model of the administration of justice for those who subjected to him. 'Umar (APWH) was religiously tolerant and never forced anyone to convert into Islam. This attitude was appealing to Christians and Jews, who used to be under the suppressive reign of the Byzantines. The caliph allowed them to maintain their own religions. They only had to pay Jizya as they would not be recruited in the Muslim army. Jizya is one dinar or ten Dirhams imposed (yearly) on men who would fight and able to work and gain money as they would not be recruited in the Muslim army. Jizya was not imposed on the poor, women, children, old people, clergy men or servants. خلال فترة حكمه، تم تطبيق العدالة في كل مكان، وأثبت أنه نموذج في إدارة العدالة لمن خضعوا له. كان عمر متسامحاً دينياً ولم يُجبر أحداً على اعتناق الإسلام. كان هذا الموقف جذاباً للمسيحيين واليهود، الذين كانوا تحت الحكم القمعي للبيزنطيين. سمح لهم الخليفة بالحفاظ على ديانتهم. كان عليهم فقط دفع الجزية لأنهم لن يتم تجنيدهم في جيش المسلمين. الجزية هي دينار واحد أو عشرة دراهم مفروضة (سنوياً) على الرجال الذين سيقاوتون والقادرين على العمل وكسب المال لأنهم لن يتم تجنيدهم في جيش المسلمين. لم تُفرض الجزية على الفقراء أو النساء أو الأطفال أو كبار السن أو رجال الدين أو الخدم.

'Umar's greatest achievement was undoubtedly the expansion of the Islamic State. During his reign, the Islamic State ruled over all of Iraq, Egypt, Libya, Tripoli, Persia, Khurasan, Eastern Anatolia, South Armenia, and Sajistan. Nearly two thirds of the Eastern Roman Empire and the entire Sassanid Persian Empire, along with Jerusalem were also subjugated. These military victories helped spread the faith and knowledge of Islam. The Islamic State at his time was the second biggest in the world, after China's empire.

كان أعظم إنجازات عمر، بلا شك، توسيع الدولة الإسلامية في عهده، حكمت الدولة الإسلامية كامل العراق ومصر وليبيا وطرابلس وبلاد فارس وخراسان وشرق الأناضول وجنوب أرمينيا وسجستان. كما أخضعت ما يقرب من ثلثي الإمبراطورية الرومانية الشرقية والإمبراطورية الفارسية الساسانية بأكملها، بالإضافة إلى القدس. ساهمت هذه الانتصارات العسكرية في نشر الدين والمعرفة بالإسلام. كانت الدولة الإسلامية في عهده ثاني أكبر دولة في العالم بعد إمبراطورية الصين.

Once he had conquered new territories, 'Umar immediately set about establishing institutions of law. This had a far-reaching effect on the stability of the rapidly developing Islamic world and ensured that everyone, Muslim and non-Muslim, enjoyed full protection of the law. Another prominent achievement by 'Umar was the establishment of the Land Revenue Department. In fact, 'Umar revolutionized the system of land ownership by setting up a department entrusted with the task of surveying and assessing the newly conquered lands. This

ensured that the growing additions to the Islamic State could be smoothly and effectively managed. 'Umar's reign started in (15A.H.)634 CE and ended in 644 CE when he was assassinated while he was performing the Fajr Prayer by a Persian slave, Abū Lu'lu'a the Magian. With the consent of 'Aisha (APWH), he was buried next to Prophet Muhammad (BPUH) and Caliph Abū Bakr (APWH). Historians generally agree that 'Umar is one of the strongest and the most significant Muslim caliphs in history.

بمجرد أن فتح أراضٍ جديدة، شرع عمر على الفور في إنشاء مؤسسات قانونية. وكان لهذا تأثير بعيد المدى على استقرار العالم الإسلامي سريع التطور، وضمن تمتع الجميع، مسلمين وغير مسلمين، بالحماية الكاملة للقانون. وكان من الإنجازات البارزة الأخرى التي حققها عمر إنشاء دائرة إيرادات الأراضي. في الواقع، أحدث عمر ثورة في نظام ملكية الأراضي من خلال إنشاء دائرة مكلفة بمهمة مسح وتقييم الأراضي التي تم فتحها حديثاً. وقد ضمن هذا إمكانية إدارة الإضافات المتزايدة إلى الدولة الإسلامية بسلاسة وفعالية. بدأ عهد عمر في عام (١٥ هـ) ٦٣٤ م وانتهى في عام ٦٤٤ م عندما اغتيل أثناء أدائه لصلاة الفجر على يد عبد قارسي، أبو لؤلؤة المجوسي. وبموافقة عائشة رضي الله عنها، تم دفنه بجوار النبي محمد والخليفة أبو بكر. يتفق المؤرخون عموماً على أن عمر هو أحد أقوى وأهم الخلفاء المسلمين في التاريخ.

C. Answer the following questions:

- Why is Umar one of the strongest and the most significant Muslim caliphs in history?
- he enforced justice everywhere and made the Islamic State the second biggest in the world.
- How was 'Umar appointed to be the second of the Rightly-Guided Caliphs?
- How did Abū Bakr (APWH) decide to confer the caliphate on 'Umar (APWH)?
- Abū Bakr consulted senior companions and chose him.
- What helped spread the faith and knowledge of Islam?
- The expansion of the Islamic state.
- What contributed to the stability of the rapidly-developing Islamic world? – Law institutions.
- How did 'Umar revolutionize the system of land ownership?
- He set up a department to survey and assess the newly conquered lands.
- Who assassinated 'Umar (APWH)? - Abū Lu'lu'a the Magian.

D. Choose the correct answer:

- I need to with my colleagues on the proposals.
a. result b. consult c. insult d. insulate
- An honorary degree was on him by Al-Azhar University in 2015.
a. confirmed b. referred c. appended d. conferred
- All valuable towards the upkeep of the state will be gratefully received.
a. contaminations b. compilations c. communications d. contributions
- Students should be able to develop both their creative and powers
a. intellectual b. introvert c. examined d. attended
- He is a lion who will never be as he suggested.
a. surrender b. subjugated c. surround d. summoned

E. Translate the following:

- 'Umar (APWH) made great contributions to the establishment of justice and intellectual freedom across the Islamic state.

٢. تمتع المسلم وغير المسلم بالحريّة والعدالة والأمن في زمن الخلافة الراشدة.

E. Write True or False for the Following Sentences:

- 'Umar established religious justice and intellectual freedom in the Islamic state.
- Two thirds of the Eastern Roman Empire along with Jerusalem were subjugated to Islam during 'Umar's reign.
- The Islamic State at 'Umar's time was the biggest in the world.
- Muslim and non-Muslim alike, were given the full protection of the law.
- 'Umar was buried next to Prophet Muhammad (BPUH) and Caliph Abū Bakr (APWH).

A. Vocabulary:

stab	بطعن	committee	لجنة	trustees	أمناء / أوصياء
candidate	مرشح	elections	انتخابات	infidels	كفار
generous	كريم	impartial	متجرد / نزيه	mild	معتدل / لطيف
humane	إنساني	extraordinary	متميز / غير عادي	marine	بحري
navy	أسطول	compilation	جمع / تصنيف	autonomous	مستقل
delegated	مفوض	financial	مالي	besiege	يحاصر
bloodshed	إراقة الدماء	sneak	ينسل / يتسلل	rebels	متمردون / ثوار

B. Text:

The third caliph was 'Uthmān ibn 'Affān (APWH). He was one of the first people to embrace Islam in Mecca. 'Uthmān was a notable companion of Prophet Muhammad (BPUH).

الخليفة الثالث هو عثمان بن عفان رضي الله عنه، وكان من أوائل من أسلموا في مكة. وكان صحابياً جليلاً للنبي محمد. After 'Umar ibn al-Khaṭṭāb was stabbed, and before his death, he appointed a committee of trustees to elect the next caliph. There were six candidates proposed, namely 'Alī ibn Abī Ṭālib, 'Uthmān ibn 'Affān, 'Abd al-Raḥmān ibn 'Awf, Sa'd ibn Abī Waqqāṣ, al-Zubayr ibn al-'Awwām, and Ṭalḥa ibn 'Ubayd Allah. 'Uthmān was chosen as the third caliph. He was about 70 years old, the oldest companion to be appointed as caliph. He was the first caliph to be chosen by election. He was well-known among the Quraysh leaders and the companions of the Prophet for being a very generous, kind and respectful.

بعد طعن عمر بن الخطاب، وقيل وفاته، عين لجنة من الأمناء لانتخاب الخليفة القادم. قدم ستة مرشحين، هم: علي بن أبي طالب، وعثمان بن عفان، وعبد الرحمن بن عوف، وسعد بن أبي وقاص، والزبير بن العوام، وطلحة بن عبيد الله. اختير عثمان خليفة ثالثاً. كان عمره نحو سبعين عاماً، وهو أكبر الصحابة سناً الذين وُضِعوا للخلافة. وكان أول خليفة ينتخب بالانتخاب. اشتهر بين قادة قريش وأصحاب النبي ﷺ بكرمه ولطفه واحترامه.

Throughout his reign, 'Uthmān (APWH) continued the policies of the previous caliphs and followed in their footsteps. He did his best to ensure impartial justice for all, adopting mild and humane policies. He also continued the expansion of Islam to Libya, Cyprus, Afghanistan, Armenia, and Azerbaijan.

طوال فترة حكمه، اتبع عثمان رضي الله عنه سياسات الخلفاء السابقين، وسار على نهجهم. سعى جاهداً لضمان العدالة الناجزة للجميع، متبنياً سياسات معتدلة وإنسانية. كما واصل نشر الإسلام في ليبيا وقبرص وأفغانستان وأرمينيا وأذربيجان.

In fact, 'Uthmān had various extraordinary achievements. He built up the first Islamic military marine fleet and organized a navy. He changed administrative divisions and completed many public projects. His most significant achievement was the compilation of a standardized version of the Qur'ān in a single codex. It became the standard version from which copies of the Qur'ān were made.

في الواقع، حقق عثمان إنجازات استثنائية عديدة. فقد أنشأ أول أسطول بحري عسكري إسلامي، ونظم البحرية. وغير التقسيمات الإدارية، وأنجز العديد من المشاريع العامة. وكان أبرز إنجازاته جمع القرآن الكريم في مصحف واحد، ليصبح بذلك النسخة القياسية التي تُنسخ منها نسخ القرآن الكريم.

During his reign, 'Uthmān (APWH) had an autonomous military approach; he delegated military power to his trustworthy kinsmen, the case which led to more expansion of the Islamic state. He gave freedom to rulers to expand the Islamic territory.

في عهده، انتهج عثمان رضي الله عنه نهجاً عسكرياً مستقلاً، فوَّض السلطة العسكرية إلى أقاربه الموثوق بهم، مما أدى إلى توسع الدولة الإسلامية. كما منح الحكام حرية توسيع الأراضي الإسلامية.

'Uthmān's business experience and financial skills helped him introduce financial reforms that increased the wealth of the state. He was able to enact financial reforms that significantly led to the prosperity of the caliphate. Community income from the trade and land management sector increased. Almost all Muslims lived in prosperity. 'Uthmān (APWH) was generously willing to give away most of his wealth for the cause of Islam. However, rebels from all over the caliphate gathered in Madīna to protest against him and his house was besieged. Even

though his supporters outnumbered the rebels, he did not allow them to fight those rebels so as to prevent bloodshed among fellow believers. One of the rebels was able to sneak into the house and murder 'Uthmān (APWH) while reciting the Qur'ān.

ساعدت خبرة عثمان التجارية ومهاراته المالية في إدخال إصلاحات مالية زادت ثروة الدولة. وتمكن من سن إصلاحات مالية ساهمت بشكل كبير في ازدهار الخلافة. وارتفع دخل المجتمع من قطاع التجارة وإدارة الأراضي، وعاش جميع المسلمين تقريباً في رخاء. وكان عثمان (رضي الله عنه) على استعداد للتبرع بمعظم ثروته لتصرة الإسلام. إلا أن الثوار من جميع أنحاء الخلافة تجمعوا في المدينة المنورة احتجاجاً عليه، فحوصر منزله. ورغم أن أنصاره كانوا أكثر عدداً من الثوار، إلا أنه لم يسمح لهم بقتلهم حقناً للدماء بين المؤمنين. وتمكن أحد الثوار من التسلل إلى المنزل وقتل عثمان وهو يتلو القرآن.

'Uthmān ruled for a total of 12 years (644 – 656 CE) the case which made his reign the longest among the Rightly-Guided Caliphs. The Islamic caliphate expanded its territory during his reign reaching as far east as Pakistan and as far west as North Africa.

حكم عثمان اثني عشر عاماً (٦٤٤-٦٥٦م)، مما جعل حكمه الأطول بين الخلفاء الراشدين. وسعت الخلافة الإسلامية في عهده حدودها لتصل شرقاً إلى باكستان، وغرباً إلى شمال أفريقيا.

C. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think 'Uthmān built up the marine military fleet? – To expand the Islamic state.
2. Why did 'Umar (APWH) appoint a committee of trustees? – To elect the next caliph.
3. How many companions were proposed to be the next caliph After 'Umar (APWH)? – Six.
4. What are the Caliph 'Uthmān's distinguished achievements?
 - He built up the first military marine fleet, changed administrative divisions, completed many public projects and compiled a standardized version of the Qur'ān in a single codex.
5. Why did rebels from all over the caliphate gather in Madīna? – To protest against 'Uthmān.
6. Why did not the Caliph 'Uthmān's supporters fight the rebels?
 - Uthman didn't allow them to fight the rebels to prevent bloodshed among fellow believers.

D. Choose the correct answer:

1. The two sides called for a truce to avoid further
 - a. bloodshed
 - b. transaction
 - c. trade
 - d. blindness
2. There must be regulations to ensure the treatment of all refugees.
 - a. cruel
 - b. humane
 - c. savage
 - d. brutal
3. She was a/an and quiet person who never raised her voice.
 - a. dishonest
 - b. impolite
 - c. detergent
 - d. mild
4. It was of him to offer to pay for us this big sum of money.
 - a. infectious
 - b. deteriorated
 - c. generous
 - d. ambiguous
5. He holds the land as a for the infant.
 - a. triumph
 - b. truck
 - c. trustee
 - d. diamond

E. Translate the following:

1. 'Uthmān (APWH) was able to enact financial reforms that significantly led to the prosperity of the caliphate. He was generously willing to give away most of his wealth for the glory of Muslims.

٢. ينبغي للمسلم أن يعمل على حقن الدماء ونشر السلام.

E. Write True or False for the Following Sentences:

1. 'Umar appointed 'Uthmān to be the next caliph.
2. 'Uthmān gave freedom to each region to expand the Islamic territory.
3. 'Uthmān's financial skills did not help him to introduce financial reforms.
4. 'Uthmān (APWH) was killed while he was reciting Qur'ān.
5. The death of 'Uthmān (APWH) sparked a major conflict among Muslims.

Lesson 5: The Fourth Caliph 'Alī ibn Abī Tālib (APWH) الخليفة الرابع علي بن أبي طالب

A. Vocabulary:

fair	عادل	Levant	الشرق	punishment	عقوبة
civil war	حرب أهلية	Sabites	السبائيين	deteriorate	يفسد

marked	واضح / ملحوظ	compromise	تسوية	flee - fled	يتجنب / يتفادى
split	يشق / يمزق	anarchy	فوضى	provoke	يشير / يحرض
cultural	ثقافي	mischievous	أذى / مصدر أذى	arbitration	التحكيم
strategic	استراتيجي	thrive	يزدهر / ينجح	emergence	نشوء / بزوغ

B. Text:

The fourth caliph was 'Alī ibn Abī Tālib (APWH), who was raised by – Prophet Muhammad (BPUH). He was among the first Muslims and a close companion.

الخليفة الرابع هو علي بن أبي طالب رضي الله عنه، الذي رباه النبي ﷺ، وكان من أوائل المسلمين وصحابياً مقرباً. 'Alī was recognized as a devoted, fair, courageous, and wise Muslim. He was well known as a "Man of Honor." In fact he was selected to be the successor caliph of Uthmān as he was one of those who were appointed by Umar. His caliphate was not recognized by Uthmān's supporters in the Levant as they demanded the punishment of Uthmān's killers first, the case which caused a civil war to break out. When Alī tried to make a compromise with them to keep peace and unity, a group of his supporters – later known as the Kharijites - turned against him. عُرف عليّ بأنه مسلمٌ مُخلصٌ عادلٌ شجاعٌ وحكيمٌ. وعُرف بأنه "رجلٌ شريفٌ". بل اختير خليفة لعثمان، إذ كان من الذين عيّنهم عمر. لم يخترف أنصار عثمان في الشام بخلافته، إذ طالبوا أولاً بمعاينة قتل عثمان، وهي القضية التي أدت لاندلاع حرب أهلية. وعندما حاول عليّ الصلح معهم للحفاظ على السلام والوحدة، انقلب عليه جماعة من أنصاره - عُرفوا لاحقاً بالخوارج.

Several problems faced 'Alī when he took power. Firstly, there was a dire need to establish peace in the state and to ameliorate the deteriorating political situation. Secondly, he needed to take action against the assassins of 'Uthmān.

واجهت علياً عدة مشاكل عند توليه السلطة. أولاً، كانت هناك حاجة ماسة لإحلال السلام في الدولة وتحسين الوضع السياسي المتدهور. ثانياً، كان عليه اتخاذ إجراءات ضد قتل عثمان.

The reign of 'Alī (APWH) was notably marked by the occurrence of ordeals and troubles among Muslims. The main inciter of those troubles were the Sabites party. Their leader 'Abd Allah ibn Saba' was a Jew but pretended conversion to Islam during the reign of 'Uthmān ibn 'Affān (APWH). Ibn Saba primarily wanted to split the Muslims and spread anarchy within the Islamic society. He provoked Muslims to kill 'Uthmān. Ibn Saba was the main source of mischief and rebellion during the reign of 'Alī (APWH).

اتسم عهد علي (رضي الله عنه) بفتنٍ واضطراباتٍ بين المسلمين. وكان المحرض الرئيسي لتلك الاضطرابات حزب الصابئة. كان زعيمهم عبد الله بن سبأ يهودياً، لكنه تظاهر بالإسلام في عهد عثمان بن عفان (رضي الله عنه). كان هدف ابن سبأ الرئيسي هو شقّ صف المسلمين ونشر الفوضى في المجتمع الإسلامي. حرّض المسلمين على قتل عثمان. كان ابن سبأ المصدر الرئيسي للفتنة والتمرد في عهد علي (رضي الله عنه).

Although the reign of 'Alī did not witness new conquests, it was characterized with prominent civil and cultural accomplishments. In fact, 'Alī moved the capital of the state from Madīna to Kufa in Iraq. He chose this place due to its unique and strategic location in the center of the Islamic State. Consequently, Kufa was a very promising intellectual hub and destination for those seeking knowledge. One of the remarkable achievements by 'Alī was giving orders to furnish the letters of the Qur'ānic codex with vowel diacretic signs for the first time. Caliph 'Alī (APWH) ruled the Muslims for five years.

مع أن عهد عليّ لم يشهد فتوحات جديدة، إلا أنه اتسم بإنجازاتٍ مدنية وثقافية بارزة. بل نقل عليّ عاصمة الدولة من المدينة المنورة إلى الكوفة في العراق. وقد اختار هذا المكان لموقعه الفريد والاستراتيجي في قلب الدولة الإسلامية. ونتيجة لذلك، كانت الكوفة مركزاً فكرياً واعداً ومقصداً لطلاب العلم. ومن أبرز إنجازات عليّ إصداره أوامره بتشكيل حروف المصحف الشريف لأول مرة. وحكم الخليفة عليّ المسلمين خمس سنوات.

One night, Caliph 'Alī (APWH) rose and walked to the mosque to perform dawn prayer. When he got to the door, Ibn Muljam, a Jewish pretended conversion to Islam, sprang out and struck him. With the death of 'Alī (APWH) in the month of Ramadān in (42 A.H.) 661CE, the first and most successful phase in the history of Islam at that time came to an end.

ذات ليلة، قام الخليفة عليّ ومشى للمسجد لأداء صلاة الفجر. فلما وصل إلى الباب، قفز عليه ابن ملجم، وهو يهودي تظاهر بالإسلام، وضربه. وبوفاة عليّ في رمضان سنة (٤٢ هـ) ٦٦١م، انتهت أول وأجح مرحلة في تاريخ الإسلام آنذاك.

C. Answer the following questions:

- What caused a civil war to break out during the reign of 'Alī ibn Abī Ṭālib?
 - 'Uthmān's supporters demanded the punishment of 'Uthmān's killers first.
- What did 'Alī ibn Abī Ṭālib have to do when he took power?
 - He had to establish peace in the state and take action against the assassins of 'Uthmān.
- Why was 'Alī (APWH) selected to succeed Caliph 'Uthmān (APWH)?
 - Ali was one of those who were appointed by 'Umar (APWH).
- Why do you think Alī's (APWH) election was not recognized by 'Uthmān's (APWH) supporters in Levant?
 - Because he didn't punish 'Uthmān's killers.
- What was the main cause of ordeals and troubles among Muslims?
 - Ibn Saba' split the Muslims and spread anarchy within the Islamic society.
- What was the reign of Alī (APWH) characterized by?
 - Prominent civil and cultural accomplishments.
- When was the first split among Muslims and the emergence of Sunni and Shia?
 - When 'Alī (APWH) was murdered.

D. Choose the correct answer:

- The glass industry still there and makes great profits.

a. shaves	b. thrives	c. carves	d. serves
-----------	------------	-----------	-----------
- The announcement a storm of protest.

a. provokes	b. replies	c. responds	d. asks
-------------	------------	-------------	---------
- They need greater emphasis on defence planning.

a. civil	b. citizen	c. civilized	d. civilization
----------	------------	--------------	-----------------
- The punishment was very and all people supported it.

a. fix	b. fair	c. fear	d. further
--------	---------	---------	------------
- Her health rapidly, and she died shortly afterwards.

a. dominated	b. enhanced	c. deteriorated	d. improved
--------------	-------------	-----------------	-------------

E. Translate the following:

- Although 'Alī (APWH) was recognized as a devoted, fair, courageous, and wise Muslim scholar, his reign was marked by troubles caused by the Sabites party.
 ٢. سعى عبد الله بن سبأ اليهودي، كما كان يفعل أسلافه، إلى نشر الفتنة والشقاق بين المسلمين.

E. Write True or False for the Following Sentences:

- Alī (APWH) was a devoted, fair, courageous, and wise Muslim scholar.
- The main cause of troubles during the reign of 'Alī (APWH) was the Sabites party.
- The reign of 'Alī (APWH) comprised a lot of conquer.
- Caliph 'Alī (APWH) ruled the Muslims for ten years.
- A Jew murdered the Caliph 'Alī (APWH).

Unit (2): Transactions in Islam المعاملات في الإسلام

Lesson (1): The Islamic Perspective of Transaction المنظر الإسلامي لمعاملات

A. Vocabulary:

encompass	يشمل	comprehensiveness	شمولية	secular	دنيوي / علماني
malfunction	فشل / عطب	branches	فروع	divorce	طلاق
inheritance	ميراث	criminal	مجرم	offence	إساءة
balanced	متوازن	adultery	الزنا	transaction	معاملة

B. Text:

"And all things we have kept in a clear register" (Qur'ān, 36:12).

قال تعالى: "وكل شيء أحصيناه في إمام مبين." (يس: ١٢)

Islam is a complete and all-encompassing religion that promotes a balanced way of living. It encompasses the way of life as ordained by Allah (GBTH). Due to the divine origin of Islam, one of its characteristics is its comprehensiveness. Thus, it offers guidance to humans in all their actions. It does not separate secular from spiritual life. Islam unifies all domains of life, in the same way the body systems that work together to form a whole human being. Any malfunctioning system has an impact on the entire body.

الإسلام دينٌ شاملٌ وكاملٌ، يدعو إلى عيشٍ متوازن. إنه يُجسد منهج الحياة كما شرعه الله. وبفضل أصله الإلهي، فإن من سماته شموليته. فهو يُهدي البشر في جميع تصرفاتهم. لا يفصل بين الحياة الدنيا والروحانية. يؤخذ الإسلام جميع مجالات الحياة، كما تؤخذ أجهزة الجسم التي تعمل معاً لتكوين الإنسان الكامل. فأي خلل في أي جهازٍ يؤثر على الجسم بأكمله.

Islam comprises doctrine, jurisprudence and ethics. It is important to note that the scope of jurisprudence applies to various kinds of behaviors. This encompasses spiritual, mental, and physical aspects in addition to doctrinal and other practices. Such practices include personal behaviors, financial transactions, legal issues or social dealings.

يشتمل الإسلام على العقيدة والفقه والأخلاق. ومن المهم الإشارة إلى أن نطاق الفقه يشمل مختلف أنواع السلوك، بما في ذلك الجوانب الروحية والعقلية والجسدية، بالإضافة إلى الممارسات العقائدية وغيرها. وتشمل هذه الممارسات السلوكيات الشخصية، والمعاملات المالية، والقضايا الشرعية، والتعاملات الاجتماعية.

الإسلام = العقيدة + الفقه + الأخلاق

- Islam = Doctrine + Jurisprudence + Ethics

- Jurisprudence = Acts of Worship + Family Affairs + Criminal Law + Transaction Commercial

الفقه = العبادات + الأحوال الشخصية + القانون الجنائي + المعاملات التجارية (التقويم الإسلامي). (Islamic Finance).

Doctrine: The firm belief in Allah (GBTH), His Prophets and Angels, the Hereafter, Noble Books and the divine Decree. This represents the main foundations of Islam.

العقيدة: الإيمان الراسخ بالله تعالى، ورسله، وملائكته، واليوم الآخر، والكتب الكريمة، والقدر الإلهي. وهذا يمثل الأسس الرئيسية للإسلام.

Ethics: The practice of virtues, morality, and good manners. It governs the relationship between man and Allah (GBTH), people with each other, and people with other creatures.

الأخلاق: هي التحلي بالفضائل والأخلاق الحميدة، وهي التي تنظم علاقة الإنسان بالله (عز وجل)، وعلاقة الناس ببعضهم، وعلاقة الناس بمسائر المخلوقات.

Jurisprudence: The set of rules derived from both the Qur'an and the authentic traditions of Prophet Muhammad (BPUH) and scholarly opinions based on the Qur'an and the Sunna.

الفقه: مجموعة القواعد المشتقة من القرآن الكريم والأحاديث الصحيحة عن النبي محمد ﷺ وأراء العلماء المبنية على القرآن الكريم والسنة النبوية.

Family affairs: The rulings related to family law. This area deals with marriage, divorce, inheritance, guardianship and other related matters.

شؤون الأسرة: الأحكام المتعلقة بقانون الأسرة، ويشمل هذا المجال الزواج والطلاق والميراث والحضانة وغيرها من المسائل ذات الصلة.

Criminal law: It is known as the criminal law of Islam. This area deals with major offences like adultery, theft, murder, etc...

القانون الجنائي: يُعرف بالقانون الجنائي الإسلامي. يتناول هذا الفرع الجرائم الكبرى كالزنا والسرقة والقتل، وغيرها.

Commercial transactions: The rulings governing commercial transactions between people.

المعاملات التجارية: الأحكام التي تنظم المعاملات التجارية بين الناس.

Thus, Islam is comprehensive as it covers all parts of a person's life: worship, ethics and transactions. It guides humans to lead a balanced life. It cares about all components of a human being: spirit, intellect, body, beliefs, actions, and morality. Islam safeguards the human being against diseases of the heart and the body along with the vices of society. It provides religious guidance in different facets of life: social, marital, financial, and political, as well as internal and external affairs in times of peace and conflict.

وهكذا، فإن الإسلام شاملٌ لجميع جوانب حياة الإنسان: العبادات والأخلاق والمعاملات. وهو يهدي الإنسان إلى حياة متوازنة. ويهتم بجميع مكونات الإنسان: الروح والعقل والجسد، والعقيدة والفعل والأخلاق. ويقي الإسلام الإنسان من أمراض القلب والبدن، ومن رذائل المجتمع. ويقدم التوجيه الديني في مختلف جوانب الحياة: الاجتماعية والزوجية والمالية والسياسية، وكذلك في الشؤون الداخلية والخارجية في السلم والحرب.

C. Answer the following questions:

- How do you think Islam promotes a balanced way of living? – It covers all aspects of life.
- What does the Islamic jurisprudence (Fiqh) involve in terms of daily economic transactions? – It involves the rules of financial dealings.
- What does the scope of Islamic jurisprudence involve? – The set of rules derived from both the Qur'an and the authentic traditions of Prophet Muhammad (BPUH) and scholarly opinions based on the Qur'an and the Sunna.
- Why do you think that the Islamic systems are integrated in governing the human society? – They guide humans to lead a balanced life and care about all components of a human being.
- What does Jurisprudence of family affairs deal with? – Marriage, divorce, inheritance, guardianship and other related matters.
- Why do you think Islam is a comprehensive system of life? – Because it covers all parts of a person's life: worship, ethics and transactions.
- What does Islam generally care about? – Man's spirit, intellect, body, beliefs, actions, and morality.

D. Choose the correct answer:

- The programme presented a view of the two sides of the conflict.
a. balanced b. blanket c. digestive d. conduct
- Financial between companies increase productions.
a. translations b. transfusions c. transactions d. attractions
- The group all ages.
a. passes b. presses c. compresses d. encompasses
- The drug caused a in the brain.
a. friction b. fraction c. malfunction d. fiction
- Artificial intelligence is a of computer science.
a. drug b. branch c. bleach d. bark

E. Translate the following:

- Due to the divine origin of Islam, one of its characteristics is its comprehensiveness. It offers guidance to humans in all their actions. It does not separate secular from spiritual life.
٢. الإسلام دين، وعقيدة، وعبادة، ومعاملة وأخلاق.

E. Write True or False for the Following Sentences:

- Islam separates between secular and spiritual life.
- Islamic systems do not integrate the human society happiness.
- Islam segregates spiritual and mental from physical and faith from other practices.
- Jurisprudence is related to limited forms of worship.
- Islam safeguards the human being from the vices in society.

Lesson (2): Economic System of Islam نظام الاقتصاد في الإسلام**A. Vocabulary:**

sustenance	استدامة	livelihood	الفوت	satisfaction	كافية
framework	هيكل	permissible	مسموح	prohibited	ممنوع / محرم
gap	فجوة	imbalance	عدم التوازن	free market	السوق الحرة
gambling	الميسر	legitimate	شرعي	uncertainty	الغمر

B. Text:

Islam identifies that striving for sustenance is essential. One has to earn the livelihood for oneself and one's dependents. However, Islam governs the economic system and gives clear directives to ensure a balanced and sustainable economy. The economic system of Islam seeks morality, social justice, unity of society, wealth circulation, and satisfaction of basic human needs. It is firmly based on the Noble Qur'an and the Sunna of the Prophet (BPUH). This

system is not a mere theory. The theoretical framework of the Qur'an and the prophetic practices are combined together, establishing a fair economic system.

يُفَرِّقُ الإسلام بضرورة السعي لكسب الرزق، إذ يجب على المرء كسب رزقه لنفسه وللمن يعول. ومع ذلك، يُنظِّم الإسلام النظام الاقتصادي، ويُقدِّم توجيهات واضحة لضمان اقتصاد متوازن ومستدام. يسعى النظام الاقتصادي الإسلامي إلى الأخلاق، والعدالة الاجتماعية، ووحدة المجتمع، وتداول الثروة، وتلبية الحاجات الإنسانية الأساسية. وهو قائم على القرآن الكريم وسنة النبي ﷺ. هذا النظام ليس مجرد نظرية، بل هو مزيج من الإطار النظري للقرآن الكريم والسنة النبوية الشريفة، مؤسسًا نظامًا اقتصاديًا عادلًا.

The economic system of Islam regulates all financial and economic activities based on a set of legal rulings. Such a set stipulates what is required, recommended, permissible, reprehensible, or prohibited. This applies to money, loans, inheritance, property, etc...

يُنظِّم النظام الاقتصادي الإسلامي جميع الأنشطة المالية والاقتصادية بناءً على مجموعة من الأحكام الشرعية، تُحدِّد ما هو واجب، أو مُستحب، أو جائز، أو مكروه، أو محرم. وينطبق هذا على المال، والقرض، والميراث، والملكية، وغيرها.

Islam holds that each person is responsible for his or her deeds in this life. Therefore, it places great emphasis on one's freedom in all actions and at all aspects. This Islamic concept of economic freedom means that everyone has the right to gain, possess, enjoy, and use wealth. It involves the freedom to pursue any work as long as it is not through a prohibited way. There is no limit to a person's wealth or property.

يرى الإسلام أن كل إنسان مسؤول عن أعماله في هذه الحياة. ولذلك، يُؤلِّي أهمية بالغة لحرية الفرد في جميع تصرفاته وفي جميع جوانبها. ويعني هذا المفهوم الإسلامي للحرية الاقتصادية أن لكل فرد الحق في اكتساب الثروة وامتلاكها والتمتع بها واستخدامها. ويشمل ذلك حرية ممارسة أي عمل ما دام غير محرم. فلا حدود لثروة الإنسان أو ممتلكاته.

However, Islamic economics lays particular stress on achieving economic justice, which involves bridging the wealth gap to unite society. In fact, the best way for humanity to address the issue of economic imbalance and wealth gap is through the Zaka system.

ومع ذلك، يُؤلِّي الاقتصاد الإسلامي اهتمامًا خاصًا لتحقيق العدالة الاقتصادية، التي تتضمن سد فجوة الثروة لتوحيد المجتمع. في الواقع، يُعدُّ نظام الزكاة أفضل سبيل للبشرية لمعالجة مشكلة الاختلال الاقتصادي وفجوة الثروة.

Islam promotes free market with due respect of government policies and due fundamental ethics of business. It keeps an eye on the market, too, so that one does not cross the limit in freedom or violate business ethics. While it forbids any interest-based business, it provides alternative profit-sharing avenues. While it prohibits gambling, it gives options for legitimate competitions. Upon forbidding uncertainty-based dealings, it opens the door for cooperation and service-based scheme (takāful). All these are processes meant to sustain the economy and to share the profit among the maximum number of people in society.

يُشجِّع الإسلام على حرية السوق مع احترام سياسات الحكومة وأخلاقيات العمل الأساسية. كما يُراقب السوق، حتى لا يتجاوز المرء حدود الحرية أو ينتهك أخلاقيات العمل. وبينما يُحرِّم أي عمل قائم على الربا، فإنه يُتيح سبيلًا بديلًا لتقاسم الأرباح. وبينما يُحرِّم المقامرة، فإنه يُتيح خيارات للمنافسة المشروعة. وبتحريمه التعاملات القائمة على عدم اليقين، يفتح الباب للتعاون وبرامج التكافل. جميع هذه العمليات تهدف إلى استدامة الاقتصاد وتقاسم الأرباح بين أكبر عدد ممكن من أفراد المجتمع.

C. Answer the following questions:

1. How does the Islamic economic system differ from other economic systems?
- It is firmly based on the Noble Qur'an and the Sunna of the Prophet (BPUH).
2. Why do Islamic economics place a strong emphasis on achieving economic justice?
- To bridge the wealth gap and unite society.
3. What does the Islamic economic system of Islam seek?
- Morality, social justice, social unity, wealth circulation and satisfaction of basic human needs.
4. What does the Islamic economic system emphasize?
- One's freedom in all actions.
5. Why does Islam place great importance on a person's freedom in all actions?
- Because each person is responsible for their deeds in their life.
6. What is the best way for humanity to address the issue of economic imbalance?
- Zaka system.
7. Why does Islam promote free market and keep an eye on it?
- So that one does not cross the limit in freedom or violate business ethics.

D. Choose the correct answer:

- The report provides a for further research.
a. framework b. firework c. dictatorship d. diamond
- Many people are covered by employer-provided health
a. assurance b. reassure c. insurance d. commerce
- Economic is essential for the of production.
a. sustenance b. suspense c. appendix d. occurrence
- The company is trying to improve customer
a. transaction b. suffocation c. dimension d. satisfaction
- The boat was his main source of
a. lively b. alive c. life d. livelihood

E. Translate the following:

- The Islamic economic system of Islam is not a mere theory. The theoretical framework of the Qur' ān and the prophetic practices are combined together, establishing a fair economic system.
يحرص الإسلام على سد حاجت للناس بالطرق المشروعة للمحافظة على السلم المجتمعي.

E. Write True or False for the Following Sentences:

- The Islamic economic system seeks the satisfaction of human needs.
- There is a limit to a person's wealth and property.
- The Islamic economic system places no emphasis on achieving economic justice.
- The Islamic economic system respects governmental policies and ethics of business.
- The Islamic economic system opens the door for cooperation and service-based activities.

Lesson (3): Basic Rules قواعد أساسية

A. Vocabulary:

insurance	تأمين	unlawful	غير قانوني / غير شرعي	harming	إيذاء
speculation	التنظر	intentionally	عمدا	retaliation	ثأر / الانتقام
dispute	نزاع	persist	يصر على / يثابر	risk	مخاطرة

B. Text:

There is no fixed list of permitted businesses in Islam. Originally, all kinds of business transactions are originally permissible except for what is deemed unlawful by Muslim jurists. One main principle reflected in the Prophet's tradition is that: "There should be neither harm nor reciprocating harm" (Ibn Majah). It is general in nature and can be applied to any situation. Nobody should intentionally hurt another person, and no one should hurt someone as a retaliation for something done to them. Thus, any action, dealing or transaction that causes any harm or reciprocates harm, is not permissible. No contract should be made for selling or buying forbidden products, or concluded on the basis of usury, gambling or uncertainty (gharar). لا توجد قائمة ثابتة للأعمال التجارية المسموح بها في الإسلام. في الأصل، جميع أنواع المعاملات التجارية مباحة إلا ما حرمه الفقهاء. ومن المبادئ الأساسية التي تجلت في حديث النبي ﷺ: "لا ضرر ولا ضرار" (رواه ابن ماجه). هذا عام، ويُطبق على كل حال. فلا يجوز لأحد أن يؤذي غيره عمداً، ولا أن يؤذي أحداً رداً على ما فعل له. فلا يجوز أي فعل أو معاملة أو معاملة تُسبب ضرراً أو تُبادلته. ولا يجوز عقد بيع أو شراء سلعة محرمة، ولا إبرام عقد على الربا أو القمار أو الغرر.

The Islamic economic system clearly stipulates that uncertainty corrupts the business deals. It is historically recorded that Prophet Muhammad (BPUH) forbade any business that involves uncertainty. In this vein, it was reported on the authority of Anas ibn Mālik that the Prophet (BPUH) forbade the sale of grapes until they ripe and the sale of grain until it becomes hard. Given this fact, the Muslim jurists established this principle as a basis for prohibiting any kind of business with evident uncertainty or doubt. The rationale behind such prohibition is to avoid any potential disputes between the two contracting parties.

ينص النظام الاقتصادي الإسلامي بوضوح على أن الشك مفسد للمعاملات التجارية. وقد ثبت تاريخياً أن النبي محمد ﷺ نهى عن كل عمل ينطوي على شك. وفي هذا السياق، روي عن أنس بن مالك رضي الله عنه أن النبي ﷺ نهى عن بيع العنب

حتى ينضج، وعن بيع الحب حتى يتصلب. وبناءً على ذلك، اتخذ الفقهاء المسلمون هذا المبدأ أساساً لتحريم كل نوع من أنواع التجارة التي يشوبها شك أو ريب. والسبب وراء هذا التحريم هو تجنب أي نزاع محتمل بين الطرفين المتعاقدين.

Another principle is 'necessities render prohibited things legally permissible'. If a necessity persists and there is no way out but to adopt the forbidden thing, one is allowed to go for it within specific limits. This is applicable to any situation even in financial and business dealings. But there are certain conditions to be met in terms of this necessity. It has to be clearly defined to determine if it is really necessary or not.

مبدأ آخر هو أن "الضرورات تبيح المحظورات". فإذا استمرت الضرورة ولم يكن هناك مفر من المحظور، جاز إتباعه ضمن حدود معينة. وهذا ينطبق على كل حالة، حتى في المعاملات المالية والتجارية. ولكن لهذه الضرورة شروط يجب توافرها، ويجب تحديدها بوضوح لتحديد ما إذا كانت ضرورية حقاً أم لا.

"Al-ghunm bil-ghurm" (entitlement to profit is dependent on taking risks) is another basic principle related to business dealings. It means there is no reward without a risk; thus, profit sharing should be accompanied with risk sharing too. To gain a profit necessarily means one has to agree to bear losses too. This principle plays a big role in all financial dealings.

"الغنم بالغرم" مبدأ أساسي آخر في المعاملات التجارية. يعني أنه لا ربح دون مخاطرة، لذا، ينبغي أن تقترن مشاركة الأرباح بتقاسم المخاطرة. فالربح يعني بالضرورة تحمل الخسارة. ويلعب هذا المبدأ دوراً هاماً في جميع المعاملات المالية.

C. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main principle in Islamic business transactions?
- There should be neither harm nor reciprocating harm.
2. How does uncertainty affect the business deal? - It corrupts the business deals.
3. What are the characteristics of permitted businesses in Islam?
- All businesses are permissible except for those that include uncertainty, usury, or gambling.
4. Why do you think any transaction that causes harm is not permissible?
- Because this harms one of the contracting parties.
5. Why is any business dealing with evident uncertainty not permitted?
- To avoid any potential disputes between the two contracting parties.
6. What would happen if a necessity persists and there is no way out but to adopt the forbidden transaction? - One is allowed to go for the forbidden transaction within specific limits.
7. What principle has a big role in financial dealings? - Entitlement to profit depends on taking risks.

D. Choose the correct answer:

1. Usury is in the Islamic jurisprudence.
a. legitimate b. legal c. lawful d. unlawful
2. Any business venture contains an element of
a. risk b. dangerous c. endanger d. risky
3. She may face for speaking out.
a. revolution b. retaliation c. division d. condition
4. The employees have been in with management for three weeks.
a. detect b. divide c. delete d. dispute
5. You should not in blaming yourself for what happened.
a. insist b. resist c. persist d. aspect

E. Translate the following:

1. No contract should be made for selling or buying forbidden products, or concluded on the basis of usury, gambling or uncertainty (gharar).
٢. نهى النبي صلى الله عليه وسلم عن الغرر في العقود لأنه يفضي إلى النزاع.

E. Write True or False for the Following Sentences:

1. There is a limited list of permitted businesses in Islam.
2. Nobody should intentionally deceive another person.
3. Certainty corrupts the business deal.
4. Any dealings that might lead to disputes between the parties are forbidden.
5. There is no reward without a risk.

A. Vocabulary:

conditions	شروط	illegitimate	غير شرعي	compulsion	إكراه
exploitation	استغلال	undermine	يقوض / يتلف	merchandise	بضائع
naive	غر / ساذج	gullible	ساذج	purchase	بشترى / يبيع
owner	مالك	customer	مستهلك / زبون	fraud	خداع / حيلة
deceit	غش	withdrawal	انسحاب	waive	يتنازل
defer	يؤجل	assembly	اجتماع / مجلس العقد	contract	عقد
handle	يتناول / يعامل	compensation	تعويض	retain	يحفظ بـ

B. Text:

These are some basic principles on which Islamic scholars and jurists laid down some conditions and ethics that must be followed in any business dealing, or else, the deal will be invalid. Some of these conditions are: 1. Both the seller and the buyer should agree on the terms of a deal without any compulsion, oppression or exploitation from any partner. 2. Dealing should not be for any forbidden things that Islamic laws made unlawful, such as usury, wine, gambling etc... These things undermine prosperity and peace and may result in social harm, imbalance and corruption.

هذه بعض المبادئ الأساسية التي وضعها علماء الإسلام وفقهاؤه، ووضعوا لها شروطاً وأدباً يجب مراعاتها في أي تعامل تجاري، وإلا كان التعامل باطلاً. من هذه الشروط: ١. أن يتفق البائع والمشتري على شروط التعامل دون إكراه أو ظلم أو استغلال من أي شريك. ٢. أن لا يكون التعامل في أي من المحرمات التي حرمها الإسلام، كالربا والخمر والقمار وغيرها... فهذه الأمور تقوض الرخاء والسلام، وقد تؤدي إلى ضرر اجتماعي واختلال توازن وفساد.

Some of the most important ethics in transactions are: 1. Truthfulness: to be truthful in your words, and refrain from false swearing as a false oath leads to Hell. 2. Honesty: not to hide any defect in the merchandise, or deceive a naive or a gullible person. 3. Fair: to love for others what you love for yourself and treat everyone equally.

من أهم آداب التعامل: ١. الصدق: أن تكون صادقاً في أقوالك، وتجنب الحلف الكاذب، فاليمين الكاذبة تقود إلى النار. ٢. الأمانة: أن لا تخفي عيباً في السلعة ولا تخدع ساذجاً. ٣. العدل: أن تحب للآخرين ما تحب لنفسك، وتعامل الجميع بالمساواة.

Conditions for the sellers and buyers to have a right contract: There are conditions for the sellers and buyers such as: They should be adult persons. They should be sane. They should have the intention to sell and purchase an item. They have not been coerced to sell or buy. They should be the rightful owners of what they wish to sell.

شروط صحة عقد البيع والشراء: يشترط في البائع والمشتري أن يكونا بالغين، عاقلين، يمتلكان نية بيع وشراء السلعة، يكونا غير مكرهين على البيع أو الشراء، يكونا مالكين شرعيين لما يرغبون في بيعه.

The principle of choice: In order to protect the customer from fraud and deceit in transaction, there is "the principle of choice" – the right of withdrawal, which involves many types, such as: 1. Khiyār al-Majlis: the right of canceling the deal before leaving the business meeting, unless it is specified as "final" in the deal. 2. Khiyār ash-Shart: the right of canceling or returning the goods based on a condition to this effect in the contract. 3. Khiyār ar-ru'yah: when you buy an item based on the description of the seller, you have the right to cancel the deal after actually seeing or handling the item and finding that it is of a lower or different quality. 4. Khiyār al'ayb: when you find out that the commodity is defective, you have two choices: either to cancel the deal or retain it with compensation.

مبدأ الاختيار: لحماية العميل من الاحتيال والخداع في المعاملة، يوجد "مبدأ الاختيار" - حق الانسحاب، والذي يتضمن أنواعاً عديدة، مثل: ١. خيار المجلس: الحق في إلغاء الصفقة قبل مغادرة اجتماع العمل، ما لم يتم تحديدها على أنها "نهائية" في الصفقة. ٢. خيار الشرط: الحق في إلغاء أو إرجاع البضائع بناءً على شرط بهذا المعنى في العقد. ٣. خيار الرؤية: عندما تشتري سلعة بناءً على وصف البائع، يحق لك إلغاء الصفقة بعد رؤية السلعة أو التعامل معها بالفعل وإيجاد أنها ذات جودة أقل أو مختلفة. ٤. خيار العيب: عندما تكتشف أن السلعة معيبة، يكون لديك خياران: إما إلغاء الصفقة أو الاحتفاظ بها مع التعويض.

C. Answer the following questions:

- When can a deal be illegitimate in the Islamic law?
- If there is compulsion, oppression or exploitation from any partner.
- What will happen if there is compulsion, oppression or exploitation in the deal?
- It will be illegitimate.
- What are the most important ethics in Islamic transactions? - Truthfulness, honesty and fairness.
- What are the conditions that make sellers and buyers transactions acceptable?
- They should be sane and adult rightful owners who have the intention to sell and purchase.
- How does the Islamic economic system protect the customer from fraud and deceit in transactions? - A customer the right of withdrawal in many cases.
- What is the benefit of the principle of choice?
- It protects the customer from fraud and deceit in transaction.

D. Choose the correct answer:

- He was paid for injuries at work.
a. contamination b. communication c. compulsion d. compensation
- He was accused of lies and
a. debate b. detect c. deceit d. demerit
- One of the in the contract is that we do not build on the land.
a. commissions b. conditions c. suspicions d. assumptions
- The car had only one previous
a. owner b. donor c. tuition d. caller
- You are under no to pay for the goods immediately.
a. compulsion b. community c. society d. confusion

E. Translate the following:

- Both the seller and the buyer should agree on the terms of deal without any compulsion, oppression or exploitation from any partner.
٢. ينبغي على المسلم أن يكون صادقا في بيعه وشراؤه، وأن يتجنب الأيمان الكاذبة.

E. Write True or False for the Following Sentences:

- It is not important to show the defect in the merchandise.
- When someone sells something while sleeping, the contract is considered valid.
- You can sell what you do not really own.
- The buyer has no right of returning the commodity sold for a price that is much higher than its actual value.
- When you find out that the commodity is defective, you can cancel the deal.

Unit (5): Islamic Values القيم الإسلامية**Lesson (1): Moderateness الاعتدال / الوسطية****A. Vocabulary:**

fundamental	أساسي	moderation	اعتدال / وسطية	temperance	ضبط النفس
foundation	أسس	exaggeration	مغالاة / مبالغة / إفراط	carelessness	إهمال / تفريط
midway	وسطي	cowardice	الجبن	diminishment	تفريط
recklessness	تهور	virtuous	فاضل	justness	عدالة
extremism	تطرف	overburden	مغالاة / مبالغة	boundaries	حدود

B. Text:

One of the key principles and fundamental concepts that Islam promotes is moderateness. It is a central characteristic of the Islamic creed. Tolerance, temperance, and justice serve as the foundations for the Islamic understanding of moderateness.

من أهم المبادئ والمفاهيم الأساسية التي يدعو إليها الإسلام الاعتدال. فهو سمة جوهرية من سمات العقيدة الإسلامية. ويشكل التسامح والاعتدال والعدل أسس المفهوم الإسلامي للاعتدال.

Moderateness simply means living a balanced lifestyle away from extremes; a lifestyle that is midway between excessiveness or exaggeration on one hand and carelessness or diminishment on the other hand. This midway is a virtue that includes all actions which refuse extreme tendencies. In a situation that requires an action, cowardice and recklessness are the two extremes, but courage is the virtuous position between them. The concept of moderateness in Arabic is (Wasafiyah). "And it is thus that We appointed you to be the community of the moderate" [Qur'ān, 2:143]

الاعتدال يعني ببساطة اتباع نمط حياة متوازن بعيداً عن التطرف؛ نمط حياة يقع في منتصف الطريق بين الإفراط والمبالغة من جهة، والتهاون والاحتياط من جهة أخرى. هذا الوسط فضيلة تشمل جميع الأفعال التي تنبذ التطرف. في المواقف التي تستدعي الفعل، يكون الجبن والتهور طرفي النقيض، أما الشجاعة فهي الفضيلة بينهما. مفهوم الاعتدال في اللغة العربية هو (الوسطية). (وَقَدْ كَلَّمْنَاكُمْ أُمَّةً وَاسِطَةً) [البقرة: ١٤٣].

Being just or fair is the first step toward the moderate lifestyle that is best for humankind. Islam acknowledges that there is a fine line between moderateness and extremism, even in the religious concerns. A Muslim is said to be acting against religion if s/he crosses limits in ways that cause harm to oneself or others or make religion difficult for people to handle. On the contrary, Islam calls for compassion, fairness, justice, and moderateness. "Do not exaggerate in your religion." [Qur'ān, 4:171]

إن العدل والإنصاف هو الخطوة الأولى نحو أسلوب حياة معتدل يُناسب البشرية. يُقر الإسلام بوجود خطير رفيع بين الاعتدال والتطرف، حتى في الشؤون الدينية. ويُعتبر المسلم مخالفاً للدين إذا تجاوز حدوده بما يلحق الضرر بنفسه أو بالآخرين أو يُصعب على الناس التعامل مع الدين. على العكس، يدعو الإسلام إلى الرحمة والإنصاف والعدل والاعتدال. (لَا تَغْلُوا فِي دِينِكُمْ) [القرآن، سورة النساء، الآية ١٧١].

Thus, moderateness in Islam means not to overburden oneself and others or neglect the limit set by Allah (GBTH) and observed by the Prophet (BPUH), nor to neglect such a limit. A moderate Muslim adheres to the boundaries set by Allah (GBTH) and does his best to follow the path of the Prophet (BPUH). This applies to all acts and deeds of worship, transactions and dealings with others. "Allah wishes to lighten your burdens, for, man is created weak." [Qur'ān, 4:28]

وهكذا، فإن الاعتدال في الإسلام يعني عدم إرهاق النفس والآخرين، أو إهمال حد الله تعالى الذي سنّه رسول الله صلى الله عليه وسلم، أو إغفاله. فالمسلم المعتدل يلتزم بحدود الله تعالى، ويسعى جاهداً لاتباع نهجه. وهذا ينطبق على جميع العبادات والمعاملات والتعاملات. (يُرِيدُ اللَّهُ أَنْ يُخَفِّفَ عَنْكُمْ وَخُلِقَ الْإِنْسَانُ ضَعِيفًا) [النساء: ٢٨].

C. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think moderateness is central in Islam?
- Because it means living a balanced lifestyle away from extremes.
2. When is a Muslim considered to be acting moderate?
- When he is just and fair and if he doesn't exaggerate in his religion.
3. What is a central characteristic of the Islamic creed? – Moderateness.
4. Why do you think tolerance serves as the foundation for moderateness?
- Tolerance leads to accepting others and working together towards a better society.
5. What is the first step to the moderate lifestyle? - Being just or fair.
6. What do you think makes the religion difficult for people to handle?
- When one overburdens oneself and others and goes beyond the limit set by Allah.
7. What should a Muslim abide by? - The boundaries set by Allah and the path of the Prophet.

D. Choose the correct answer:

1. I think this latest offer is to settle the dispute.
a. fairly b. fairness c. affair d. fair
2. We should our demands so that they can be neither exhausting nor insufficient.
a. moderate b. exaggerate c. diminish d. belittle
3. Their ideas are too for me. They are far from being reasonable.
a. straight b. extreme c. esteem d. reliable

4. We had reached the point between the two points of view.
 a. midway b. alley c. dryness d. carved
5. He lived an entirely life. He is a straight man.
 a. tedious b. serious c. virtuous d. curious

E. Translate the following:

1. A moderate Muslim abides by the limits set by Allah (GBTH) and does his best to follow the path of the Prophet (BPUH).
 ٢. الوسطية تعني التوازن والبعد عن التطرف في الدين وفي شتى مجالات الحياة.

E. Write True or False for the Following Sentences:

- Moderateness means living a balanced lifestyle.
- Islam calls for all actions that refuse extreme tendencies.
- Islam calls for compassion, fairness, justice, and moderateness.
- Moderateness in Islam means to overburden oneself and others.
- Tolerance does not apply to all acts and deeds of worship and transactions.

Lesson (2): A Moderate Lifestyle أسلوب الحياة المعتدل

A. Vocabulary:

nurture	تربية	facets	الأوجه	reap	يحصد
miser	بأس	spendthrift	مبذر	blameworthy	ملوم
sufficiency	كفاية	begging	يتكلف / يتسول	adhere	يتمسك
deficiency	نقص / عجز	simplicity	البساطة	sphere	نواحي / مناحي
overt	صريح / واضح	nonviolent	عدم العنف	preserve	يحفظ

B. Text:

Given that Islam is a religion that encompasses more than just acts of worship, Muslims are encouraged to practice and nurture moderateness in all facets of their lives in order to reap the benefits of both the world and the hereafter.

وبما أن الإسلام دين يشمل أكثر من مجرد أعمال العبادة، فإن المسلمين مدعوون إلى ممارسة وتربية الاعتدال في جميع جوانب حياتهم من أجل جني فوائد الدنيا والآخرة.

Islam encourages Muslims to maintain moderateness in their wealth. Consequently, Muslims are guided to spend their wealth in the cause of Allah (GBTH), in a moderate manner. In this sense, a midway between being a miser and a spendthrift is required: 'And let not your hand be tied (like a miser) to your neck, nor stretch it forth to its utmost reach (like a spendthrift), so that you become blameworthy and in severe poverty.' [Qur'ān, 17:29]

يحث الإسلام المسلمين على الاعتدال في أموالهم، فيرشدهم لإتقانها في سبيل الله باعتدال. وبهذا المعنى، لا بد من وجود حالة وسط بين البخل والإسراف: (وَلَا تَجْعَلْ يَدَكَ مَغْلُولَةً إِلَىٰ عُنُقِكَ وَلَا تَبْسُطْهَا كُلَّ الْبَسْطِ فَتَقْعُدَ لَوْهَا مَخْسُورًا) [الإسراء: ٢٩].

When a senior companion was about to die, he wanted to give all his money in charity for the cause of Allah (GBTH). However, the Prophet (BPUH) stopped him from doing so and said to him, 'It is better that you leave your family members in sufficiency than leave them in want, begging others. (Bukhari).

لما حضر أحد كبار الصحابة الموت، أراد أن يتصدق بكل ماله في سبيل الله، فنهاه النبي ﷺ وقال له: «إن تدع أهلك على غنى خير من أن تدعهم عالة يتكففون الناس». (رواه البخاري).

There is a report that clearly exemplifies the true sense of moderateness. When the Prophet (BPUH) established a bond of brotherhood between Salmān and Abū al-Dardā', one time Salmān paid a visit to Abū al-Dardā' and found that he observes prayers all night and fasts every day, so Salmān set the appropriate rules. Salmān said, "Your Lord has a right on you, and your soul has a right on you, and your wife has a right on you, thus you should give the rights of all those who have a right on you). Later on, Abū al-Dardā' visited the Prophet (BPUH) and mentioned that to him. The Prophet said, "Salmān has spoken the truth." (Bukhari)

هناك حديثٌ يُجسد بوضوح معنى الاعتدال الحقيقي. فلما أخی النبي بين سلمان وأبي الدرداء، زار سلمان أبا الدرداء فوجدَهُ يقوم الليل ويصوم النهار، فوضع له سلمان القواعد المناسبة. قال سلمان: "إن لربك عليك حقًا، وإن لنفسك عليك حقًا، وإن لزوجك عليك حقًا، فأبِ حق كل ذي حق". ثم زار أبو الدرداء النبي وذكر ذلك له، فقال النبي: "صدق سلمان". (البخاري)

Maintaining moderateness in religious, social and personal matters is required. It is very challenging to adhere to the midway between the two ends of the extremes: exaggeration and deficiency. However, if we work hard to adhere to that as a habit in all spheres of our lives, it will eventually lead to success in this life and in the Hereafter.

إن الاعتدال في الأمور الدينية والاجتماعية والشخصية أمر مطلوب. ومن الصعب جداً الالتزام بالوسطية بين طرفي التطرف: المبالغة والتقصير. ولكن إذا حرصنا على الالتزام بذلك في جميع مناحي حياتنا، فسنبوذي ذلك في نهاية المطاف إلى النجاح في الدنيا والآخرة.

In conclusion, Islam promotes moderateness and simplicity in practice in every aspect of life as it is the ideal way that one must follow. Islam is the religion linked to mercy, encouraging kindness and moral behavior. It discourages overt violence and encourages nonviolent methods. In fact, it is the balanced manner of life for individuals through the practice of these Islamic virtues that establish peace in society.

وختاماً، يدعو الإسلام إلى الاعتدال والبساطة في جميع مناحي الحياة، فهو المنهج الأمثل الذي ينبغي اتباعه. الإسلام دين الرحمة، ويحث على اللطف ومكارم الأخلاق، وينهى عن العنف السافر، ويشجع على أساليب اللاعنف. بل إن أسلوب الحياة المتوازن للأفراد، من خلال ممارسة هذه الفضائل الإسلامية، هو ما يُرسى السلام في المجتمع.

C. Answer the following questions:

- How can Muslims reap the benefits of both this life and the hereafter? - With moderateness.
- Why do you think maintaining moderateness on religious, social and private matters is required? / Why should we work hard to adhere to moderateness?
- Because it will eventually lead to success in this life and in the Hereafter.
- What would happen if Muslims did not nurture moderateness in all facets of their lives?
- They wouldn't reap the benefits of both this life and the hereafter.
- How can Muslims practice moderateness spending their wealth?
- By spending it in the cause of Allah, but not to the extent of causing themselves poverty.
- Why does Islam promote moderateness and simplicity?
- It is a balanced life for individuals through Islamic virtues that establish peace in society.
- What does Islam discourage in respect of moderation? - Overt violence.

D. Choose the correct answer:

- Muslims must to the principles of their religion.
a. cohere b. adhere c. admire d. appeal
- Now let's look at another of the problem.
a. facet b. facility c. fabricate d. cute
- It's important to a good working relationship.
a. nature b. carpenter c. nurture d. future
- Her views of the world have a childlike
a. difficulty b. hardship c. sanctuary d. simplicity
- He is a He loves money too much and hates spending it.
a. virtue b. vice c. mandate d. miser

E. Translate the following:

- Islam promotes mercy which encourages kindness and moral behavior and discourages overt violence.
٢. يدعو الإسلام إلى نشر الوسطية والاعتدال في أمور الدين والدنيا.

E. Write True or False for the Following Sentences:

- Muslims should nurture moderateness in all facets of their lives.
- Muslims should practice moderateness spending their wealth.
- There is no midway between being a miser and a spendthrift.
- Moderateness leads to success in this life and in the hereafter.
- Extremism establishes peace in society.

Lesson (3): Modesty الحياء / التواضع

A. Vocabulary:

resemble	يشابه / يشابه	shyness	الخجل	potential	ممكن / محتمل
shame	خزي / خجل	hospitable	كريم / مضياف	obscene	غياث
instinct	فطري	decent	مهذب / نمت الأخلاق	acquired	مكتسب
trait	سمة	intrinsic	حقيقي / جوهري	nakedness	تجرد / عري
watchful	مشاهد / مراقب	urge	حث	perceptive	إدراك / منظور

B. Text:

The primary objective of every Muslim should be to acquire moral excellence. Islam has made some moral qualities, such as modesty, essential. Prophet Muhammad (BPUH) said: "I have been sent only to perfect noble morals." (Al-Bayhaqi)

الحياء، أساسية. قال النبي محمد ﷺ: "إني ما بعثت لأتمم مكارم الأخلاق". (البيهقي)

The Islamic term for modesty (Hayā') denotes fear of Allah (GBTH). A Muslim's behavior should be guided by modesty when interacting with Allah (GBTH), with people, and even with oneself. The essence of modesty lies in knowing that Allah (GBTH) is totally aware of what you do and say, and thus shying away from what He forbids.

والحياء في الإسلام يعني الخوف من الله. ينبغي أن يكون سلوك المسلم مبنياً على الحياء في تعامله مع الله، ومع الناس، وحتى مع نفسه. يكمن جوهر الحياء في معرفة أن الله مطلع تماماً على أفعالك وأقوالك، وبالتالي اجتناب ما نهى عنه.

Modesty is a superior quality that prevents one from behaving badly towards others. It is the trait that makes one hospitable to a guest, attends to the needs of others, avoids obscene, and dresses decently. There is no potential for good in a person without modesty. Prophet Muhammad (BPUH) said: "One of the sayings which people have got from the early Prophets is: If you do not feel ashamed, do then whatever you like." (Al-Bukhari)

الحياء صفة سامية تمنع سوء الخلق. فهو ما يجعل المرء بكرم الضيف، ويرعى حاجات الآخرين، ويتجنب البذاءة، ويحسن للملبس. لا خير في إنسان لا يتواضع. قال النبي: «مما تعلمناه من الأنبياء: إذا لم تستح فاصنع ما شئت». (البخاري)

Modesty can be divided into natural (or intrinsic) and acquired modesty. In the Qur'an, after Adam and Eve had eaten from the forbidden tree, they quickly covered private parts of their bodies with leaves because, for the first time, they felt ashamed of their nakedness.

يمكن تقسيم الحياء إلى حياء طبيعي (أو جوهري) وحياء مكتسب. في القرآن، بعد أن أكل آدم وحواء من الشجرة المحرمة، سارعا إلى تغطية عورتها بأوراق الشجر، إذ شعر، لأول مرة، بالخجل من عريهما.

This reveals that modesty is basically an instinct trait, but it still can be acquired. That is why Islam has urged people to strengthen modesty through faith. By cultivating Muslims' spirituality to grow closer to Allah (GBTH), Muslims will be more aware of Allah's (GBTH) presence, be more perceptive of His favors, and more watchful of His wrath. The Prophet (BPUH) said: "Modesty is a branch of faith." (Al-Bukhari)

هذا يكشف أن الحياء غريزة، ولكنه قابل للاكتساب. ولذلك حث الإسلام على تعزيز الحياء بالإيمان. فبإتباع روحانية المسلمين للتقرب من الله، يصبحون أكثر وعياً بحضور الله، وأشد إدراكاً لنعمة، وأشد حذراً من سخطه. قال النبي ﷺ: «الحياء شعيرة من شعب الإيمان» (رواه البخاري).

Being modest is the criterion that distinguishes human beings from animals. We find animals following their instincts without feeling any shame. Hence, the less modesty a person has, the more he resembles animals. In this way, modesty serves as a line of demarcation between humans and animals. However, a true believer feels modest in front of Allah (GBTH) and His creation since Allah (GBTH) knows and sees everything. Whenever he commits a sin or acts inappropriately, he immediately feels ashamed.

الحياء هو المعيار الذي يميز الإنسان عن الحيوان. تجد الحيوانات تتبع غرائزها دون خجل. فكلما قل حياء الإنسان، ازداد شبيهاً بالحيوان. وهكذا، يكون الحياء خطاً فاصلاً بين الإنسان والحيوان. أما المؤمن الحق، فيشعر بالحياء أمام الله تعالى ومخلوقاته، فهو يعلم كل شيء ويرى كل شيء. كلما ارتكب معصية أو فعل شيئاً غير لائق، شعر بالخجل فوراً.

C. Answer the following questions:

- Why do you think Islam has made some moral qualities such as modesty essential?
 - Because it is one of the perfect noble morals.
- How do you think modesty distinguish humans from animals?
 - Because animals following their instincts without feeling any shame.
- What should the primary objective of every Muslim be? - Acquiring moral excellence.
- After Adam and Eve had eaten from the forbidden tree, they quickly covered private parts of their bodies. What does this denote? - They were ashamed of nakedness; modesty is natural.
- How can Muslims be more aware of Allah's (GBTH) presence, more perceptive of His Favors, and more Watchful of His wrath? - By cultivating spirituality to be closer to Allah.
- Why do you think modesty is mentioned as a part of the Islamic faith?
 - Because being modest is the criterion that distinguishes human beings from animals.
- Why does Islam urge people to strengthen modesty via faith?
 - Because modesty basically is an instinct trait, but it still can be acquired.

D. Choose the correct answer:

- He closely his father.
 - assembles
 - resembles
 - simplifies
 - costumes
- My mother keeps a eye on the baby.
 - watchful
 - meaningful
 - plentiful
 - dreadful
- Islamic teachings Muslims to be modest.
 - argue
 - regret
 - greet
 - urge
- She shares several character with her father.
 - treats
 - treaties
 - traits
 - tracts
- What are the benefits of these proposals?
 - potential
 - protein
 - burden
 - piety

E. Translate the following:

- A strong true Muslim fears Allah (GBTH) since He knows and sees everything.
٢. ينبغي على المسلم أن يستحي من الله في السر والعلن.

E. Write True or False for the Following Sentences:

- Muslim's behaviors should be guided by modesty.
- The key to modesty is that you are free to do whatever you like.
- There is no potential for good in a person without modesty.
- The less modesty a person has, the less he resembles animals.
- Muslim should feel shy to disobey Allah (GBTH).

Lesson (4): A Modest Person (الشخص المتواضع)

A. Vocabulary:

immodesty	عدم الحياء	assault	اعتداء جسدي	bashfulness	حياء
endow	يمنح	mandated	شُرِع	lewd	فسق / داعر
bashful	خجول / حيي	tribulation	محنة	adornment	تزيين
ensue	يؤدي إلى	esteem	احترام	pursue	يواصل / يتابع

B. Text:

Modesty is reflected in a Muslim's way of speaking, dressing, and behaving. It is also manifested in one's relationship with others and with his Lord; modesty must begin with the heart. "Modesty is a part of faith." (Bukhari)

يتجلى الحياء في كلام المسلم ولباسه وسلوكه، كما يتجلى في علاقته بالآخرين ومع ربه، فالحياء يبدأ من القلب.

«الحياء من الإيمان» (رواه البخاري).

In the same vein, speech should be well-mannered. Immodesty can lead one to verbally abuse and physically assault others, which will ensue corruption. Both abuse and assault take

off the veil of bashfulness one is endowed with. Modesty should be a decisive factor in disciplining the Muslim's ego.

على نفس المنوال، ينبغي أن يكون الكلام حسن الخلق. فالإدعاء قد تدفع المرء إلى الإساءة اللفظية والاعتداء الجسدي على الآخرين، مما يؤدي إلى الفساد. فكل من الإساءة والاعتداء ينزع غطاء الحياء الذي يتمتع به المرء. وينبغي أن يكون الحياء عاملاً حاسماً في تهذيب نفس المسلم.

The Qur'an highly esteems modesty and those who possess it. A telling example is the Qur'anic narrative that captures how Moses helped the two ladies at the well of Madyan have their sheep drinking, then immediately walked away to the shade without socializing with them or requesting payment for his service. Such behavior was dictated by his modesty. In recognition of the great significance attached to this virtue, Islam has mandated certain legislations which imbue people with this noble sense of modesty. The Prophet (BPUH) said: "I advise you to be modest towards Allah, the Exalted, in the same way that you are modest toward a pious man from your people." Allah said: "Tell the believing men to lower their gaze and be modest. That is purer for them. Allah is aware of what they do." [Qur'an, 24:30]

يقترن القرآن الكريم الحياء تقديراً كبيراً، ومن الأمثلة الواضحة على ذلك ما رواه موسى عليه السلام عن سيدتين عند بئر مدين تسقيان غنمهما، ثم انصرف على الفور إلى الظل دون أن يخاطبهما أو يطلب أجراً على خدمته. وقد حثه على هذا السلوك وإدراكاً لأهمية هذه الفضيلة، سن الإسلام بعض التشريعات التي تُغرس في الناس هذا الشعور النبيل بالحياء. قال النبي ﷺ: "أوصيكم بالحياء من الله تعالى كما تستحون من الرجل الصالح من قومكم". كما قال تعالى: (قُلْ لِلْمُؤْمِنِينَ يَخْشَوْنَ مِنَ ابْنِ عَادِمٍ وَيَخْفَظُوا فُرُوجَهُمْ ذَلِكَ أَزْجَى لَهُمْ إِنْ أَنَّهُمْ خَبِيرُونَ). (التور: ٣٠)

The best way to develop modesty is to think whether one would do the sin they desire in front of their parents. Surely, a modest person will refrain from any lewd act in front of their family. What about doing so in front of Allah (GBTH)? The modesty of a believer in front of Allah must be greater than that in front of people. The Prophet (BPUH) said, "Allah (GBTH) is more deserving to be feared than other people." (Abū Dāwūd). It was established among early Muslims that a person has to fear toward Allah (GBTH) equally in private and public.

أفضل طريقة لتنمية الحياء هي التفكير فيما إذا كان المرء سيرتكب المعصية التي يرغب بها أمام والديه. من المؤكد أن الشخص المحتشم سيمتنع عن أي فعل فاحش أمام عائلته. ماذا عن فعل ذلك أمام الله؟ يجب أن يكون حياء المؤمن أمام الله أعظم من حياءه أمام الناس. قال النبي ﷺ: "الله أحق أن يخشى من الناس" (أبو داود). وقد تقرر لدى المسلمين الأوائل أن على المرء أن يخشى الله على حد سواء في السر والعلن.

Modesty can be seen as the means to pursue morals and inculcate ethics in society. It encourages one to be proper in behavior and thought with other people and with Allah (GBTH). The Prophet (BPUH) once said, "Be bashful before Allah (GBTH) truly." They said, "O Messenger of Allah (GBTH), verily we are bashful, praise be to Allah (GBTH)." He said, "That is not what I meant by being bashful. True modesty before Allah (GBTH) means to protect your head and what it involves; your stomach and what it contains; to remember death and tribulations; and whoever wishes for the Hereafter, he should leave the adornments of this life." Al-Tirmidhi

يمكن اعتبار الحياء وسيلةً لاتباع الأخلاق وغرسها في المجتمع. فهو يشجع المرء على أن يكون لائقاً في السلوك والفكر مع الآخرين ومع الله. قال النبي ﷺ ذات مرة: "استحيوا من الله حق الحياء. قال: قلنا: يا رسول الله، إنا نستحي والحمد لله، قال: ليس ذلك، ولكن الاستحياء من الله حق الحياء أن تحفظ الرأس وما وعى، والبطن وما حوى، ولتذكر الموت والبلى، ومن أراد الآخرة ترك زينة الدنيا، فمن فعل ذلك استحيا من الله حق الحياء." الترمذي

C. Answer the following questions:

1. What may immodesty ensue? - Verbal abuse, physical assault and corruption.
2. Why do you think that a modest person will not commit any lewd act in front of their parents? - He feels ashamed of that.
3. How is modesty reflected in a Muslim's life style?
- Modesty is reflected in a Muslim's way of speaking, dressing, and behaving.
4. Why should we lower our gaze and be modest?
- Because that is purer of us and Allah (GBTH) is aware of what we do.

5. How do you think one can develop modesty?
- The best way is to think whether one would do the sin in front of others or not.
6. How does modesty maintain morals and ethics in society?
- It encourages one to be proper in behavior and thought with other people and with Allah.
7. What does true modesty before Allah (GBTH) mean?
- To protect your head and what it involves; your stomach and what it contains; to remember death and tribulations!

D. Choose the correct answer:

- We have decided not to the matter.
a. pursue b. statue c. sure d. certain
- They him as a dedicated and imaginative scholar.
a. repent b. regret c. apologize d. esteem
- It is not acceptable to others.
a. respect b. assault c. admire d. accept
- Modesty will happiness in society.
a. lead b. result c. do d. ensue
- She looked when he asked her what she wanted.
a. bashful b. blast c. blast d. breast

E. Translate the following:

- Modesty is considered the means by which morals and ethics in society are maintained and pursued.
٢. يكف الحياء النفس عن فعل القبيح ويدعو إلى فعل الجميل، وهو شعبة من شعب الإيمان.

F. Write True or False for the Following Sentences:

- Modesty can lead one to verbally abuse and physically assault others.
- Men and women ought to lower their gaze and be modest.
- The modesty of a believer in front of Allah (GBTH) can be less than that in front of people.
- Muslims should be shy towards Allah (GBTH) in private not in public.
- Modesty is the means by which ethics are maintained.

Unit (6): Iconic Figures بارزة شخصيات

Lesson (1): Jesus المسيح عيسى

A. Vocabulary:

stunning	مذهل / رائع	virgin	عذراء	committed	لتزم
piety	تقوى	sanctuary	معد / محراب	tiding	بشارة
resolve	العزم	fearful	خائف	fled	هرب / اجتنب
labour	المخاض	cradle	المهد	servant	خادم / عبد
bestow	يهب / يمنح	salvation	التجاة	revive	يحيي
laden	مُحْتَل	priest	راهب	crucify	يصلب
seclusion	عزلة	leper	الأبرص	Gospel	الإنجيل

B. Text:

Mary and her family are among the eight people who have a Surah named after them in the Qur'an. Before Mary was born, her mother had committed her to serving Allah (GBTH). Raised by Prophet Zacharia, she grew up to have faith and piety. She isolated herself in a sanctuary where she prayed to Allah (GBTH) in seclusion and peace. One day Archangel Gabriel visited her in the form of a man and gave her good tidings of a righteous son.

مريم وعائلتها من بين الثمانية الذين سميت سورة باسمهم في القرآن الكريم. قبل أن تولد مريم، نذرتها أمها لخدمة الله. ربها النبي زكريا، فتشلت على الإيمان والتقوى. تعزلت في حرم تدعو فيه الله في خلوة وسلام. وفي يوم من الأيام، زارها رئيس الملائكة جبرائيل في صورة رجل، وبشراها بابن صالح.

"This is how Allah creates what He wills: when He has ordained something, He only says, "Be," and it is." [Qur'an 3:47]

قال تعالى: (قال كذلك الله بخلق ما ينطق ما يتساءل إذا قضى أمرا فبما يقول له من فيكون) (آل عمران: ٤٧)

Fearful of what the people may say or do, the virgin mother, Mary, fled her sanctuary. Shortly, her labour pains started and Jesus was born in a miraculous birth under a palm trunk in Bethlehem. Allah (GBTH) blessed her with delicious dates and fresh spring water, and she was ordered to abstain from talking to people. On seeing the baby, her people accused her of ruining her family's reputation; so, she pointed at Jesus (the baby) who spoke in the cradle, informing them that he is a servant of Allah (GBTH) who will receive the Gospel and will be a Prophet. He enlightened them of his noble rank and Allah's (GBTH) commandments and blessings that Allah (GBTH) had bestowed upon him.

خوفاً مما قد يقوله الناس أو يطونه، هربت العذراء مريم من ملامتها. وسرعان ما بدأت آلام المخاض، وولد يسوع ولادة معجزية تحت جذع نخلة في بيت لحم. رزقها الله تعالى بتمر لذيذ وماء عذب، وأمرت بالامتناع عن الكلام مع الناس. فلما رأى أهلها الطفل، اتهموها بتشويه سمعة عائلتها؛ فأشارت إلى يسوع (الطفل) الذي تكلم في المهد، وأخبرتهم أنه عبد الله الذي سيتلقى الإنجيل وسيكون نبياً. فأطلعهم على منزلته الكريمة ووصايا الله ونعمه التي أنعم بها عليه.

Afraid from the oppression of King Herod, Mary took her child to Egypt. They kept changing their place of stay in Egypt to escape from Herod. After the death of Herod, the Noble Family returned to Palestine.

خوفاً من بطش الملك هيرودس، أخذت مريم طفلها إلى مصر. وظلوا يغيرون مكان إقامتهم في مصر هرباً من هيرودس. وبعد وفاة هيرودس، عادت العائلة النبيلة إلى فلسطين.

Jesus preached the Gospel and stressed that there is only One Creator, and that obeying Him was the only way of salvation in this life and the Hereafter. Jesus is one of the Messengers with firm resolve (together with Noah, Abraham, Moses, and Muhammad, Peace Be Upon Them All).

بشر يسوع بالإنجيل، وأكد أن الخالق واحد، وأن طاعته هي السبيل الوحيد للنجاة في الدنيا والآخرة. عيسى من الرسل نوري العزم الراسخ (مع نوح وإبراهيم وموسى ومحمد، عليهم السلام).

Allah (GBTH) supported him with other miracles by Allah's (GBTH) Will. Jesus healed the lepers and those who were born blind, revived the dead, and breathed life into a bird made of clay with the permission of Allah (GBTH). He was also granted "The Table Laden with Food." As Jesus's message to worship the only one God, Allah (GBTH) began to acquire acceptance, the Israelite leaders became worried and upset. They planned to have him crucified on a Roman cross. However, Allah (GBTH) protected him and raised him up to Heaven. Jesus will return to earth before Doomsday, a fair Imam and a just ruler, as a sign of the Doomsday approaching. "was but a servant whom We favored and made an example for the Children of Israel." (Qur'an, 43:59)

أيده الله تعالى بمعجزات أخرى بمشيئته. شفى عيسى عليه السلام البرص والعميان، وأحيا الموتى، ونفخ في طير من طين يابن الله تعالى. كما وُهب له "العائدة الممتلئة بالطعام". ومع ازدياد قبول دعوة عيسى عليه السلام لعبادة الله الواحد الأحد، انتاب قادة بني إسرائيل القلق والاضطراب، فخططوا لصلبه على صليب روماني. لكن الله تعالى حماه ورفع إلى السماء. سيعود عيسى عليه السلام إلى الأرض قبل يوم القيامة إماماً عادلاً وحاكماً عادلاً، كعلامة على اقتراب يوم القيامة. "إن هو إلا عبد أنعمنا عليه وجعلناه مثلاً لبيتي إسرائيل" (الزخرف، ٥٩).

C. Answer the following questions:

1. What does having a Surah named after Mary in the Qur'an denote? - Allah is pleased with her.
2. What miracles were granted to Jesus (BPUH)?
- Jesus healed the lepers and the blind, revived the dead, and breathed life into a bird made of clay with the permission of Allah.
3. How do you think Allah (GBTH) has honored Mary and her family?
- They are among the eight people who have a Surah named after them in the Qur'an.
4. How was Mary committed to serving Allah (GBTH)? - Her mother did that.
5. Why did Mary flee her sanctuary? - She was fearful of what people would say about her child.
6. Why did Mary take her child and flee to Egypt? - She feared the oppression of King Herod.
7. What do you think is the way of salvation in this life and the hereafter? - Obeying Allah.

D. Choose the correct answer:

- It was a title upon him by the king.
a. bestowed b. denied c. derived d. stated
- He to Alexandria after an argument with his family.
a. fed b. freed c. flawed d. fled
- I am the bearer of good
a. tides b. tidings c. tidies d. vices
- He suffered a defeat in the election.
a. sunny b. stunning c. sweat d. lovely
- The economy is beginning to giving them a good chance to gain money.
a. arrive b. drive c. revive d. invite

E. Translate the following:

- Allah (GBTH) protected the Prophet Jesus (BPUH) and raised him up to Heaven. Jesus will return to earth before the Domsday and preach Islam.

٢. لقد قبل لله من امرأة عمران الجنين الذي نذرته لعبادة الله.

E. Write True or False for the Following Sentences:

- Mary's mother had committed her to serving Allah (GBTH).
- Saint Joseph gave Mary good news of a righteous son.
- Mary was ordered to abstain from talking.
- Allah (GBTH) granted Jesus with other miracles.
- The Israelites crucified Jesus on a Roman cross.

Lesson (2): Abū Dharr (APWH) رضي الله عنه

A. Vocabulary:

tension	توتر	sightedness	استارة	repellent	ثائر
confirm	يؤكد	refrain	يمتنع	depart	يهجر
furious	غاضب	pounce	يثب على / ينقض على	mercilessly	بلا رحمة
prevail	ينشر	tribe	قبيلة	gradually	تدرجياً
eventually	أخيراً	convert	يتحول	pursuit	مواصلة

B. Text:

Jundub ibn Junāda, known as Abū Dharr, was one of the early Muslims. The Prophet (BPUH) said, "There is no one more truthful than the sky has shaded and the earth has carried, than Abū Dharr." (al-Tirmidhī)

كان جندب بن جنادة، المعروف بأبي ذر، من أوائل المسلمين. قال النبي ﷺ: «ما أظلت الخضراء ولا أقلت الغبراء من ذي لهجة أصدق من أبي ذر». (الترمذي)

Abū Dharr was known for his courage, calmness, and far sightedness. He was repellent to the idols, and he rejected the religious corruption in which the Arabs were deeply immersed. When he knew that a new prophet had appeared in Mecca, he sent his brother to confirm the news. Then, he decided to go himself to examine this prophet's mission. Upon his arrival in Mecca, he refrained from asking anyone about the new prophet for two days so as not to be assaulted. In the third night, 'Alī ibn Abī Ṭālib accompanied him to the Prophet (BPUH).

عرف أبو ذر بشجاعته وهذونه وبعد نظره. كان منفراً من الأصنام، رافضاً الفساد الديني الذي غرق فيه العرب. ولما علم بظهور نبي جديد في مكة، أرسل أخاه ليتأكد من الخير. ثم عزم على الذهاب بنفسه ليتحقق من رسالة هذا النبي. فلما وصل مكة، امتنع عن سؤال أحد عن النبي الجديد يومين خشية أن يعتدى عليه. وفي الليلة الثالثة، صحبه علي بن أبي طالب للنبي.

The Prophet (BPUH) welcomed him, invited him to Islam, and recited some verses of the Qur'an. Abū Dharr, who adopted Islam at once, was the first person to hail the Prophet (BPUH) with the greeting of Islam. He was the fourth or the fifth persons to convert to Islam. He stayed with the Prophet (BPUH) in Mecca for a while.

رحب به النبي ﷺ، ودعاه إلى الإسلام، وتلا عليه آيات من القرآن الكريم. كان أبو ذر، الذي أسلم من فوره، أول من استقبل النبي ﷺ بتحية الإسلام. وكان رابع أو خامس من أسلم. ومكث مع النبي ﷺ في مكة مدة.

Before departing Mecca, he showed great courage when he announced loudly: "O people of Quraysh, I testify that there is no god but Allah (GBTH) and that Muhammad (BPUH) is the Messenger of Allah (GBTH)." On hearing that, they got furious and pounced on him and beat him mercilessly. Fortunately, he was saved by al-'Abbās ibn 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib, an uncle of the Prophet (BPUH). The Prophet (BPUH) told him to return to his people and invite them to Islam. When he returned to his tribe, he immediately started his call to Islam. His brother and mother were the first to accept Islam. His family of believers increased gradually and eventually the whole of his tribe converted to Islam.

قبل مغادرته مكة، أبدى شجاعة عظيمة حين أعلن بصوت عالٍ: "يا معشر قريش، أشهد أن لا إله إلا الله وأن محمدًا رسول الله". فلما سمعوا ذلك، غضبوا وانقضوا عليه وضربوه ضربًا مبرحًا. ولحسن الحظ، أنقذه العباس بن عبد المطلب، عم النبي ﷺ. أمره النبي ﷺ بالعودة إلى قومه ودعوتهم إلى الإسلام. فلما عاد إلى قومه، بدأ دعوته على الفور. وكان أخوه وأمه أول من آمنوا. وزاد عدد المؤمنين في عائلته تدريجيًا، حتى أسلمت قبيلته بأكملها في النهاية.

After the Battle of the Trench 'al-Khandaq', Abū Dharr went to Madīna to be in the service of the Prophet (BPUH). He stayed in Madīna until the caliphate of Abū Bakr. When the Caliph Abū Bakr passed away, he left for Levant and stayed in Damascus. The Caliph 'Uthmān asked Abū Dharr to return to Madīna. However, when he returned, he felt sad on seeing the Muslims' concern for the world and their desire for luxury. Soon, tension developed between him and the people. So, 'Uthmān sent him to al-Rubdhā, a small village near Madīna where he died. In the year 32 A.H. (652 CE) Abū Dhar passed away and was buried in al-Rabadha.

بعد غزوة الخندق، هاجر أبو ذر إلى المدينة المنورة لخدمة النبي ﷺ. وبقي فيها حتى خلافة أبي بكر. ولما توفي الخليفة أبو بكر، رحل إلى الشام وأقام في دمشق. فطلب الخليفة عثمان من أبي ذر العودة إلى المدينة. فلما عاد، حزن على ما رأى من هم المسلمين في الدنيا ورغبتهم في الترف. وسرعان ما ثار الخلاف بينه وبين الناس، فأرسله عثمان إلى الربدّة، وهي قرية صغيرة قرب المدينة المنورة، حيث توفي. وفي سنة ٣٢ هـ (٦٥٢ م) توفي أبو ذر ودفن في الربدّة.

C. Answer the following questions:

1. What do you think about the benefit of reading the biography of such great people?
- These great people set an example for Muslim youth to follow.
2. Why do you think Abū Dharr announced loudly that he became a Muslim?
- He was courageous and wanted to support the prophet loudly and bravely.
3. What was Abū Dharr known for? – Courage, calmness, and his farsightedness.
4. Why do you think Abū Dharr refrained from asking anyone about the new prophet?
- He didn't want to be assaulted.
5. What made the people of Quraysh so furious that they pounced on Abū Dharr and beat him mercilessly?
- Because he loudly announced his belief in Islam.
6. Why did Abū Dharr go to Madīna after the Battle of the Trench?
- To be in the service of the Prophet (BPUH).
7. Why did tension develop between Abū Dhar and the people?
- He felt sad on seeing the Muslims' concern for the world and consuming desire for luxury.

D. Choose the correct answer:

1. He travelled around the world in of his dreams.
a. pressure b. blackmail c. pursuit d. brave
2. Justice will over tyranny.
a. reveal b. revive c. preserve d. prevail
3. They appealed to the protesters to from violence.
a. retrain b. refrain c. attend d. attain
4. She waited for the last of the guests to
a. charge b. depart c. deport d. report
5. Please write to your reservation.
a. conduct b. contract c. cataract d. confirm

E. Translate the following:

1. Abū Dharr was the fourth or the fifth person to convert to Islam, and was the first person to hail the Prophet (BPUH) with the greeting of Islam.

٢. ينبغي عل المسلم أن يتشبه بصحابة الرسول صلى الله عليه وسلم في الجد في العبادة والعمل.

E. Write True or False for the Following Sentences:

1. There is no one more truthful than Abū Dharr.
2. His brother and mother were the first to accept Islam.
3. Abū Dharr left for Syria before Caliph Abū Bakr passed away.
4. He was the first or the second Muslim.
5. Abū Dharr felt sad on seeing Muslims' concern for the world.

Lesson (3): Abū Ja'far al-Taḥāwī أبو جعفر الطحاوي

A. Vocabulary:

trustworthy	جدير بالثقة	contemporary	معاصر	abundant	غزير
reliable	يعتمد عليه	narrator	راوي	disciple	مريد / طالب علم
transfer	ينتقل	maternal uncle	خال	commentaries	تعليقات / شروح
theology	العقيدة	treatise	بحث / رسالة	outstanding	بارز
distinguished	متميز	prolific	مبدع / كثير التأليف	expertise	خبير

B. Text:

Imām Abū Ja'far al-Taḥāwī (239-321 A.H) is one of the trustworthy narrators and massive memorizers of the Prophet's ḥadīth. His full name is Abū Ja'far Aḥmad ibn Muhammad ibn Salamah al-Taḥāwī. He was born in Ṭahā, a village in Upper Egypt. Many of al-Taḥāwī's contemporaries praised him and noted him as both a reliable jurist and narrator of ḥadīth. He was regarded as one of the greatest narrators and jurists of his time. Actually, al-Taḥāwī was the owner of superior works, wonderful sayings, abundant knowledge, and many virtues. He developed an interest in Ḥadīth and jurisprudence. At first, he studied with his maternal uncle, Ismā'īl ibn Yaḥyā al-Muzanī, who was a leading disciple of ash-Shāfi'ī, but later Abū Ja'far transferred to the Hanafī School of law. When he was asked about the reason behind that, he said, "I saw my uncle al-Muzanī looking a lot and carefully in Abu Hanifa's books."

الإمام أبو جعفر الطحاوي (٢٣٩-٣٢١ هـ) من رواة السنة النبوية الثقات وحفظة الحديث النبوي. اسمه الكامل أبو جعفر أحمد بن محمد بن سلامة الطحاوي. وُلد في طحا، وهي قرية بصعيد مصر. أثنى عليه كثير من معاصريه، ووصفوه بالفقيه الثقات وراوي الحديث. كان يُعد من أكابر رواة وفقهاء عصره. في الواقع، كان الطحاوي صاحب أعمال جليلة، وأقوال بديعة، وعلم غزير، وفضائل كثيرة. نما لديه اهتمام بالحديث والفقه. في البداية، درس على يد خاله إسماعيل بن يحيى المزني، وكان من أبرز تلامذة الشافعي، ثم انتقل لاحقاً للمذهب الحنفي. ولما سئل عن السبب، قال "رايت عسي المزني يُدقق في كتب أبي حنيفة"

Al-Taḥāwī then studied under the head of the Hanafī School in Egypt, Aḥmad ibn Abī 'Imrān al-Ḥanafī. His study circles (classes) consequently attracted many students of knowledge who related ḥadīth from him and later transmitted his works. He became the head of Hanafī school in Egypt. He wrote a little treatise on theology generally known as al-Aqīdah al-Taḥāwīyyah. al-Taḥāwī went to Syria for further studies in Hanafī Fiqh. He learnt ḥadīth from many Sheikhs.

تلمذ الطحاوي على يد أحمد بن أبي عمران الحنفي، إمام المذهب الحنفي في مصر. واستقطبت حلقاته العلمية العديد من طلاب العلم الذين رووا عنه الحديث، ثم نقلوا عنه آثاره. وأصبح إمام المذهب الحنفي في مصر، وكتب رسالة قصيرة في علم الكلام عُرفت باسم العقيدة الطحاوية. ثم سافر لسوريا لمزيد من الدراسة في الفقه الحنفي، وتعلم الحديث على يد العديد من الشيوخ.

Imam Abū Ja'far is considered to be among the most outstanding authorities of the Islamic world on ḥadīth and jurisprudence. He was widely held as a distinguished and prolific writer and became known as the most learned jurist amongst the Hanafīs in Egypt, despite having knowledge of all other schools of jurisprudence. Al-Taḥāwī was famed for his expertise in both ḥadīth and Hanafī jurisprudence even during his own lifetime. A lot of his works, such as Kitāb Ma'āni al-Āthār and 'Aqīdah al-Taḥāwīyyah, continue to be held in high esteem by the Sunni Muslims today. Over fifteen commentaries have been written on his creedal treatise, al-'Aqīdah al-Taḥāwīyyah. He died in Egypt in 321/933 and was buried in al-Qarafah, Cairo.

يُعتبر الإمام أبو جعفر من أبرز علماء الحديث والفقه في العالم الإسلامي. كان كاتبًا متميزًا غزير الإنتاج، وعُرف بأنه أعمم الفقهاء بين الحنفية في مصر، على الرغم من إمامه بجميع المذاهب الفقهية الأخرى. اشتهر الطحاوي بخبرته في الحديث والفقه الحنفي حتى في حياته. ولا تزال العديد من مؤلفاته، مثل كتاب "معاني الآثار" و"العقيدة الطحاوية"، تحظى بتقدير كبير لدى المسلمين السنة حتى اليوم. وقد كُتب أكثر من خمسة عشر شرحًا على رسالته العقائدية "العقيدة الطحاوية". توفي بمصر سنة ٤٣٣/٨٣٢١م ودفن بالقرافة بالقاهرة.

C. Answer the following questions:

- Why did al-Ṭahāwī's contemporaries praise him?
- He was a reliable jurist and Hadith narrator.
- Mention some of al-Ṭahāwī's books. - Kitāb Ma'āni al-Āthār and 'Aqīdah al-Ṭahāwīyyah.
- Why do you think al-Ṭahāwī is one of the trustworthy scholars?
- He was had superior works, wonderful sayings, abundant knowledge, and many virtues.
- Why did al-Ṭahāwī transfer from the Shāfi'ī to the Ḥanafī School?
- Because he saw his uncle Al-Muzani looking a lot and carefully in Abū Hanifa's books.
- Who was a leading disciple of the Shāfi'ī school at al-Ṭahāwī time?
- Ismā'īl ibn Yahyā al-Muzanī.
- Why do you think al-Ṭahāwī's study circles attracted many students?
- Because he was a great narrator and a trustworthy jurist.
- What was al-Ṭahāwī famous for? - His expertise in hadith and Hanafi jurisprudence.

D. Choose the correct answer:

- Children usually to secondary school at the age of 11 or 12.
a. transmit b. translate c. transaction d. transfer
- We are looking for someone who is and hardworking.
a. reliable b. deniable c. changeable d. furious
- They had always been by the idea of working abroad.
a. attacked b. infected c. attracted d. confirmed
- It is difficult to find staff with the level of required for this job.
a. expertise b. standard c. creature d. experienced
- Al-Shāfi'ī school has attracted a lot of
a. masculines b. feminines c. disciples d. religions

E. Translate the following:

- Al-Ṭahāwī was known as the most learned jurist amongst the Ḥanafīs in Egypt, despite being knowledgeable of all other schools of jurisprudence.
- يُبغى على طالب العلم أن يجتهد في طلب العلم ليصبح متميزًا بين أقرانه.

E. Write True or False for the Following Sentences:

- Al-Ṭahāwī (239-321) is one of the trustworthy narrators.
- Al-Muzanī was a leading disciple of Al-Shāfi'ī.
- Al-Ṭahāwī had never left Egypt.
- Al-Ṭahāwī became the head of Ḥanafī School in Egypt.
- Al-Ṭahāwī was known as the most learned jurist amongst the Shāfi'īs in Egypt.

Lesson (4): Rifa'at al-Islamiya (APWH) رِفَاعَةُ الْإِسْلَامِيَّةِ - رَفِي لَهَا

A. Vocabulary:

founder	مؤسس	surgeon	جراح	medical	طبي
mentor	مُشَرَف	obtain	يحصل على / يحوز	clinical	سريري
healer	معالج	promoter	مُناجِح / معز	injured	جريح
shelter	مأوى	casualties	طواريء / إصابات	treat	يعامل
harsh	خشن / قاس	volunteer	متطوع	spoils	غنائم
alleviate	يخفف / يسكن (الم)	battlefield	أرض المعركة	healthcare	الرعاية الصحية

B. Text:

Rufaida al-Aslamiya, born in 620 CE, introduced nursing to the Muslim world centuries before Florence Nightingale who is known as the founder of modern nursing. She is considered the first Muslim female nurse, surgeon, and social worker. Her family who were among the first to convert to Islam had strong ties to the medical community. Her father, Sa'd al-Aslami, was a physician and mentor under whom Rufaida initially obtained her clinical training. He taught his daughter the skills needed to care for the sick and wounded. Gradually, she became an expert healer.

وُلدت رفيدة الأسلمية عام ٦٢٠ ميلادياً، وقد أدخلت التمريض إلى العالم الإسلامي قبل قرون من فلورنس نايتنجيل، المعروفة بكونها مؤسسة التمريض الحديث. تُعتبر أول ممرضة وجراحة وأخصائية اجتماعية مسلمة. كانت عائلتها من أوائل من اعتنقوا الإسلام، وكانت تربطها علاقات وثيقة بالمجتمع الطبي. كان والدها، سعد الأسلمي، طبيباً ومعلمًا، تلقت رفيدة تدريبها السريري على يديه في البداية. عَمَّ ابنته المهارات اللازمة لرعاية المرضى والجرحى. تدريجياً، أصبحت معالجة خبيرة.

She set up a nursing school, developed the first code of conduct and ethics, and was a promoter of community health. During the battles, she set a tent next to the Prophet's Mosque to care for the injured and sick people. She practiced her skills in field hospitals in this tent. Casualties used to be carried to her tent where she treated them with medical expertise. She also provided shelter to the needy from the wind and heat of the harsh desert. She developed the first ever mobile care units that were able to meet the medical needs of the community.

أسست مدرسة للتمريض، ووضعت أول مدونة سلوك وأخلاقيات، ودافعت عن صحة المجتمع. خلال المعارك، نصبت خيمة بجوار المسجد النبوي لرعاية الجرحى والمرضى. مارست مهاراتها في المستشفيات الميدانية في هذه الخيمة. كانت تُنقل الإصابات إلى خيمتها حيث تعالجهم بخبرة طبية. كما وفرت المأوى للمحتاجين من رياح وحرارة الصحراء القاسية. طورت أول وحدات رعاية متنقلة على الإطلاق لتلبية الاحتياجات الطبية للمجتمع.

She trained a group of women companions as nurses. During the Battle of Khaybar, these nurses, led by Rufaida, volunteered to go to the battle to treat the injured and help the Muslims as much as they can. They did a great job that the Prophet (BPUH) assigned a share, equal to that of the soldiers, of the spoils to Rufaida. In addition to her role in battlefield healthcare, she was interested in treating diseases and their causes attempting to alleviate social problems which led to poor health conditions.

درّبت مجموعة من الصحابيات كممرضات. خلال غزوة خيبر، تطوّعت هؤلاء الممرضات، بقيادة رفيدة، للذهاب إلى المعركة لعلاج الجرحى ومساعدة المسلمين قدر استطاعتهن. وقد أُذِنَ عملاً جليلاً، حتى أن النبي ﷺ خصّص لرفيدة حصة من القنم مساوية لحصّة الجنود. بالإضافة إلى دورها في الرعاية الصحية في ساحة المعركة، اهتمت بعلاج الأمراض وأسبابها، سعياً منها للتخفيف من حدة المشاكل الاجتماعية التي أدت إلى تردي الأوضاع الصحية.

C. Answer the following questions:

1. What does the role of Rufaida Al-Aslamiya denote?
 - Women have always played an important role in the Islamic state.
2. Why do you think we need to read about such iconic figures as Rufaida Al-Aslamiya?
 - To set good examples for our women.
3. Who introduced nursing to the Muslim world? - Rufaidah Al-Aslamiyah.
4. Who taught Rufaida the clinical skills needed to care for the sick and wounded?
 - Her father, Sad al-Aslami, who was a physician and mentor.
5. How was Rufaida able to meet the medical needs of the community?
 - She provided shelter to the needy from the wind and heat of the harsh desert.
 - She developed the first ever mobile care units to meet the medical needs of the community.
6. Why was Rufaida interested in nursing?
 - Because her family had strong ties to the medical community.
7. Why did the Prophet (BPUH) assign a share, equal to that of the soldiers, of the spoils to Rufaida in the battle of Khaybar?
 - During the Battle of Khaybar these nurses, led by Rufaidah, volunteered to go to the battle to treat the injured and help Muslims as much as they could.

8. How was the woman being treated in the west at the time of Rufaida Al-Aslamiya?
- She was no equal to the man. She was deprived of most of her rights.

D. Choose the correct answer:

- A number of measures should be taken to the problem of poverty.
a. elevate b. alleviate c. donate d. construct
- The man was struggling to stand.
a. injured b. carved c. craved d. dead
- Many skin diseases can be prevented by good personal
a. whole b. sanitary c. healthy d. hygiene
- Human beings need food, clothing and
a. standard b. struggle c. wonder d. shelter
- We can further details from the internet.
a. attend b. obtain c. detain d. detent

E. Translate the following:

- Rufaida provided shelter to the needy from the wind and heat of the harsh desert and developed the first ever mobile care units that were able to meet the medical needs of the community.

٢. يحرض الإسلام على مشاركة المرأة في كل جوانب الحياة، ويقدر دورها الفعال في المجتمع الإسلامي.

E. Write True or False for the Following Sentences:

- Rufaida Al-Aslamiyah introduced nursing to the Muslim world after Florence Nightingale.
- She practiced her skills in field hospitals in a mosque.
- Rufaida treated Casualties with medical expertise and provided shelter to the needy.
- Rufaida trained a group of women companions as nurses.
- Rufaida attempted to alleviate social problems which led to poor health.

B: Skills for the Exam

I. Reading Comprehension

- قطعة امتحان العلمي: أربعة (٤) أسئلة (مفتوحة النهايات) + أربعة (٤) أسئلة اختيار من متعدد
- قطعة امتحان الأدبي: خمسة (٥) أسئلة (مفتوحة النهايات) + خمسة (٥) أسئلة اختيار من متعدد

- اقرأ القطعة للمرة الأولى وافهمها جيداً ثم اقرأها مرة ثانية من أجل مزيد من الفهم.
- اقرأ الأسئلة قبل قراءة القطعة لمعرفة الفكرة الرئيسية للموضوع وتحديد المعلومات التي ستركز عليها.
- خمن معني الكلمات الصعبة عند القراءة من السياق العام للجملة نفسها أو الفقرة التي تتواجد فيها الجملة.
- عليك بقراءة الأسئلة جيداً ومعرفة المطلوب لكل سؤال من أجل الاستعانة بالقطعة لإجابته.

- What does the underlined word (.....) refer to/indicate/show?
- Give (Put) (Write) (Suggest) a suitable title for the passage.
- What's the main idea of the passage / the text?
- Pick out (Detect) (Find) words in the passage which mean
- Show / انظر / Name / اذكر / discuss / ناقش / illustrate / وضح / بين / indicate

Test Yourself (Comprehension)

- Read the following passage and then answer the questions:** (علمي - ٢٠١٧)
Until 1920s, listening to the radio remained a hobby enjoyed by only enthusiasts. Then in 1922 the BBC began transmitting regular radio programs. Television began only seven years later, but there were very few Television sets in any country, incredibly many of those early TV sets were built by their owners! **They** offered news and entertainment programs, but critics said that large numbers of programmes which were about theater, literature, classical music and opera appeared to a small number of people. Many listeners wanted to know why

their tastes were being ignored. In 1936, the BBC started broadcasting a few hours of Television each day. You could only pick up the broadcasting if you live in London, but there were now more TV sets turning in, with more channels in the 1950s and 1960s, as well as lower price. It was not long time before almost everyone had access to a Television set. It's hard now to imagine that the whole families once used to gather around the radio to hear a favourite programme.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What did critics complain about the radio programmes? 2. When did Television start?
3. Give a suitable title to the passage. 4. How was listening to the radio before 1922?

B. Choose the Correct answer:

5. The BBC began to send out television programmes in
a. 1936 b. 1922 c. 1920 d. 1950
6. The radio was invented the TV.
a. before b. after c. at the same time as d. with
7. What does the underlined word "access" mean?
a. reach b. collection c. group d. richness
8. What does the underlined word "they" refer to?
a. TV owners b. Early TV sets. c. Houses with TVs. d. Countries with TVs.

2. Read the following passage and then answer the questions: (انہی - ۲۰۱۳)

While most people understand that becoming an astronaut isn't the simplest career to break into, they probably don't understand the mental and physical conditioning required to prepare an individual's mind and body for space. Beyond the physical strain placed on a person's body during the actual flight to space, the more time in space, the more strain on the body. Space agencies have recognized the necessity for a program to prepare astronauts for their missions to space, in addition to post rehabilitation upon returning to earth.

Astronauts have to be physically and mentally ready for the stress and strain of a space mission. To prepare them, astronauts are given intensive training, which includes years of classroom study on various technical subjects, and working in a model spaceship where they can practise complicated flight operations and become used to all the equipment on board.

Apart from high intelligence, good qualifications and an excellent level of fitness, astronauts must have a strong character. They also have to be very courageous in order to accept the high risks involved.

Astronauts also have to face other, more ordinary problems in space. What can be very annoying is the limited variety of food, but the greatest challenge is getting along with other members of their team as they often come from different countries, with different backgrounds and habits. Therefore they must be very patient with each other, since the lack of privacy can become irritating. All in all, it seems that being an astronaut is one of the most challenging jobs in the world.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What don't most people understand about the job of astronauts?
2. What problems face an astronaut in a spaceship? 3. What must a person have to be an astronaut?
4. How are astronauts prepared to be physically and mentally fit for a space mission?
5. What kind of program is necessary for astronauts?

B. Choose the Correct answer:

6. The members of a spaceship must treat each other
a. curiously b. patiently c. creatively d. sadly
7. is the state of being alone and not disturbed by other people.
a. Private b. Privation c. Privacy d. In private

8. Why must astronauts be patient with each other?
 a. They have similar backgrounds. b. They come from different cultures.
 c. They have the same languages. d. They have their own privacy.
9. What does the underlined word "they" refer to?
 a. space stations b. space jobs c. astronauts d. backgrounds
10. What does the underlined word "risks" mean?
 a. hazards b. facilities c. missions d. tasks

3. Read the following passage and then answer the questions:

(علمي - ۲۰۱۹)

Print journalists need to have good knowledge of current affairs and news, plus a passion for the truth. In addition, they must be able to write well to capture the reader's attention.

Since they provide the public with important information, their articles must be very well researched to ensure that none of the facts they present are incorrect.

Once they hand in a piece of writing, it must be checked by an editor to make sure that it is of a high enough standard for publishing. If it goes to print with factual errors, this must be pointed out in the next issue and an apology given to readers.

Finally, all reporters, whether in the print media, television or radio, have a duty to be objective. It is not their role to form people's opinions for them, but to inform them about people, events and places.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage. 2. How can journalists catch the reader's attention?
 3. Why does an editor check a piece of writing? 4. What does the word "capture" mean?

B. Choose the Correct answer:

5. The word "Issue" in the passage means.....
 a. a story b. a series of newspapers c. a problem d. a film
6. there are errors in a piece of writing.
 a. Sometimes b. Never c. Often d. Always
7. According to the passage, reporters must be
 a. hesitant b. objective c. biased d. obedient
8. The underlined word "they" refers to
 a. readers b. print journalists c. editors d. reporters

(آلہی - ۲۰۱۶)

4. Read the following passage and then answer the questions:

"I will think of it". It's easy to say this, but do you know what great things have come from thinking? We can't see our thoughts, or feel them and yet what might power they have!

Newton was sitting in his garden on a Summer's evening when he saw an apple falling from a tree. He began to think, and, in trying to find out why the apple fell, he discovered how the earth, sun, moon, and stars are kept in their places. A man called Galileo was once standing in the Cathedral of Pisa when he saw a chandelier swaying to and fro. This made him think, and it led to the invention of the pendulum. A boy named James Watt sat quietly by the fireside watching the lid of the tea kettle as it moved up and down. He began to think; he wanted to find out why the steam in the kettle moved the heavy lid. From that time, he went on thinking, and when he grew up, he improved the steam engine so much that it could do the work of many horses with the greatest ease. These people's motto was "I will think of it" and they made their thoughts useful to themselves and to the world. When you have a difficult lesson to learn, don't ever feel discouraged. Think; and through thinking you'll learn how to think for some purposes.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What does great thinking result in? 2. How did the idea of the pendulum come to Galileo?
 3. How was the idea of gravity proved? 4. What is the passage trying to teach you?

5. What achievement did Games Watt make?
B. Choose the Correct answer:
6. The author feels by the people he described.
 a. bored b. confused c. impressed d. irritated
7. The expression "to and fro" means
 a. up and down b. round and round
 c. forward and backward d. back to back
8. Thinking is the way to
 a. frustration b. achievement c. feeling d. power
9. It is to see our thoughts.
 a. possible b. easy c. impossible d. advisable
10. Galileo was a/an
 a. inventor b. author c. thinker d. dreamer

2. Dialogue

١. اقرأ المحادثة كاملة مرتين وتأكد من تحديد الفكرة والموضوع والمتحدثين ومكان وزمان المحادثة.
 ٢. حاول أن تتوقع الإجابات المحتملة أي (حاول أن تملأ الفراغات شفها في البداية).
 ٣. يجب أن تعرف المطلوب في كل فراغ، فقد يكون المطلوب: جملة خبرية / سؤال عادي / سؤال منيل.
 ٤. يُفضل أن تكون الإجابات التي تكتبها في الفراغ مختصرة.
 ٥. إذا كانت الإجابة بعد (No) مثبتة فإننا نقوم بعكس معنى السؤال (أي نعكس أحد أجزاء الجملة).
Question: Have you visited Egypt before? **Answer:** No, this is my first visit to Egypt.

Test Yourself (Dialogue)

1. **Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:** (علمي - ٢٠١٨)
 A: (1).
 B: What do you want to eat?
 A: (2).
 B: I don't think we can make an omelet.
 A: (3)?
 B: There are not enough eggs in the fridge.
 A: (4)?
 B: That's good. Don't forget to buy some bread, too.
2. **Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:** (علمي - ٢٠١٧)
 Amr and his father are talking about the new car Amr bought.
 Father: (1)?
 Amr : Yes, I have. I found it worth recommending.
 Father: (2).
 Amr : Thank you, but as you know, all modern cars are expensive to maintain.
 Father: (3).
 Amr : Of course. Every new thing should be kept in a good condition.
 Father: May Allah get you away from its evils.
 Amr : (4).
3. **Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:** (أبني - ٢٠١٦)
 A: (1)?
 B: I'm going to the bank.
 A: (2)?
 B: To draw some money?
 A: Why do you need money?

B: (3).

A: What make will you buy?

B: (4).

4. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (علمي - ٢٠١٥)

Ali : What are we doing tonight?

Ahmed : I'm not sure.

Ali : (1).

Ahmed : Why that in particular?

Ali : I want to see the new comedy film.

Ahmed : Actually, I don't like comedies. (2).

Ali : In that case, there's a good one on at Roxi.

Ahmed : Sounds good to me. (3)?

Ali : At 6:30.

Ahmed : (4)?

Ali : I'll be there.

3. Paragraph

- Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words:

- ينبغي اتباع النصائح التالية عند كتابة البراجراف:

١. يجب كتابة عنوان الموضوع بين قوسين في منتصف السطر.
٢. اترك مسافة في أول سطر فقط.
٣. ضع علامات ترقيم صحيحة للجمل التي تكتبها.
٤. لا تستخدم روابط كثيرة بين الجمل داخل الموضوع.
٥. استخدم زمن صحيح: الحقائق (مضارع بسيط) - الحكايات (ماضي بسيط) - التنبؤات (مستقبل بسيط).
٦. لا تخرج عن الموضوع.
٧. رتب الأفكار والتقرات قبل الكتابة عنها.
٨. ابتعد عن الكلمات الصعبة والجمل المركبة.
٩. استخدم جمل قصيرة وبسيطة (فاعل - فعل - مفعول).
١٠. ابدأ الموضوع بجملة رئيسية (Topic Sentence) تحتوي على فكرة الموضوع.
١١. اكتب جرامر صحيح فمثلا لا تضع (to) بعد (should) ولا تضع (the) قبل الاسم عند الحديث عن أمر عام.
١٢. حاول ألا تكتب جملة في المبنى للمجهول إلا إذا شكلتها بشكلها الصحيح (be + P.P).
١٣. قم باعداد مسودة بأفكارك قبل الكتابة لتضمن تنظيم الموضوع وفقراته.

- مكونات البراجراف:

1. Introduction المقدمة:

- جملة عامة عن الموضوع يفهم منها الفارئ الموضوع.

Pollution is one of the most serious problems that we face.

- جملة مختصرة عما سيتم كتابته فمثلا إذا كنت ستكتب عن أسباب ونتائج وحلول مشكلة التلوث.

Pollution has many causes and effects and we must find solutions to it.

2. Subject matter الموضوع نفسه:

- الأفكار الرئيسية التي تضعها في مسودة أفكارك وكل فكرة تُحول إلى جملة بسيطة.

- استخدم روابط بين الجمل لتقوية المعنى:

On one hand / on the other hand / in addition to that (furthermore / moreover)

3. Conclusion الخاتمة: - To sum up,

موضوعات مكتوبة Written Paragraphs

1. انتشار فيروس كورونا The spread of the coronavirus

Coronavirus is a large family of viruses that cause illness ranging from the common cold to more severe diseases. Coronaviruses are transmitted between animals and people. Common signs of infection include respiratory symptoms أعراض تنفسية، fever, cough, and breathing difficulties. In more severe cases, infection can cause kidney failure فشل كلوي and even death. The antiviral drugs we have against flu will not work. Recovery depends on the strength of the immune system جهاز المناعة. Many of those who have died were already in poor health.

Recommendations to prevent infection spread include regular hand washing, covering mouth and nose when coughing and sneezing, cooking meat and eggs well, avoiding close contact with anyone coughing and sneezing **يعطس**. More data has to be collected to determine the danger degree of the virus. Unlike flu, there is no vaccine for the new coronavirus, which means it is more difficult for people with immune problems to protect themselves. The World Health Organization declared the outbreak to be a public health emergency of international concern. All world experts have to work together to find a cure for this fatal virus.

2. Terrorism الارهاب

Terrorism is considered to be one of the most serious problems which face all the world. It has different kinds, causes and effects, therefore it must be well studied to find an outlet of the big crisis it has caused.

It takes two forms: terrorist peoples and terrorist bands **الجماعات الارهابية**. The Israelis are the perfect example of terrorist peoples. Terrorist bands in any country threaten the life of people there. Young people join these bands because either they are unemployed or have some own political, social and religious beliefs different from those existing in their societies.

Terrorism has many bad effects on human societies. It increases instability **عدم الاستقرار** and conflict and forces people to leave their houses and immigrate to somewhere safe. It has a bad influence on tourism which needs an atmosphere of safety, stability and security to flourish.

The individuals have a duty to help the government face this very serious problem. The government should give a hand to the young to be able to sacrifice for this country, not to damage it. People must report the police about anyone they suspect to be a terrorist. **From all that has been mentioned in the above lines, we can conclude that the problem of terrorism needs an urgent solution.**

4. Translation

- ينبغي اتباع النصائح التالية عند الترجمة من الإنجليزية إلى العربية:
ابدأ الجملة العربية بفعل أو مبتدأ ثم خبر.

يوجد أفعال لا تترجم مثل (be): فمثلا عند ترجمة (reading is useful) نقول (القراءة مفيدة).

خمن معنى الكلمة الإنجليزية التي لا تعرفها واستبدلها بكلمة عربية قريبة منها في المعنى.

حول المجهول الي معلوم: فعند ترجمة (Books are read by people) نقول (يقرأ الناس الكتب).

- ينبغي اتباع النصائح التالية عند الترجمة من العربية إلى الإنجليزية:

اقرأ قطعة الترجمة كلها وافهم موضوعها كاملا لتفهم السياق ويسهل عليك التخمين والتعويض عن الكلمات.

استبدل الكلمة الصعبة بكلمة قريبة: فعند ترجمة (يجب أن نكافح الارهاب) يمكن تبديل (نكافح) بـ (نحارب).

ابدأ الجملة الإنجليزية بالفاعل ثم الفعل ثم المفعول ثم باقي الجملة.

ترجم الجملة إلى نفس الزمن في الإنجليزية: تسعى (مضارع) / سعت (ماضى) / سوف تسعى (مستقبل).

لا تترجم الكلمات التوكيدية مثل (إن / قد / لقد).

الفعل التابع لـ (قد / لقد) يترجم: مضارع تام إذا كان غير محدد المدة / ماضى بسيط إذا كان محدد المدة.

My brother passed the test yesterday.

- لقد اجتاز أخي الاختبار بالأمس.

I've finished doing my homework.

- لقد انتهيت من عمل الواجب.

ترجم الفعل الماضى التابع لـ (لقد) (ماضى تام) إذا كانت تعبر عن (فعل حدث قيل حدث اخر فى الماضى).

- When I reached the station, the train had left. .. عندما وصلت المحطة، كان القطار قد غادر..

لا تترجم الأفعال (يعمل على / يقوم بـ): فعند ترجمة (تقوم الدولة ببناء) نعتبرها (تبنى الدولة)

الضمائر المستترة في اللغة العربية ينبغي إظهارها عند الترجمة إلى الإنجليزية:

- You should practice sports .. عليك أن تمارس الرياضة

ترجم (لام الملكية) بمعنى (يمتلك):

فمثلا (لمصر دور عظيم) تترجم (Egypt has a great role

لا تترجم المفعول المطلق بل حوله الى ظرف: فمثلا (يؤثر تأثيرا سيئا) تترجم الى (affects badly).
 هناك أفعال عربية تتبع بحرف جر لكنها لا تأخذ حرف جر في الإنجليزية: (يستمتع بـ) تترجم (enjoy).
 تترجم (يجب أن يكون هناك) الى (there must be).
 تترجم (علينا) الى (We should + inf).

نضع (of) بين المضاف والمضاف اليه أو نبدأ بالمضاف اليه ثم نضع المضاف ولا نستخدم (of):
 - تلوث الماء water pollution / pollution of water

ترجم كلمة (كل) الى (all) اذا جاء بعدها اسم جمع والى (each / every) اذا جاء بعدها اسم مفرد.
 تترجم (لام التعليل) الى (مصدر + to) أو (جملة + so that): - ليعرفوا so that they know / to know
 تترجم (قد + فعل مضارع) الى (مصدر + may) ...

- قد نسافر إلى أسوان غدا
 - We may travel to Aswan tomorrow
 في اللغة العربية تأتي الصفة بعد الاسم الموصوف أما في اللغة الانجليزية تأتي الصفة قبل الاسم الموصوف.
 - قرأت كتابا شيقا
 - I have read an interesting book.

Test yourself (Translation)

A. Translate into English:

1. في الأيام الأولى للإسلام، تضرع النبي محمد إلى الله أن يهدي عمر بن الخطاب إلى طريق الإسلام المستقيم.
2. حين قرأ عمر بن الخطاب القرآن الكريم، اخترقت الأشعة البهية لنور الإسلام قلبه وروحه وجسده.
3. تأسست الحضارة الإسلامية على قيم العدل والمساواة واحترام الآخر.
4. يستخدم بعض الناس الدين كوسيلة لتحقيق مصالح مادية. 5. ارتفع معدل الفقر لمستويات غير مسبوقة في العقد الأخير.
6. الأسرة نواة المجتمع قوامها الدين والأخلاق والوطنية.
7. يجب أن تتسامح وتتعاون من أجل مجتمع يسوده الأمن والاستقرار.
8. نشر المزيد من قصص الأطفال سوف يشجع الصغار على حب القراءة والذهاب الى المكتبات.
9. تهدف برامج الإصلاح الاقتصادي الأخيرة الى تحقيق معدلات عالية من النمو والاستثمار والإنتاج.
10. كم أتمنى لو كان باستطاعتي حضور المؤتمر الطبي الأسبوع الماضي فقد كان مفيداً جداً.
11. تؤدي الكوارث الطبيعية كالفيضانات والأعاصير والبراكين الى حدوث أضرار بيئية كبيرة.
12. تؤثر الزيادة المستمرة في الأسعار تأثيراً مباشراً على حياة الكثير من المواطنين وخاصة محدودي الدخل.
13. إن القراءة تبني شخصية الإنسان ومع ذلك يقل عدد القراء عاماً بعد عام.
14. تعتبر مصر واحدة من الدول الرائدة في استخدام الطاقة الشمسية لتوليد الكهرباء.
15. يظن البعض أن المال هو أصل كل الثروة. 16. وفرة المال لا تعني بالضرورة حلاً للمشاكل أو جلباً للسعادة.
17. يجب علينا مواجهة تحديات القرن الحالي الذي يعتبر ثورة متسارعة في تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات.
18. إن العدل الاجتماعي هو الشرط الأساسي للسلام والاستقرار.
19. بما أن البترول سينفذ قريباً، يجب علينا إيجاد مصادر بديلة للطاقة.
20. في بعض الأماكن يستخدم قصب السكر في صناعة الوقود للسيارات والمركبات الأخرى.
21. كانت الأمة العربية المركز العلمي والاقتصادي والسياسي للعالم ولكنها الآن تراجعت إلى الخلف.
22. لقد أثبت شباب مصر أنهم قادرون على المساهمة في صنع التقدم.
23. إن تطور المجتمع ورفقه يقاس بدرجة التطور الثقافي والاجتماعي للمرأة.
24. محاربة الفساد تساهم في ثقة المواطنين أن الدولة حريصة على صون حقوقهم.
25. تحاول الحكومة جذب المستثمرين العرب والأجانب للمشاركة في المشروعات الاقتصادية العملاقة.
26. إن مصر بموقعها الفريد وتاريخها هي قلب العالم. 27. يلعب الوالدان دوراً مهماً في تشكيل شخصية أطفالهم وتعديل سلوكهم.
28. أنقذ القرآن الكريم اللغة العربية من التدهور. 29. القضاء على الإرهاب مسؤولية مشتركة وليست مسؤولية الدولة وحدها.
30. لقد أحدثت البركان خسائر كبيرة لشركات الطيران ناهيك عن التلوث البيئي الذي تسبب فيه.

B. Translate into Arabic:

1. Islam's success was fundamentally based on the efforts, eloquence, truthfulness and the firmest Belief of Allah's Seal Prophet.
2. All the Holy Celestial Scriptures focus on the supreme values which guarantee security, stability and peace for the society.
3. The Seal of the messengers, "Muhammad" (Peace and Blessings Be Upon Him) was sent to all mankind to perfect the sublime morals.

4. According to Islam, all people are equal in rights and duties regardless of race or colour.
5. Al-Azhar sends its scholars inside and outside Egypt to convey the true mission of Al-Azhar explaining moderation of Islam.
6. We shouldn't deprive children of education. This will pave the way for them to enter the world of crime.
7. The teacher is the cornerstone of the educational system so he should be given much care.
8. When you are not at work, spend some time helping your local community and serving it.
9. True, pious and faithful Muslims must always have faith that Allah will help them realize their rightful aims.
10. Mass media are now the main provider of information and an essential source of culture.
11. Global warming leads to thousands of deaths every year and the number will increase.
12. The world is running out of oil, and energy experts believe that there would be serious shortages in a few years' time.
13. The Smart Village is the first distinguished technological village that attracts foreign investments to enhance software industries and internet services in Egypt.
14. To solve the problem of rising prices, the government should adopt the policy of fixing prices for essential goods.
15. We should believe that science and faith are the best path to realize the nation's progress and welfare.
16. The problem of acid rain is caused by factories and cars releasing poisonous chemicals into the air.
17. The use of engineering methods to solve some medical problems is called bio-engineering which is used to manufacture artificial limbs.
18. Over the last two hundred years, means of transport have changed and developed a great deal.
19. It is expected that most countries will suffer from a shortage of water. Therefore, we are obliged to rationalize using water as a drop of water is worth one's life.
20. In the outset of history, our ancestors founded the first central state that regulated the life of Egyptians on banks of the Nile.

امتحان الأزهر علمي - 2025 - معدل حسب أحدث المواصفات

A: Vocabulary and Structure

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(8 Marks)

1. The school year always with an opening ceremony.
 a. kicks at b. kicks off c. collapses d. clutches
2. Seeing children suffer is truly
 a. sophisticated b. sustainable c. automated d. heartbreaking
3. Be careful with that glass vase; it's
 a. workshops b. capture c. fragile d. magic
4. An ultrasound is a medical test.
 a. cruelly b. non-invasive c. tragically d. weeknight
5. To board an international flight, you must show your at the airport.
 a. terminal b. boarding pass c. departure lounge d. gate
6. Egypt is located between Africa and Asia.
 a. strategically b. invisibly c. mysteriously d. cosmically
7. Good helps workers improve their performance.
 a. hospitality b. daffodils c. wisdom d. feedback
8. The company has a strong for quality service.
 a. compliment b. rhythm c. generosity d. reputation

9. They about something when I walked into the room.
 a. were arguing b. have argued c. are arguing d. will argue
10. Which of the three brothers is?
 a. the youngest b. young c. younger d. as young as
11. They the new building by next October.
 a. have finished b. are finishing c. will have finished d. will be finishing
12. I avoided her the news because I knew she would be angry.
 a. tell b. telling c. to tell d. told
13. I my friend to translate a letter for me.
 a. had b. made c. let d. got
14. If you, you will get a higher salary.
 a. are promoted b. promote c. are promoting d. have promoted
15. When I was a child, my mother read me a story at night before bed.
 a. must b. might c. may d. would
16. a thing has never happened before.
 a. So b. Such c. Very d. Because

2. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning: (4 Marks)

1. "Don't be late," my mother told me. (My mother told me...)
 2. Someone washed my car yesterday. (I got...)
 3. He said it was his mistake. (admitted)
 4. The book is very interesting. I borrowed it from the library. (which)

B: Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following passage then answer the questions: (8 Marks)

Thomas Alva Edison was one of the outstanding geniuses in the history of technology. He was an American inventor and businessman. He was born on February 11, 1847, in the US state of Ohio. He later lived in New Jersey, where he worked in a place called Menlo Park. People called him "The Wizard of Menlo Park" because of the wonderful things he invented. He was awarded patents for over a thousand (1093) inventions. He also created the world's first industrial research laboratory.

Edison had very little formal education as a child and only attended school for three months. His teacher said that Edison was too stupid to learn. His mother was shocked and upset but she did not let the negative words of the teacher discourage her or her son. She taught him reading, writing and arithmetic. Edison was always a very curious child and taught himself much by reading on his own. He was fascinated by science and worked in his laboratory for many hours. He invented the electric light, the phonograph and the motion picture camera. Edison also made improvements to the telegram and the telephone. He thought that inventing useful things was a great way to become rich and famous and help other people at the same time. He died on October 18, 1931.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why was Edison called "The Wizard of Menlo Park"? 2. How many patents did he acquire?
 3. How did Edison's mother feel when she heard his teacher's words?
 4. His mother was wise. Discuss.

B. Choose the Correct answer:

5. Edison was a/an child.
 a. curious b. incurious c. stupid d. uninterested
6. His mother played a/an role in his life.
 a. secondary b. minor c. subordinate d. vital
7. His mother him to depend on himself.
 a. prevented b. discouraged c. encouraged d. dissuaded

8. The teacher was when he said Edison was stupid.

- a. wrong b. right c. shocked d. upset

C: A Glimpse of Revelation III

4. A. Answer the following questions:

(2 Marks)

1. What did some of the Arabian tribes do after the Prophet's death?

2. Why did Mary take her child and flee to Egypt?

4. B. Choose the Correct answer:

(3 Marks)

1. Many people to believe that the Prophet had died.

- a. refused b. apostatized c. succeeded d. besieged

2. There is no fixed list of businesses in Islam.

- a. permitted b. impermissible c. unlawful d. forbidden

3. Mary was ordered to from talking to people.

- a. flee b. convert c. abstain d. prevail

D: Language Functions

5. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

(4 Marks)

A: (1)?

B: I'm going to the supermarket.

A: What are you going to buy?

B: (2).

A: (3)?

B: Yes, of course .

A: How often do you go shopping?

B: (4).

E: Writing

6. Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on one of the following topics:

(5 Marks)

1. A story you have read recently 2. The advantages and disadvantages of the internet

F: Translation

7. A. Translate into Arabic:

(4 Marks)

1. You need patience and perseverance to learn a foreign language.

2. We should do our best to preserve our cultural heritage.

7. B. Translate into English:

(2 Marks)

تعتبر البطالة قنبلة موقوتة تهدد أمن و استقرار المجتمع.

امتحان الأزهر أدبي - 2025 - معدل حسب أحدث المواصفات

A: Vocabulary and Structure

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (Vocabulary)

(10 Marks)

1. The of the accident was taken to the ER.

- a. diver b. victim c. paramedic d. phenomenon

2. She broke her while skiing.

- a. collarbone b. lever c. household d. artifact

3. Workers used a to lift the heavy stone.

- a. lever b. stitch c. collarbone d. phenomenon

4. The view from the mountain was so that everyone stopped to take photos.

- a. mortifying b. innovation c. repetitive d. breathtaking

5. The painting was full of colors that caught my eye.

- a. figuratively b. vivid c. magnificent d. entertainment

6. Please pass me the for my fries.

- a. stakeholder b. haunting c. salt shaker d. captivity

7. The Amazon rainforest is considered the "lungs of the Earth" because of its location.
 a. strategic b. invisible c. mysterious d. luxurious
8. The city square is always full of noise and
 a. bustle b. boundary c. scholar d. theory
9. His kind words during my struggles were truly
 a. terrifying b. rejecting c. touching d. rude
10. He always has a smile on his face.
 a. cheerful b. terrified c. touched d. spontaneous

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (Grammar) (10 Marks)

1. This is the most interesting novel I
 a. have never read b. have ever read c. had never read d. was reading
2. The I stay in this place, the more I like it.
 a. longer b. long c. longest d. shortest
3. By the end of next week, we our new house.
 a. will be building b. will build c. will have built d. going to build
4. I regret to a foreign country.
 a. go b. gone c. went d. going
5. I got my watch
 a. repair b. repaired c. to repair d. repairing
6. This fruit tastes
 a. bitter b. bitterly c. letter d. butter
7. One of his friends in the accident.
 a. has injured b. injured c. has been injured d. had injured
8. You have time to spare.
 a. each b. few c. any d. little
9. He looks tired. He have been studying all night.
 a. can't b. must c. has to d. wouldn't
10. The lecture was attended.
 a. well b. good c. wide d. bad

3. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning: (4 Marks)

1. Perhaps he is reading in his room. (could)
 2. He drives a car with four doors. (four-door)
 3. By the time I got to the station, the train had left. (No sooner)
 4. Nobody has attended the party, have they? (Everybody)

B: Reading Comprehension

4. Read the following passage then answer the questions: (10 Marks)

Alaska is the largest U.S. state by area. It is located to the northwest of Canada. It's one fifth the size of the whole of the U.S. It became the 49th U.S. state in 1959. It's an attractive state, full of rich countryside and wildlife. There are various mountain ranges in it. It also has the highest mountain in North America, Mount McKinley. It has 100,000 glaciers, 3,000 rivers, and 3 million lakes. Many kinds of animals—like bears, eagles, wolves, sea lions, and whales—live in its oceans, green forests, and snow-covered mountains.

It is considered to be one of the more affordable places to live in the U.S. About 650,000 people live in it. Around 40% of its residents live in the largest city, Anchorage, in the south, because most of the state is very difficult to reach by car. It can be very cold and dark in winter. However, conditions are ideal for exciting activities like skiing, snowboarding, ice fishing, or dog sledding.

Alaska is a marvellous place. Each year, it receives millions of visitors who spend money on accommodation, food, and leisure activities. It's like no other place on Earth.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where is Alaska situated?
2. What kinds of animals live in Alaska?
3. When did Alaska become the 49th U.S. state?
4. How many people live in Alaska?
5. Why do most residents live in Anchorage?

B. Choose the Correct answer:

1. Life in Alaska is
a. affordable b. costly c. expensive d. high
2. The weather in Alaska is very in winter.
a. hot b. sunny c. cold d. warm
3. Alaska is a/an state.
a. ugly b. amazing c. ordinary d. normal
4. There are lakes in Alaska.
a. 3000 b. 100,000 c. 1000,000 d. 300,000
5. Alaska is a very state.
a. small b. large c. tiny d. little

C: A Glimpse of Revelation III**5. A. Write True or False for the following sentences:****(5 Marks)**

1. Caliph Umar was assassinated while performing the Fajr prayer by an Arab slave.
2. Islam generally cares about promoting justice, compassion, and a moderate lifestyle.
3. Moderateness is a trivial characteristic of the Islamic creed.
4. The reign of the caliphs of the Islamic state lasted for about 70 years.
5. Abu Bakr al-Siddiq pacified the confused crowd after the Prophet's death.

5. B. Choose the Correct answer:**(5 Marks)**

1. was the first caliph to be entitled Commander of the Faithful (Amir al-Muminin).
a. Abu Bakr b. Umar c. Uthman d. Ali
2. deal with major offences like adultery, theft, murder, etc.
a. Criminal laws b. Ethics c. Commercial transactions d. Family affairs
3. The Islamic economic system gambling.
a. respects b. provides c. promotes d. prohibits
4. He is a/an He loves money too much and hates spending it.
a. spendthrift b. miser c. wasteful d. extravagant
5. The Noble family returned to Palestine the death of Herod.
a. after b. while c. before d. until

D: Language Functions**6. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:****(4 Marks)**

A: (1)?

B: He's a mechanic. He loves his job.

A: (2)?

B: Sometimes, when he works long hours.

A: How much does he earn?

B: (3).

A: When does he come home?

B: (4).

7. Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on: "Moderateness or Modesty"**(6 Marks)****8. A. Translate into Arabic:****(3 Marks)**

Islam holds that each person is responsible for his or her deeds in this life.

8. B. Translate into English:**(3 Marks)**

يحذر خبراء الأرصاد من السفر في هذه الحالات.

ماي تيو فريند
منحرف

3RD
SEC.

خلاصة المراجعة وبنك الاسئلة

THE COUNT OF MONTE CRISTO

ENGLISH

التوزيع الرئيسي

مؤسسة الأشراف التجارية بالفجالة
ش.ب. النصر بجوار كنيسة عمرك بالفجالة - الفاهرة
010 139 777 39 - 010 666 099 37

للشركة لاسي

0111 404 16 98

160
جنية

f

